

New Latin Grammar

ï»¿The Project Gutenberg EBook of New Latin Grammar, by Charles E. Bennett This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re-use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.net

Title: New Latin Grammar

Author: Charles E. Bennett

Release Date: April 20, 2005 [EBook #15665]

Language: English

Character set encoding: Unicode UTF-8

*** START OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK NEW LATIN GRAMMAR ***

Produced by Nathan Gibson, Keith Edkins and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team.

NEW LATIN GRAMMAR

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

Goldwin Smith Professor of Latin in Cornell University

Quicquid praecipies, esto brevis, ut cito dicta _Percipiant animi dociles teneantque fideles:_ _Omne supervacuum pleno de pectore manat._ --HORACE, *Ars Poetica*.

COPYRIGHT, 1895; 1908; 1918 BY CHARLES E. BENNETT

* * * * *

PREFACE.

The present work is a revision of that published in 1908. No radical alterations have been introduced, although a number of minor changes will be noted. I have added an Introduction on the origin and development of the Latin language, which it is hoped will prove interesting and instructive to the more ambitious pupil. At the end of the book will be found an Index to the Sources of the Illustrative Examples cited in the Syntax.

C.E.B.

ITHACA, NEW YORK, May 4, 1918

* * * * *

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

The present book is a revision of my *Latin Grammar* originally published in 1895. Wherever greater accuracy or precision of statement seemed possible, I have endeavored to secure this. The rules for syllable division have been changed and made to conform to the prevailing practice of the Romans themselves. In the Perfect Subjunctive Active, the endings *-s*, *-mus*, *-tis* are now marked long. The theory of vowel length before the suffixes *-gnus*, *-gna*, *-gnum*, and also before *j*, has been discarded. In the Syntax I have recognized a special category of Ablative of Association, and have abandoned the original doctrine as to the force of tenses in the Prohibitive.

Apart from the foregoing, only minor and unessential modifications have been introduced. In its main lines the work remains unchanged.

ITHACA, NEW YORK, October 16, 1907.

* * * * *

FROM THE PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

The object of this book is to present *the essential facts* of Latin grammar in a direct and simple manner, and within the smallest compass consistent with scholarly standards. While intended primarily for the secondary school, it has not neglected the needs of the college student, and aims to furnish such grammatical information as is ordinarily required in undergraduate courses.

The experience of foreign educators in recent years has tended to restrict the size of school-grammars of Latin, and has demanded an incorporation of the main principles of the language in compact manuals of 250 pages. Within the past decade, several grammars of this scope have appeared abroad which have amply met the most exacting demands.

The publication in this country of a grammar of similar plan and scope seems fully justified at the present time, as all recent editions of classic texts summarize in introductions the special idioms of grammar and style peculiar to individual authors. This makes it feasible to dispense with the enumeration of many *minutiae* of usage which would otherwise demand consideration in a student's grammar.

In the chapter on Prosody, I have designedly omitted all special treatment of the lyric metres of Horace and Catullus, as well as of the measures of the comic poets. Our standard editions of these authors all give such thorough consideration to versification that repetition in a separate place seems superfluous.

ITHACA, NEW YORK, December 15, 1894.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Introduction—The Latin language

PART I.

SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY, ETC.

The Alphabet § 1 Classification of Sounds § 2 Sounds of the Letters § 3 Syllables § 4 Quantity § 5 Accent § 6 Vowel Changes § 7 Consonant Changes § 8 Peculiarities of Orthography § 9

PART II.

INFLECTIONS.

CHAPTER I.

—_Declension._

A. NOUNS. § 10

Gender of Nouns § 13 Number § 16 Cases § 17 The Five Declensions § 18 First Declension § 20
 Second Declension § 23 Third Declension § 28 Fourth Declension § 48 Fifth Declension § 51
 Defective Nouns § 54

B. ADJECTIVES. § 62

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions § 63 Adjectives of the Third Declension § 67 Comparison
 of Adjectives § 71 Formation and Comparison of Adverbs § 76 Numerals § 78

C. PRONOUNS. § 82

Personal Pronouns § 84 Reflexive Pronouns § 85 Possessive Pronouns § 86 Demonstrative Pronouns §
 87 The Intensive Pronoun § 88 The Relative Pronoun § 89 Interrogative Pronouns § 90 Indefinite
 Pronouns § 91 Pronominal Adjectives § 92

CHAPTER II.

—_Conjugation. § 93_

Verb Stems § 97 The Four Conjugations § 98 Conjugation of *Sum* § 100 First Conjugation § 101
 Second Conjugation § 103 Third Conjugation § 105 Fourth Conjugation § 107 Verbs in *-i* of the
 Third Conjugation § 109 Deponent Verbs § 112 Semi-Deponents § 114 Periphrastic Conjugation §
 115 Peculiarities of Conjugation § 116 Formation of the Verb Stems § 117 List of the Most Important
 Verbs with Principal Parts § 120 Irregular Verbs § 124 Defective Verbs § 133 Impersonal Verbs § 138

PART III.

PARTICLES. § 139

Adverbs § 140 Prepositions § 141 Interjections § 145

PART IV.

WORD FORMATION.

I. DERIVATIVES. § 146

Nouns Â§ 147 Adjectives Â§ 150 Verbs Â§ 155 Adverbs Â§ 157

II. COMPOUNDS. Â§ 158

Examples of Compounds Â§ 159

PART V.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

—_Sentences._

Classification of Sentences Â§ 161 Form of Interrogative Sentences Â§ 162 Subject and Predicate Â§ 163
Simple and Compound Sentences Â§ 164

CHAPTER II.

—_Syntax of Nouns._

Subject Â§ 166 Predicate Nouns Â§ 167 Appositives Â§ 169 The Nominative Â§ 170 The Accusative Â§ 172
The Dative Â§ 186 The Genitive Â§ 194 The Ablative Â§ 213 The Locative Â§ 232

CHAPTER III.

—_Syntax of Adjectives._

Agreement of Adjectives Â§ 234 Adjectives used Substantively Â§ 236 Adjectives with the Force of Adverbs
Â§ 239 Comparatives and Superlatives Â§ 240 Other Peculiarities Â§ 241

CHAPTER IV.

—_Syntax of Pronouns._

Personal Pronouns Â§ 242 Possessive Pronouns Â§ 243 Reflexive Pronouns Â§ 244 Reciprocal Pronouns Â§
245 Demonstrative Pronouns Â§ 246 Relative Pronouns Â§ 250 Indefinite Pronouns Â§ 252 Pronominal
Adjectives Â§ 253

CHAPTER V.

—_Syntax of Verbs._

Agreement of Verbs Â§ 254 Voices Â§ 256 Tenses — Of the Indicative Â§ 257 — Of the Subjunctive Â§

266 — Of the Infinitive Â§ 270 Moods — In Independent Sentences Â§ 271 — — Volitive Subjunctive Â§ 273 — — Optative Subjunctive Â§ 279 — — Potential Subjunctive Â§ 280 — — Imperative Â§ 281 — In Dependent Clauses — — Clauses of Purpose Â§ 282 — — Clauses of Characteristic Â§ 283 — — Clauses of Result Â§ 284 — — Causal Clauses Â§ 285 — — Temporal Clauses — — — Introduced by *Postquam*, *Ut*, *Ubi*, etc. Â§ 287 — — — _Cum_—Clauses Â§ 288 — — — Introduced by *Antequam* and *Priusquam* Â§ 291 — — — Introduced by *Dum*, _DÃ nec_, *Quoad* Â§ 293 — — Substantive Clauses Â§ 294 — — — Developed from the Volitive Â§ 295 — — — Developed from the Optative Â§ 296 — — — Of Result Â§ 297 — — — After _nÃ n dubito_, etc. Â§ 298 — — — Introduced by *Quod* Â§ 299 — — — Indirect Questions Â§ 300 — — Conditional Sentences Â§ 301 — — Use of _SÃ«, *Nisi*, _SÃ«n_ Â§ 306 — — Conditional Clauses of Comparison Â§ 307 — — Concessive Clauses Â§ 308 — — Adversative Clauses with _QuamvÃ«s_, *Quamquam*, etc. Â§ 309 — — Clauses of Wish and Proviso Â§ 310 — — Relative Clauses Â§ 311 — — Indirect Discourse Â§ 313 — — — Moods in Indirect Discourse Â§ 314 — — — Tenses in Indirect Discourse Â§ 317 — — — Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse Â§ 319 — — Implied Indirect Discourse Â§ 323 — — Subjunctive by Attraction Â§ 324 Noun and Adjective Forms of the Verb Â§ 325 — Infinitive Â§ 326 — Participles Â§ 336 — Gerund Â§ 338 — Supine Â§ 340

CHAPTER VI.

—_Particles._

CoÃrdinate Conjunctions Â§ 341 Adverbs Â§ 347

CHAPTER VII.

—_Word—Order and Sentence—Structure._

Word—Order Â§ 348 Sentence—Structure Â§ 351

CHAPTER VIII.

—_Hints on Latin Style. Â§ 352_

Nouns Â§ 353 Adjectives Â§ 354 Pronouns Â§ 355 Verbs Â§ 356 The Cases Â§ 357

PART VI.

PROSODY. Â§ 360

Quantity of Vowels and Syllables Â§ 362 Verse—Structure Â§ 366 The Dactylic Hexameter Â§ 368 The Dactylic Pentameter Â§ 369 Iambic Measures Â§ 370

SUPPLEMENTS TO THE GRAMMAR.

I. Roman Calendar Â§ 371 II. Roman Names Â§ 373 III. Figures of Syntax and Rhetoric Â§ 374

* * * * *

Index to the Illustrative Examples Cited in the Syntax Index to the Principal Parts of Latin Verbs General
Index Footnotes

* * * * *

INTRODUCTION.

THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

1. The Indo-European Family of Languages.--Latin belongs to one group of a large family of languages, known as *Indo-European*.^[1] This Indo-European family of languages embraces the following groups:

ASIATIC MEMBERS OF THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY.

a. *The Sanskrit*, spoken in ancient India. Of this there were several stages, the oldest of which is the Vedic, or language of the Vedic Hymns. These Hymns are the oldest literary productions known to us among all the branches of the Indo-European family. A conservative estimate places them as far back as 1500 B.C. Some scholars have even set them more than a thousand years earlier than this, i.e. anterior to 2500 B.C.

The Sanskrit, in modified form, has always continued to be spoken in India, and is represented to-day by a large number of dialects descended from the ancient Sanskrit, and spoken by millions of people.

b. *The Iranian*, spoken in ancient Persia, and closely related to the Sanskrit. There were two main branches of the Iranian group, viz. the Old Persian and the Avestan. The Old Persian was the official language of the court, and appears in a number of so-called cuneiform^[2] inscriptions, the earliest of which date from the time of Darius I (sixth century B.C.). The other branch of the Iranian, the Avestan,^[3] is the language of the Avesta or sacred books of the Parsees, the followers of Zoroaster, founder of the religion of the fire-worshippers. Portions of these sacred books may have been composed as early as 1000 B.C.

Modern Persian is a living representative of the old Iranian speech. It has naturally been much modified by time, particularly through the introduction of many words from the Arabic.

c. *The Armenian*, spoken in Armenia, the district near the Black Sea and Caucasus Mountains. This is closely related to the Iranian, and was formerly classified under that group. It is now recognized as entitled to independent rank. The earliest literary productions of the Armenian language date from the fourth and fifth centuries of the Christian era. To this period belong the translation of the Scriptures and the old Armenian Chronicle. The Armenian is still a living language, though spoken in widely separated districts, owing to the scattered locations in which the Armenians are found to-day.

d. *The Tokharian*. This language, only recently discovered and identified as Indo-European, was spoken in the districts east of the Caspian Sea (modern Turkestan). While in some respects closely related to the three Asiatic branches of the Indo-European family already considered, in others it shows close relationship to the European members of the family. The literature of the Tokharian, so far as it has been brought to light, consists mainly of translations from the Sanskrit sacred writings, and dates from the seventh century of our era.

EUROPEAN MEMBERS OF THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY.

e. *The Greek*. The Greeks had apparently long been settled in Greece and Asia Minor as far back as 1500 B.C. Probably they arrived in these districts much earlier. The earliest literary productions are the Iliad and the Odyssey of Homer, which very likely go back to the ninth century B.C. From the sixth century B.C. on, Greek literature is continuous. Modern Greek, when we consider its distance in time from antiquity, is remarkably

similar to the classical Greek of the fourth and fifth centuries B.C.

f. *The Italic Group.* The Italic Group embraces the Umbrian, spoken in the northern part of the Italian peninsula (in ancient Umbria); the Latin, spoken in the central part (in Latium); the Oscan, spoken in the southern part (in Samnium, Campania, Lucania, etc.). Besides these, there were a number of minor dialects, such as the Marsian, Volscian, etc. Of all these (barring the Latin), there are no remains except a few scanty inscriptions. Latin literature begins shortly after 250 B.C. in the works of Livius Andronicus, Naevius, and Plautus, although a few brief inscriptions are found belonging to a much earlier period.

g. *The Celtic.* In the earliest historical times of which we have any record, the Celts occupied extensive portions of northern Italy, as well as certain areas in central Europe; but after the second century B.C., they are found only in Gaul and the British Isles. Among the chief languages belonging to the Celtic group are the Gallic, spoken in ancient Gaul; the Breton, still spoken in the modern French province of Brittany; the Irish, which is still extensively spoken in Ireland among the common people, the Welsh; and the Gaelic of the Scotch Highlanders.

h. *The Teutonic.* The Teutonic group is very extensive. Its earliest representative is the Gothic, preserved for us in the translation of the scriptures by the Gothic Bishop Ulfilas (about 375 A.D.). Other languages belonging to this group are the Old Norse, once spoken in Scandinavia, and from which are descended the modern Icelandic, Norwegian, Swedish, Danish; German; Dutch; Anglo-Saxon, from which is descended the modern English.

i. *The Balto-Slavic.* The languages of this group belong to eastern Europe. The Baltic division of the group embraces the Lithuanian and Lettic, spoken to-day by the people living on the eastern shores of the Baltic Sea. The earliest literary productions of these languages date from the sixteenth century. The Slavic division comprises a large number of languages, the most important of which are the Russian, the Bulgarian, the Serbian, the Bohemian, the Polish. All of these were late in developing a literature, the earliest to do so being the Old Bulgarian, in which we find a translation of the Bible dating from the ninth century.

j. *The Albanian,* spoken in Albania and parts of Greece, Italy, and Sicily. This is most nearly related to the Balto-Slavic group, and is characterized by the very large proportion of words borrowed from Latin, Turkish, Greek, and Slavic. Its literature does not begin till the seventeenth century.

2. Home of the Indo-European Family.—Despite the many outward differences of the various languages of the foregoing groups, a careful examination of their structure and vocabulary demonstrates their intimate relationship and proves overwhelmingly their descent from a common parent. We must believe, therefore, that at one time there existed a homogeneous clan or tribe of people speaking a language from which all the above enumerated languages are descended. The precise location of the home of this ancient tribe cannot be determined. For a long time it was assumed that it was in central Asia north of the Himalaya Mountains, but this view has long been rejected as untenable. It arose from the exaggerated importance attached for a long while to Sanskrit. The great antiquity of the earliest literary remains of the Sanskrit (the Vedic Hymns) suggested that the inhabitants of India were geographically close to the original seat of the Indo-European Family. Hence the home was sought in the elevated plateau to the north. To-day it is thought that central or southeastern Europe is much more likely to have been the cradle of the Indo-European parent-speech, though anything like a logical demonstration of so difficult a problem can hardly be expected.

As to the size and extent of the original tribe whence the Indo-European languages have sprung, we can only speculate. It probably was not large, and very likely formed a compact racial and linguistic unit for centuries, possibly for thousands of years.

The time at which Indo-European unity ceased and the various individual languages began their separate existence, is likewise shrouded in obscurity. When we consider that the separate existence of the Sanskrit may

antedate 2500 B.C., it may well be believed that people speaking the Indo-European parent-speech belonged to a period as far back as 5000 B.C., or possibly earlier.

3. Stages in the Development of the Latin Language.—The earliest remains of the Latin language are found in certain very archaic inscriptions. The oldest of these belong to the sixth and seventh centuries B.C. Roman literature does not begin till several centuries later, viz. shortly after the middle of the third century B.C. We may recognize the following clearly marked periods of the language and literature:

a. *The Preliterary Period*, from the earliest times down to 240 B.C., when Livius Andronicus brought out his first play. For this period our knowledge of Latin depends almost exclusively upon the scanty inscriptions that have survived from this remote time. Few of these are of any length.

b. *The Archaic Period*, from Livius Andronicus (240 B.C.) to Cicero (81 B.C.). Even in this age the language had already become highly developed as a medium of expression. In the hands of certain gifted writers it had even become a vehicle of power and beauty. In its simplicity, however, it naturally marks a contrast with the more finished diction of later days. To this period belong:

Livius Andronicus, about 275–204 B.C. (Translation of Homer's *Odyssey*; Tragedies). Plautus, about 250–184 B.C. (Comedies). Naevius, about 270–199 B.C. ("Punic War"; Comedies). Ennius, 239–169 B.C. ("Annals"; Tragedies). Terence, about 190–159 B.C. (Comedies). Lucilius, 180–103 B.C. (Satires). Pacuvius, 220–about 130 B.C. (Tragedies). Accius, 170–about 85 B.C. (Tragedies).

c. *The Golden Age*, from Cicero (81 B.C.) to the death of Augustus (14 A.D.). In this period the language, especially in the hands of Cicero, reaches a high degree of stylistic perfection. Its vocabulary, however, has not yet attained its greatest fullness and range. Traces of the diction of the Archaic Period are often noticed, especially in the poets, who naturally sought their effects by reverting to the speech of olden times. Literature reached its culmination in this epoch, especially in the great poets of the Augustan Age. The following writers belong here:

Lucretius, about 95–55 B.C. (Poem on Epicurean Philosophy). Catullus, 87–about 54 B.C. (Poet). Cicero, 106–43 B.C. (Orations; Rhetorical Works; Philosophical Works; Letters). Caesar, 102–44 B.C. (Commentaries on Gallic and Civil Wars), Sallust, 86–36 B.C. (Historian). Nepos, about 100–about 30 B.C. (Historian). Virgil, 70–19 B.C. ("*Aeneid*"; "*Georgics*"; "*Bucolics*"). Horace, 65–8 B.C. (Odes; Satires, Epistles). Tibullus, about 54–19 B.C. (Poet). Propertius, about 50–about 15 B.C. (Poet). Ovid, 43 B.C.–17 A.D. ("*Metamorphoses*" and other poems). Livy, 59 B.C.–17 A.D. (Historian).

d. *The Silver Latinity*, from the death of Augustus (14 A.D.) to the death of Marcus Aurelius (180 A.D.). This period is marked by a certain reaction against the excessive precision of the previous age. It had become the practice to pay too much attention to standardized forms of expression, and to leave too little play to the individual writer. In the healthy reaction against this formalism, greater freedom of expression now manifests itself. We note also the introduction of idioms from the colloquial language, along with many poetical words and usages. The following authors deserve mention:

Phaedrus, flourished about 40 A.D. (Fables in Verse) Velleius Paterculus, flourished about 30 A.D. (Historian). Lucan, 39–65 A.D. (Poem on the Civil War). Seneca, about 1–65 A.D. (Tragedies; Philosophical Works). Pliny the Elder, 23–79 A.D. ("*Natural History*"). Pliny the Younger, 62–about 115 A.D. ("Letters"). Martial, about 45–about 104 A.D. (Epigrams). Quintilian, about 35–about 100 A.D. (Treatise on Oratory and Education). Tacitus, about 55–about 118 A.D. (Historian). Juvenal, about 55–about 135 A.D. (Satirist). Suetonius, about 73–about 118 A.D. ("*Lives of the Twelve Caesars*"). Minucius Felix, flourished about 160 A.D. (First Christian Apologist). Apuleius, 125–about 200 A.D. ("*Metamorphoses*," or "*Golden Ass*").

e. *The Archaizing Period.* This period is characterized by a conscious imitation of the Archaic Period of the

second and first centuries B.C.; it overlaps the preceding period, and is of importance from a linguistic rather than from a literary point of view. Of writers who manifest the archaizing tendency most conspicuously may be mentioned Fronto, from whose hand we have a collection of letters addressed to the Emperors Antoninus Pius and Marcus Aurelius; also Aulus Gellius, author of the "Attic Nights." Both of these writers flourished in the second half of the second century A.D.

f. *The Period of the Decline*, from 180 to the close of literary activity in the sixth century A.D. This period is characterized by rapid and radical alterations in the language. The features of the conversational idiom of the lower strata of society invade the literature, while in the remote provinces, such as Gaul, Spain, Africa, the language suffers from the incorporation of local peculiarities. Representative writers of this period are:

Tertullian, about 160–about 240 A.D. (Christian Writer). Cyprian, about 200–258 A.D. (Christian Writer). Lactantius, flourished about 300 A.D. (Defense of Christianity). Ausonius, about 310–about 395 A.D. (Poet). Jerome, 340–420 A.D. (Translator of the Scriptures). Ambrose, about 340–397 (Christian Father). Augustine, 354–430 (Christian Father—"City of God"). Prudentius, flourished 400 A.D. (Christian Poet). Claudian, flourished 400 A.D. (Poet). Boëthius, about 480–524 A.D. ("Consolation of Philosophy").

4. Subsequent History of the Latin Language.—After the sixth century A.D. Latin divides into two entirely different streams. One of these is the literary language maintained in courts, in the Church, and among scholars. This was no longer the language of people in general, and as time went on, became more and more artificial. The other stream is the colloquial idiom of the common people, which developed ultimately in the provinces into the modern so-called Romance idioms. These are the Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French, Provençal (spoken in Provence, i.e. southeastern France), the Rhaeto-Romance (spoken in the Canton of the Grisons in Switzerland), and the Roumanian, spoken in modern Roumania and adjacent districts. All these Romance languages bear the same relation to the Latin as the different groups of the Indo-European family of languages bear to the parent speech.

* * * * *

PART I.

* * * * *

SOUNDS, ACCENT, QUANTITY.

* * * * *

THE ALPHABET.

1. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no w.

1. K occurs only in *Kalendae* and a few other words; y and z were introduced from the Greek about 50 B.C., and occur only in foreign words—chiefly Greek.

2. With the Romans, who regularly employed only capitals, I served both as vowel and consonant; so also V. For us, however, it is more convenient to distinguish the vowel and consonant sounds, and to write i and u for the former, j and v for the latter. Yet some scholars prefer to employ i and u in the function of consonants as well as vowels.

CLASSIFICATION OF SOUNDS.

2. 1. The Vowels are a, e, i, o, u, y. The other letters are Consonants. The Diphthongs are ae, oe, ei, au, eu, ui.

2. Consonants are further subdivided into Mutes, Liquids, Nasals, and Spirants.

3. The Mutes are p, t, c, k, q; b, d, g; ph, th, ch. Of these,—

a) p, t, c, k, q are voiceless,[4] i.e. sounded *without* voice or vibration of the vocal cords.

b) b, d, g are voiced,[5] i.e. sounded *with* vibration of the vocal cords.

c) ph, th, ch are aspirates. These are confined almost exclusively to words derived from the Greek, and were equivalent to p + h, t + h, c + h, i.e. to the corresponding voiceless mutes with a following breath, as in Eng. *_loop-hole_, _hot-house_, _block-house_.*

4. The Mutes admit of classification also as

Labials, p, b, ph. Dentals (or Linguals), t, d, th. Gutturals (or Palatals), c, k, q, g, ch.

5. The Liquids are l, r. These sounds were voiced.

6. The Nasals are m, n. These were voiced. Besides its ordinary sound, n, when followed by a guttural mute also had another sound,—that of ng in *sing*,—the so-called n *_adulter_*; as,—

anceps, double, pronounced *angceps*.

7. The Spirants (sometimes called Fricatives) are f, s, h. These were voiceless.

8. The Semivowels are j and v. These were voiced.

9. Double Consonants are x and z. Of these, x was equivalent to cs, while the equivalence of z is uncertain. See § 3, 3.

10. The following table will indicate the relations of the consonant sounds:—

VOICELESS. VOICED. ASPIRATES. p, b, ph, (Labials). Mutes, t, d, th, (Dentals). c, k, q, g, ch, (Gutturals). Liquids, l, r, Nasals, m, n, f, (Labial). Spirants, s, (Dental). h, (Guttural). Semivowels, j, v.

a. The Double Consonants, x and z, being compound sounds, do not admit of classification in the above table.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

3. The following pronunciation (often called Roman) is substantially that employed by the Romans at the height of their civilization; i.e., roughly, from 50 B.C. to 50 A.D.

1. Vowels.

Ä as in *_father_*; Äf as in the first syllable *_ah_*; Ä“ as in *_they_*; Ä• as in *_met_*; Ä« as in *_machine_*; Ä- as in *_pin_*; Ä as in *_note_*; Ä as in *_obey, _melody_*; Ä« as in *_rude_*; Ä- as in *_put_*; y like French *u*, German *_Ä¼_*.

2. Diphthongs.

ae like *ai* in *eu* with its two elements, *Ä*• and *Ä*-, *_aisle_*; pronounced in rapid succession; oe like *oi* in *_oil_*; ui occurs almost exclusively in *ei* as in *_rein_*; *cui* and *huic*. These words may au like *ow* in *_how_*; be pronounced as though written *kwee* and *wheek*.

3. Consonants.

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu are pronounced as in English, except that bs, bt are pronounced *ps*, *pt*.

c is always pronounced as *k*.

t is always a plain *t*, never with the sound of *sh* as in Eng. *oration*.

g always as in *_get_*; when ngu precedes a vowel, gu has the sound of *gw*, as in *anguis*, *languidus*.

j has the sound of *y* as in *yet*.

r was probably slightly trilled with the tip of the tongue.

s always voiceless as in *_sin_*; in *suÄ deÄ*, *suÄ vis*, *suÄ“scÄ*, and in compounds and derivatives of these words, su has the sound of *sw*.

v like *w*.

x always like *_ks_*; never like Eng. *gz* or *z*.

z uncertain in sound; possibly like Eng. *zd*, possibly like *z*. The latter sound is recommended.

The aspirates ph, ch, th were pronounced very nearly like our stressed Eng. *p*, *c*, *_t_*—so nearly so, that, for practical purposes, the latter sounds suffice.

Doubled letters, like ll, mm, tt, etc., should be so pronounced that both members of the combination are distinctly articulated.

SYLLABLES.

4. There are as many syllables in a Latin word as there are separate vowels and diphthongs.

In the division of words into syllables,—

1. A single consonant is joined to the following vowel; as, *vo-lat*, *ge-rit*, *pe-rit*, *a-dest*.

2. Doubled consonants, like *tt*, *ss*, etc., are always separated; as, *vit-ta*, *mis-sus*.

3. Other combinations of two or more consonants are regularly separated, and the first consonant of the combination is joined with the preceding vowel; as, *ma-gis-trÄ«*, *dig-nus*, *mÄ n-strum*, *sis-te-re*.

4. An exception to Rule 3 occurs when the two consonants consist of a mute followed by l or r (*pl*, *cl*, *tl*; *pr*, *cr*, *tr*, etc.). In such cases both consonants are regularly joined to the following vowel; as, *a-grÄ«*, *vo-lu-cris*, *pa-tris*, *mÄ -tris*. Yet if the l or r introduces the second part of a compound, the two consonants are separated; as, *ab-rumpÄ*, *ad-lÄ tus*.

5. The double consonant x is joined to the preceding vowel; as, *ax-is*, *tÄ“x-Ä«*.

QUANTITY.

5. A. Quantity of Vowels.

A vowel is *long* or *short* according to the length of time required for its pronunciation. No absolute rule can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. This knowledge must be gained, in large measure, by experience; but the following principles are of aid:—

1. A vowel is long,[6]—

a) before *nf* or *ns*; as, *infans*, *inferior*, *insimul*, *inse*, *insum*.

b) when the result of contraction; as, *inlum* for *nihilum*.

2. A vowel is short,—

a) before *nt*, *nd*; as, *amant*, *amandus*. A few exceptions occur in compounds whose first member has a long vowel; as, *indum* (*n dum*).

b) before another vowel, or *h*; as, *meus*, *trahere*. Some exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek; as, *Aeneas*.

B. Quantity of Syllables.

Syllables are distinguished as *long* or *short* according to the length of time required for their pronunciation.

1. A syllable is long,[7]—

a) if it contains a long vowel; as, *mater*, *trignum*, *datus*.

b) if it contains a diphthong; as, *causae*, *foedus*.

c) if it contains a short vowel followed by *x*, *z*, or any two consonants (except a mute with *l* or *r*); as, *axis*, *gaza*, *restis*.

2. A syllable is short, if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel or by a single consonant; as, *mea*, *amat*.

3. Sometimes a syllable varies in quantity, *viz.* when its vowel is short and is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*, *i.e.* by *pl*, *cl*, *tl*; *pr*, *cr*, *tr*, etc.; as, *affragit*, *volucris*.^[8] Such syllables are called *common*. In prose they were regularly short, but in verse they might be treated as long at the option of the poet.

NOTE.—These distinctions of *long* and *short* are not arbitrary and artificial, but are purely natural. Thus, a syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, as *ng*, is long, because such a syllable requires *more time* for its pronunciation; while a syllable containing a short vowel followed by one consonant is short, because it takes *less time* to pronounce it. In case of the common syllables, the mute and the liquid blend so easily as to produce a combination which takes no more time than a single consonant. Yet by separating the two elements (as *agrit*) the poets were able to use such syllables as long.

ACCENT.

6. 1. Words of two syllables are accented upon the first; as, *agrit*, *amarum*.

2. Words of more than two syllables are accented upon the penult (next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise upon the antepenult (second from the last); as, amā́vā́«, amā́ntis, mā́-serum.
3. When the enclitics -que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -met, -dum are appended to words, if the syllable preceding the enclitic is long (either originally or as a result of adding the enclitic) it is accented; as, miserā́que, hominā́-sque. But if the syllable still remains short after the enclitic has been added, it is not accented unless the word originally took the accent on the antepenult. Thus, pā́rtaque; but mā́-serā́que.
4. Sometimes the final -e of -ne and -ce disappears, but without affecting the accent; as, tantā́n, istā́c, illā́c.
5. In utrā́que, *each*, and plā́rā́que, *most*, -que is not properly an enclitic; yet these words accent the penult, owing to the influence of their other cases,--utrā́que, utrā́mque, plā́rā́mque.

VOWEL CHANGES.[9]

7.. 1. In Compounds,

- a) Ā before a single consonant becomes Ä-; as,--
colligā́ for con-legā́ .
- b) Āf before a single consonant becomes Ä-: as,--
adigā́ for ad-agā́ .
- c) Āf before two consonants becomes Ä“; as,--
expers for ex-pars.
- d) ae becomes Ä«; as,--
conquā́rā́ for con-quaerā́ .
- e) au becomes Ä«, sometimes Ä ; as,--
conclā́dā́ for con-claudā́ ; explā́dā́ for ex-plaudā́ .

2. Contraction. Concurrent vowels were frequently contracted into one long vowel. The first of the two vowels regularly prevailed; as,--

trās for tre-es; cā́ pia for co-opia; mā́ lā́ for ma(v)elā́ ; cā́ gā́ for co-agā́ ; amā́ stā́« for amā́ (v)istā́«; cā́ mā́ for co-emā́ ; dā́“beā́ for dā́“(h)abeā́ ; jā́«nior for ju(v)enior. nā́«l for nihil;

3. Parasitic Vowels. In the environment of liquids and nasals a parasitic vowel sometimes develops; as,--
vinculum for earlier vinclum.

So perā́«culum, saeculum.

4. Syncope. Sometimes a vowel drops out by syncope; as,--

Ä rdor for Ä ridor (compare _Ä ridus_); valdÄ“ for validÄ“ (compare _validus_).

CONSONANT CHANGES[10]

8. 1. Rhotacism. An original s between vowels became r; as,---

arbÄ s, Gen. arboris (for arbosis); genus, Gen. generis (for genesis); dirimÄ (for dis-emÄ).

2. dt, tt, ts each give s or ss; as,---

pÄ“nsum for pend-tum; versum for vert-tum; mÄ«les for mÄ«let-s; sessus for sedtus; passus for pattus.

3. Final consonants were often omitted; as,---

cor for cord; lac for lact.

4. Assimilation of Consonants. Consonants are often assimilated to a following sound. Thus: accurÄ (adc-); aggerÄ (adg-); asserÄ (ads-); allÄ tus (adl-); apportÄ (adp-); attulÄ« (adt-); arrÄ«deÄ (adr-); afferÄ (adf-); occurÄ (obc-); suppÄ nÄ (subp-); offerÄ (obf-); corruÄ (comr-); collÄ tus (coml-); etc.

5. Partial Assimilation. Sometimes the assimilation is only partial. Thus:---

a) b before s or t becomes p; as,---

scrÄ«psÄ« (scrÄ«b-sÄ«), scrÄ«ptum (scrÄ«b-tum).

b) g before s or t becomes c; as,---

Ä ctus (Ä g-tus).

c) m before a dental or guttural becomes n; as,---

eundem (eum-dem); prÄ«nceps (prÄ«m-ceps).

PECULIARITIES OF ORTHOGRAPHY.

9. Many words have variable orthography.

1. Sometimes the different forms belong to different periods of the language. Thus, quom, voltus, volnus, volt, etc., were the prevailing forms almost down to the Augustan age; after that, cum, vultus, vulnus, vult, etc. So optumus, maxumus, lubet, lubÄ«dÄ , etc. down to about the same era; later, optimus, maximus, libet, libÄ«dÄ , etc.

2. In some words the orthography varies at one and the same period of the language. Examples are expectÄ , expectÄ ; existÄ , existÄ ; epistula, epistola; adulÄ“scÄ“ns, adolÄ“scÄ“ns; paulus, paullus; cottÄ«diÄ“, cotÄ«diÄ“; and, particularly, prepositional compounds, which often made a concession to the etymology in the spelling; as,---

ad-gerÄ or aggerÄ ; ad-serÄ or asserÄ ; ad-liciÄ or alliciÄ ; in-lÄ tus or illÄ tus; ad-rogÄ ns or arrogÄ ns; sub-moveÄ or summoveÄ ; and many others.

3. Compounds of *jaci* were usually written *ici*, *dici*, *adici*, *obici*, etc., but were probably pronounced as though written *adjici*, *objici*, etc.

4. Adjectives and nouns in *-quus*, *-quum*; *-vus*, *-vum*; *-uus*, *-uum* preserved the earlier forms in *-quos*, *-quom*; *-vos*, *-vom*; *-uos*, *-uom*, down through the Ciceronian age; as, *antiquos*, *antiquom*; *saevos*; *perpetuos*; *equos*; *servos*. Similarly verbs in the 3d plural present indicative exhibit the terminations *-quont*, *-quontur*; *-vont*, *-vontur*; *-uont*, *-uontur*, for the same period; as, *relinquont*, *loquontur*; *vont*, *metuont*.

The older spelling, while generally followed in editions of Plautus and Terence, has not yet been adopted in our prose texts.

* * * * *

PART II.

* * * * *

INFLECTIONS.

* * * * *

10. The Parts of Speech in Latin are the same as in English, viz. Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections; but the Latin has no article.

11. Of these eight parts of speech the first four are capable of Inflection, i.e. of undergoing change of form to express modifications of meaning. In case of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, this process is called Declension; in case of verbs, Conjugation.

* * * * *

CHAPTER I.

--_Declension._

A. NOUNS.

12. A Noun is the name of a *person*, *place*, *thing*, or *quality*; as, *Caesar*, *Caesar*; *Roma*, *Rome*; *penna*, *feather*; *virtus*, *courage*.

1. Nouns are either Proper or Common. Proper nouns are permanent names of persons or places; as, *Caesar*, *Roma*. Other nouns are Common: as, *penna*, *virtus*.

2. Nouns are also distinguished as Concrete or Abstract.

a) Concrete nouns are those which designate individual objects; as, *mons*, *mountain*; *pes*, *foot*; *die*, *day*; *mens*, *mind*.

Under concrete nouns are included, also, collective nouns; as, *legio*, *legion*; *comitatus*, *retinue*.

b) Abstract nouns designate qualities; as, *constantia*, *steadfastness*; *paupertas*, *poverty*.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

13. There are three Genders,—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter. Gender in Latin is either natural or grammatical.

Natural Gender.

14. The gender of nouns is natural when it is based upon sex. Natural gender is confined entirely to names of persons; and these are—

1. Masculine, if they denote males; as,—

nauta, *_sailor_*; agricola, *farmer*.

2. Feminine, if they denote females; as,—

māter, *_mother_*; rēgina, *queen*.

Grammatical Gender.

15. Grammatical gender is determined not by sex, but by the general signification of the word, or the ending of its Nominative Singular. By grammatical gender, nouns denoting things or qualities are often Masculine or Feminine, simply by virtue of their signification or the ending of the Nominative Singular. The following are the general principles for determining grammatical gender:—

A. Gender determined by Signification.

1. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months* are Masculine; as,—

Sēna, *_Seine_*; Eurū, *_east wind_*; Aprīlis, *April*.

2. Names of *Trees*, and such names of *Towns* and *Islands* as end in *–us*, are Feminine; as,—

quercus, *_oak_*; Corinthus, *_Corinth_*; Rhodus, *Rhodes*.

Other names of towns and islands follow the gender of their endings (see *B*, below); as,—

Delphos, n.; Leuctra, n.; Tēbur, n.; Carthāgō, f.

3. Indeclinable nouns, also infinitives and phrases, are Neuter; as,—

nihil, *_nothing_*; nefās, *_wrong_*; amāre, *to love*.

NOTE.—Exceptions to the above principles sometimes occur; as, Allia (the river), f.

B. Gender determined by Ending of Nominative Singular.

The gender of other nouns is determined by the ending of the Nominative Singular.[11]

NOTE 1.—Common Gender. Certain nouns are sometimes Masculine, sometimes Feminine. Thus, sacerdos may mean either *priest* or *priestess*, and is Masculine or Feminine accordingly. So also cāvis, *_citizen_*; pāns, *_parent_*; etc. The gender of such nouns is said to be *common*.

NOTE 2.—Names of animals usually have grammatical gender, according to the ending of the Nominative Singular, but the one form may designate either the male or female; as, *anser*, m., *goose* or *gander*. So *vulpes*, f., *_fox_*; *aquila*, f., *eagle*.

NUMBER.

16. The Latin has two Numbers,—the Singular and Plural. The Singular denotes one object, the Plural, more than one.

CASES.

17. There are six Cases in Latin:—

Nominative, Case of Subject; Genitive, Objective with *of*, or Possessive; Dative, Objective with *to* or *_for_*; Accusative, Case of Direct Object; Vocative, Case of Address; Ablative, Objective with *by*, *from*, *in*, *with*.

1. LOCATIVE. Vestiges of another case, the Locative (denoting place where), occur in names of towns and in a few other words.

2. OBLIQUE CASES. The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative are called Oblique Cases.

3. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS. The different cases are formed by appending certain case-endings to a fundamental part called the Stem.[12] Thus, *portam* (Accusative Singular) is formed by adding the case-ending *-m* to the stem *porta-*. But in most cases the final vowel of the stem has coalesced so closely with the actual case-ending that the latter has become more or less obscured. The *_apparent case-ending_* thus resulting is called a termination.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

18. There are five Declensions in Latin, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the Stem, and also by the Termination of the Genitive Singular, as follows:—

DECLENSION. FINAL LETTER OF STEM. GEN. TERMINATION. First *ā* *-ae* Second *ā* *-ā* Third *ā* / Some consonant *-ā* Fourth *ā* *-ā* Fifth *ā* *-ā* / *-ā*

Cases alike in Form.

19. 1. The Vocative is regularly like the Nominative, except in the singular of nouns in *-us* of the Second Declension.

2. The Dative and Ablative Plural are always alike.

3. In Neuters the Accusative and Nominative are always alike, and in the Plural end in *-ā*.

4. In the Third, Fourth, and Fifth Declensions, the Accusative Plural is regularly like the Nominative.

* * * * *

FIRST DECLENSION.

ā -Stems.

20. Pure Latin nouns of the First Declension regularly end, in the Nominative Singular, in *-ā*, weakened from *-ā*, and are of the Feminine Gender. They are declined as follows:—

Porta, *_gate_*; stem, portā —.

SINGULAR. CASES. MEANINGS. TERMINATIONS. *_Nom._* porta *a gate* (as subject) *-ā* *_Gen._* portae *of a gate* *-ae* *_Dat._* portae *to or for a gate* *-ae* *_Acc._* portam *a gate* (as object) *-am* *_Voc._* porta *O gate!* *-ā* *_Abl._* portā *_with, by, from, in a gate_ -ā*

PLURAL. *_Nom._* portae *gates* (as subject) *-ae* *_Gen._* portārum *of gates* *-ārum* *_Dat._* portā^s *to or for gates* *-ā^s* *_Acc._* portās *gates* (as object) *-ās* *_Voc._* portae *O gates!* *-ae* *_Abl._* portā^s *_with, by, from, in gates_ -ā^s*

1. The Latin has no article, and porta may mean either *a gate* or *_the gate_*; and in the Plural, *gates* or *the gates*.

Peculiarities of Nouns of the First Declension.

21. 1. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER. Nouns denoting males are Masculine; as, nauta, *_sailor_*; agricola, *_farmer_*; also, Hadria, *Adriatic Sea*.

2. Rare Case—Endings,—

a) An old form of the Genitive Singular in *-ās* is preserved in the combination pater familiās, *_father of a family_*; also in mater familiās, filiās, filia familiās. But the regular form of the Genitive in *-ae* is also admissible in these expressions; as, pater familiae.

b) In poetry a Genitive in *-ās* also occurs; as, aula^s.

c) The Locative Singular ends in *-ae*; as, Romae, *at Rome*.

d) A Genitive Plural in *-um* instead of *-ārum* sometimes occurs; as, Dardanidum instead of Dardanidārum. This termination *-um* is not a contraction of *-ārum*, but represents an entirely different case—ending.

e) Instead of the regular ending *-ās*, we usually find *-abus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural of dea, *goddess*, and filiā, *daughter*, especially when it is important to distinguish these nouns from the corresponding forms of deus, *god*, and filiū, *son*. A few other words sometimes have the same peculiarity; as, libertābus (from liberta, *_freedwoman_*), equābus (*_mares_*), to avoid confusion with libertās (from libertus, *_freedman_*) and equās (from equus, *_horse_*).

Greek Nouns.

22. These end in *-ā* (Feminine); *-ās* and *-ās* (Masculine). In the Plural they are declined like regular Latin nouns of the First Declension. In the Singular they are declined as follows:—

Archias, Epitomā, Comet. Archias. epitome. *_Nom._* Archias epitomā comet. *_Gen._* Archiae epitomās comet. *_Dat._* Archiae epitomae comet. *_Acc._* Archiam (or *-ā*) epitomā *_Voc._* Archias epitomā comet. *_Abl._* Archias epitomā comet. (or *-ā*)

1. But most Greek nouns in *-ā* become regular Latin nouns in *-a*, and are declined like porta; as,

grammatica, *_grammar_*; mā«sica, *_music_*; rhÄ“torica, *rhetoric*.

2. Some other peculiarities occur, especially in poetry.

* * * * *

SECOND DECLENSION.

Å –Stems.

23. Pure Latin nouns of the Second Declension end in –us, –er, –ir, Masculine; –um, Neuter. Originally –us in the Nominative of the Masculine was –os; and –um of the Neuters –om. So also in the Accusative.

Nouns in –us and –um are declined as follows:—

Hortus, *_garden_*; Bellum, *_war_*; stem, hortÅ –. stem, bellÅ –. SINGULAR. TERMINATION. *_Nom._* hortus –us bellum –um *_Gen._* hortÅ« –Ä« bellÅ« –Ä« *_Dat._* hortÅ –Å bellÅ –Å *_Acc._* hortum –um bellum –um *_Voc._* horte –e bellum –um *_Abl._* hortÅ –Å bellÅ –Å

PLURAL. *_Nom._* hortÅ« –Ä« bella –a *_Gen._* hortÅ rum –Å rum bellÅ rum –Å rum *_Dat._* hortÅ«s –Ä«s bellÅ«s –Ä«s *_Acc._* hortÅ s –Å s bella –a *_Voc._* hortÅ« –Ä« bella –a *_Abl._* hortÅ«s –Ä«s bellÅ«s –Ä«s

Nouns in –er and –ir are declined as follows:—

Puer, *_boy_*; Ager, *_field_*; Vir, *_man_*; stem, puerÅ – stem, agrÅ – stem, virÅ – SINGULAR. TERMINATION. *_Nom._* puer ager vir Wanting *_Gen._* puerÅ« agrÅ« virÅ« –Ä« *_Dat._* puerÅ agrÅ virÅ –Å *_Acc._* puerum agrum virum –um *_Voc._* puer ager vir Wanting *_Abl._* puerÅ agrÅ virÅ –Å

PLURAL. *_Nom._* puerÅ« agrÅ« virÅ« –Ä« *_Gen._* puerÅ rum agrÅ rum virÅ rum –Å rum *_Dat._* puerÅ«s agrÅ«s virÅ«s –Ä«s *_Acc._* puerÅ s agrÅ s virÅ s –Å s *_Voc._* puerÅ« agrÅ« virÅ« –Ä« *_Abl._* puerÅ«s agrÅ«s virÅ«s –Ä«s

1. Note that in words of the type of puer and vir the final vowel of the stem has disappeared in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of ager, the stem is further modified by the development of e before r.

2. The following nouns in –er are declined like puer: adulter, *_adulterer_*; gener, *_son-in-law_*; LÄ«ber, *_Bacchus_*; socer, *_father-in-law_*; vesper, *_evening_*; and compounds in –fer and –ger, as signifer, armiger.

Nouns in –vus, –vum, –quus.

24. Nouns ending in the Nominative Singular in –vus, –vum, –quus, exhibited two types of inflection in the classical Latin,—an earlier and a later,—as follows:—

Earlier Inflection (including Caesar and Cicero). Servos, m., Aevom, n., Equos, m., *slave. age. horse.*
SINGULAR. *_Nom._* servos aevom equos *_Gen._* servÅ« aevÅ« equÅ« *_Dat._* servÅ aevÅ equÅ
Acc. servom aevom equom *_Voc._* serve aevom eque *_Abl._* servÅ aevÅ equÅ

Later inflection (after Cicero). SINGULAR. _Nom._ servus aevum equus _Gen._ servŏ aevŏ equŏ
 Dat. servŏ aevŏ equŏ _Act._ servum aevum equum _Voc._ serve aevum eque _Abl._ servŏ aevŏ
 equŏ

1. The Plural of these nouns is regular, and always uniform.

Peculiarities of Inflection in the Second Declension.

25. 1. Proper names in -ius regularly form the Genitive Singular in -ŏ (instead of -iŏ), and the Vocative Singular in -ŏ (for -ie); as Vergŏ-lŏ, of *Virgil*, or *O Virgil* (instead of Vergiliŏ, Vergilie). In such words the accent stands upon the penult, even though that be short. Nouns in -ajus, -ejus form the Gen. in -aŏ, -eŏ, as Pompejus, Pompeŏ.

2. Nouns in -ius and -ium, until after the beginning of the reign of Augustus (31 B.C.), regularly formed the Genitive Singular in -i (instead of -iŏ); as,--

Nom. ingenium fŏlius _Gen._ ingŏnŏ fŏlŏ

These Genitives accent the penult, even when it is short.

3. fŏlius forms the Vocative Singular in -ŏ (for -ie); viz. fŏlŏ, _O son!_

4. Deus, *god*, lacks the Vocative Singular. The Plural is inflected as follows:--

Nom. dŏ (deŏ) _Gen._ deŏrum (deum) _Dat._ dŏs (deŏs) _Acc._ deŏs _Voc._ dŏ (deŏ)
 Abl. dŏs (deŏs)

5. The Locative Singular ends in -ŏ; as, Corinthŏ, at *Corinth*.

6. The Genitive Plural has -um, instead of -ŏrum,--

a) in words denoting money and measure; as, talentum, _of talents_; modium, _of pecks_; sŏstertium, of *sesterces*.

b) in duumvir, triumvir, decemvir; as, duumvirum.

c) sometimes in other words; as, lŏberum, _of the children_; socium, of *the allies*.

Exceptions to Gender in the Second Declension.

26. 1. The following nouns in -us are Feminine by exception:--

a) Names of towns, islands, trees--according to the general rule laid down in Â§ 15, 2; also some names of countries; as Aegyptus, *Egypt*.

b) Five special words,--

alvus, _belly_; carbasus, _flax_; colus, _distaff_; humus, _ground_; vannus, _winnowing-fan_.

c) A few Greek Feminines; as,--

atomus, _atom_; diphthongus, *diphthong*.

2. The following nouns in -us are Neuter:—

pelagus, _sea_; vā«rus, _poison_; vulgus, *crowd*.

Greek Nouns of the Second Declension.

27. These end in -os, -ā s, Masculine or Feminine; and -on, Neuter. They are mainly proper names, and are declined as follows:—

Barbitos, m. Androgeā s, m., ā^alion, n., and f., _Androgeos._ _Troy._ _lyre._ _Nom._ barbitos Androgeā s
ā^alion _Gen._ barbitā« Androgeā , -ā« ā^aliā« _Dat._ barbitā Androgeā ā^aliā _Acc._ barbiton
Androgeā , -ā n ā^alion _Voc._ barbite Androgeā s ā^alion _Abl._ barbitā Androgeā ā^aliā

1. Nouns in -os sometimes form the Accusative Singular in -um instead of -on; as, Dā^alum, *Delos*.

2. The Plural of Greek nouns, when it occurs, is usually regular.

3. For other rare forms of Greek nouns the lexicon may be consulted.

* * * * *

THIRD DECLENSION.

28. Nouns of the Third Declension end in -a, -e, -ā«, -ā , -y, -c, -l, -n, -r, -s, -t, -x. The Third Declension includes several distinct classes of Stems,—

I. Pure Consonant-Stems. II. ā-—Stems. III. Consonant-Stems which have partially adapted themselves to the inflection of ā-—Stems. IV. A very few stems ending in a long vowel or a diphthong. V. Irregular Nouns.

I. Consonant-Stems.

29. 1. In these the stem appears in its unaltered form in all the oblique cases, so that the actual case-endings may be clearly recognized.

2. Consonant-Stems fall into several natural subdivisions, according as the stem ends in a Mute, Liquid, Nasal, or Spirant.

A. Mute-Stems.

30. Mute-Stems may end,—

1. In a Labial (p); as, prā«ncep-s.

2. In a Guttural (g or c); as, rā^amex (rā^ameg-s); dux (duc-s).

3. In a Dental (d or t); as, lapis (lapid-s); mā«les (mā«let-s).

1. STEMS IN A LABIAL MUTE (p).

31. Prā«nceps, m., *chief*.

SINGULAR. TERMINATION. _Nom._ prā«nceps -s _Gen._ prā«ncipis -is _Dat._ prā«ncipā« -ā«

Acc. prĀ«ncipem –em _Voc._ prĀ«nceps –s _Abl._ prĀ«ncipe –e

PLURAL. _Nom._ prĀ«ncipĀ“s –Ā“s _Gen._ prĀ«ncipum –um _Dat._ prĀ«ncipibus –ibus _Acc._ prĀ«ncipĀ“s –Ā“s _Voc._ prĀ«ncipĀ“s –Ā“s _Abl._ prĀ«ncipibus –ibus

2. STEMS IN A GUTTURAL MUTE (g, c).

32. In these the termination –s of the Nominative Singular unites with the guttural, thus producing –x.

rĀ“mex, m., *rower*. Dux, c., *leader*. SINGULAR. PLURAL. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Nom._ rĀ“mex rĀ“migĀ“s dux ducĀ“s _Gen._ rĀ“migis rĀ“migum ducis ducum _Dat._ rĀ“migĀ« rĀ“migibus ducĀ« ducibus _Acc._ rĀ“migem rĀ“migĀ“s ducem ducĀ“s _Voc._ rĀ“mex rĀ“migĀ“s dux ducĀ“s _Abl._ rĀ“mige rĀ“migibus duce ducibus

3. STEMS IN A DENTAL MUTE (d, t).

33. In these the final d or t of the stem disappears in the Nominative Singular before the ending –s.

Lapis, m., *stone*. MĀ«les, m., *soldier*. SINGULAR. PLURAL. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Nom._ lapis lapidĀ“s mĀ«les mĀ«litĀ“s _Gen._ lapidis lapidum mĀ«litis mĀ«litum _Dat._ lapidĀ« lapidibus mĀ«litĀ« mĀ«litibus _Acc._ lapidem lapidĀ“s mĀ«litem mĀ«litĀ“s _Voc._ lapis lapidĀ“s mĀ«les mĀ«litĀ“s _Abl._ lapide lapidibus mĀ«lite mĀ«litibus

B. Liquid Stems.

34. These end in –l or –r.

Vigil, m., Victor, m., Aequor, n., *watchman*. *conqueror*. *sea*.

SINGULAR. _Nom._ vigil victor aequor _Gen._ vigilis victĀ ris aequoris _Dat._ vigilĀ« victĀ rĀ« aequorĀ« _Acc._ vigilem victĀ rem aequor _Voc._ vigil victor aequor _Abl._ vigile victĀ re aequore

PLURAL. _Nom._ vigilĀ“s victĀ rĀ“s aequora _Gen._ vigilum victĀ rum aequorum _Dat._ vigilibus victĀ ribus aequoribus _Acc._ vigilĀ“s victĀ rĀ“s aequora _Voc._ vigilĀ“s victĀ rĀ“s aequora _Abl._ vigilibus victĀ ribus aequoribus

1. Masculine and Feminine stems ending in a liquid form the Nominative and Vocative Singular without termination.

2. The termination is also lacking in the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Singular of all neuters of the Third Declension.

C. Nasal Stems.

35. These end in –n,[13] which often disappears in the Nom. Sing.

LeĀ , m., *lion*. nĀ men, n., *name* SINGULAR. PLURAL. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Nom._ leĀ leĀ nĀ“s nĀ men nĀ mina _Gen._ leĀ nis leĀ num nĀ minis nĀ minum _Dat._ leĀ nĀ« leĀ nibus nĀ minĀ« nĀ minibus _Acc._ leĀ nem leĀ nĀ“s nĀ men nĀ mina _Voc._ leĀ leĀ nĀ“s nĀ men nĀ mina _Abl._ leĀ ne leĀ nibus nĀ mine nĀ minibus

D. s–Stems.

36. *M* s, m. Genus, n., Honor, m., *custom. race. honor.*

SINGULAR. *_Nom._* *m* s genus honor *_Gen._* *m* ris generis hon^o ris *_Dat._* *m* r^o gener^o hon^o r^o *_Acc._* *m* rem genus hon^o rem *_Voc._* *m* s genus honor *_Abl._* *m* re genere hon^o re

PLURAL. *_Nom._* *m* r^o genera hon^o r^o *_Gen._* *m* rum generum hon^o rum *_Dat._* *m* ribus generibus hon^o ribus *_Acc._* *m* r^o genera hon^o r^o *_Voc._* *m* r^o genera hon^o r^o *_Abl._* *m* ribus generibus hon^o ribus

1. Note that the final *s* of the stem becomes *r* (between vowels) in the oblique cases. In many words (honor, color, and the like) the *r* of the oblique cases has, by analogy, crept into the Nominative, displacing the earlier *s*, though the forms hon^o s, col^o s, etc., also occur, particularly in early Latin and in poetry.

II. *Ä*--Stems.

A. Masculine and Feminine Ä--Stems.

37. These regularly end in *-is* in the Nominative Singular, and always have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural. Originally the Accusative Singular ended in *-im*, the Ablative Singular in *-Ä*, and the Accusative Plural in *-Ä*; but these endings have been largely displaced by *-em*, *-e*, and *-Ä*'s, the endings of Consonant-Stems.

38. *Tussis*, f., *Ä*^agnis, m., *Hostis*, c., *_cough_*; stem, *_fire_*; stem, *_enemy_*; stem, *tussi-*. *Ä*^ogni-. *hosti-*.

SINGULAR. TERMINATION. *_Nom._* *tussis Ä*^ogni hostis *-is* *_Gen._* *tussis Ä*^ogni hostis *-is* *_Dat._* *tussÄ*^o *Ä*^ogni^o host^o *-Ä*^o *_Acc._* *tussim Ä*^ognem hostem *-im*, *-em* *_Voc._* *tussis Ä*^ogni hostis *-is* *_Abl._* *tussÄ*^o *Ä*^ogni^o or *e* hoste *-Ä*^o, *-e*

PLURAL. *_Nom._* *tussÄ*^o s *Ä*^ogni^o s host^o s *-Ä*^o s *_Gen._* *tussium Ä*^ognium hostium *-ium* *_Dat._* *tussibus Ä*^ognibus hostibus *-ibus* *_Acc._* *tussÄ*^o s or *-Ä*^o s *Ä*^ogni^o s or *-Ä*^o s host^o s or *-Ä*^o s *-Ä*^o s, *-Ä*^o s *_Voc._* *tussÄ*^o s *Ä*^ogni^o s host^o s *-Ä*^o s *_Abl._* *tussibus Ä*^ognibus hostibus *-ibus*

1. To the same class belong--

apis, bee. crÄ tis, *hurdle. â* *sec^oris, *axe. auris, ear. *febris, fever. sÄ*' mentis, *sowing. avis, bird. orbis, circle. â* *sitis, *thirst. axis, axle. ovis, sheep. torris, brand. *bÄ*'ris, *_plough-beam_. pelvis, basin. â* *turris, *tower. clÄ* vis, *key. puppis, stern. trudis, pole. collis, hill. restis, rope. vectis, lever. and many others.*

Words marked with a star regularly have Acc. *-im*; those marked with a â regularly have Abl. *-Ä*. Of the others, many at times show *-im* and *-Ä*. Town and river names in *-is* regularly have *-im*, *-Ä*.

2. Not all nouns in *-is* are *Ä*--Stems. Some are genuine consonant-stems, and have the regular consonant terminations throughout, notably, *canis, _dog_*; *juvenis, youth*. [14]

3. Some genuine *Ä*--Stems have become disguised in the Nominative Singular; as, *pars, part*, for *par(ti)s*; *anas, duck*, for *ana(ti)s*; so also *mors, _death_*; *dÄ* s, *_dowry_*; *nox, _night_*; *sors, _lot_*; *mÄ*'ns, *_mind_*; *ars, _art_*; *gÄ*'ns, *_tribe_*; and some others.

B. Neuter Ä--Stems.

39. These end in the Nominative Singular in *-e*, *-al*, and *-ar*. They always have *-Ä* in the Ablative Singular, *-ia* in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural, and *-ium* in the Genitive Plural, thus holding more steadfastly to the *i*-character than do Masculine and Feminine *Ä*--Stems.

Sedile, Animal, Calcar, _seat_; _animal_; _spur_; stem, sedÄ«li-. stem, stem, animÄ li-. calcÄ ri-.

SINGULAR. TERMINATION. _Nom._ sedÄ«le animal calcar -e or wanting _Gen._ sedÄ«lis animÄ lis calcÄ ris -is _Dat._ sedÄ«lÄ« animÄ lÄ« calcÄ rÄ« -Ä« _Acc._ sedÄ«le animal calcar -e or wanting _Voc._ sedÄ«le animal calcar -e or wanting _Abl._ sedÄ«lÄ« animÄ lÄ« calcÄ rÄ« -Ä«

PLURAL. _Nom._ sedÄ«lia animÄ lia calcÄ ria -ia _Gen._ sedÄ«lium animÄ lium calcÄ rium -ium _Dat._ sedÄ«libus animÄ libus calcÄ ribus -ibus _Acc._ sedÄ«lia animÄ lia calcÄ ria -ia _Voc._ sedÄ«lia animÄ lia calcÄ ria -ia _Abl._ sedÄ«libus animÄ libus calcÄ ribus -ibus

1. In most words of this class the final -i of the stem is lost in the Nominative Singular; in others it appears as -e.

2. Proper names in -e form the Ablative Singular in -e; as, SÄ racte, _Mt. Soracte_; so also sometimes mare, *sea*.

III. Consonant-Stems that have partially adapted themselves to the Inflection of _Ä-_-Stems.

40. Many Consonant-Stems have so far adapted themselves to the inflection of Ä--stems as to take -ium in the Genitive Plural, and -Ä«s in the Accusative Plural. Their true character as Consonant-Stems, however, is shown by the fact that they never take -im in the Accusative Singular, or -Ä« in the Ablative Singular. The following words are examples of this class:--

CaedÄ“s, f., Arx, f., Linter, f., _slaughter_; _citadel_; _skiff_; stem, caed-. stem, arc-. stem, lintr-.

SINGULAR. _Nom._ caedÄ“s arx linter _Gen._ caedis arcis lintris _Dat._ caedÄ« arcÄ« lintrÄ« _Acc._ caedem arcem lintrem _Voc._ caedÄ“s arx linter _Abl._ caede arce lintre

PLURAL. _Nom._ caedÄ“s arcÄ“s lintrÄ“s _Gen._ caedium arcium lintrium _Dat._ caedibus arcibus lintribus _Acc._ caedÄ“s, -Ä«s arcÄ“s, -Ä«s lintrÄ“s, -Ä«s _Voc._ caedÄ“s arcÄ“s lintrÄ“s _Abl._ caedibus arcibus lintribus

1. The following classes of nouns belong here:--

a) Nouns in -Ä“s, with Genitive in -is; as, nÄ«bÄ“s, aedÄ“s, clÄ dÄ“s, etc.

b) Many monosyllables in -s or -x preceded by one or more consonants; as, urbs, mÄ ns, stirps, lanx.

c) Most nouns in -ns and -rs as, cliÄ“ns, cohors.

d) Ä“ter, venter; fÄ«r, lÄ«s, mä s, mä«s, nix; and the Plurals faucÄ“s, penÄ tÄ“s, OptimÄ tÄ“s, SamnitÄ“s, QuirÄ«tÄ“s.

e) Sometimes nouns in -tÄ s with Genitive -tÄ tis; as, cÄ«vitÄ s, aetÄ s. CÄ«vitÄ s *usually* has cÄ«vitÄ tium.

IV. Stems in _-Ä«_, _-Ä«_, and Diphthongs.

41. Vis, f., SÄ«s, c., BÄ s, c., ox, Juppiter, m., _force_; _swine_; _cow_; _Jupiter_; stem, vÄ«-. stem, sÄ«-. stem, bou-. stem, Jou-.

SINGULAR. _Nom._ vÄ«s sÄ«s bÄ s Juppiter _Gen._ ----- suis bovis Jovis _Dat._ ----- suÄ« bovÄ«

Jov-Ä« _Acc._ vim suem bovem Jovem _Voc._ v-Ä«s s-Ä«s b-Ä«s Juppiter _Abl._ v-Ä« sue bove Jove

PLURAL. _Nom._ v-Ä«r-Ä«s su-Ä«s bov-Ä«s _Gen._ v-Ä«rium suum bovom, boum _Dat._ v-Ä«ribus suis, subus b-Ä« bus, b-Ä«bus _Acc._ v-Ä«r-Ä«s su-Ä«s bov-Ä«s _Voc._ v-Ä«r-Ä«s su-Ä«s bov-Ä«s _Abl._ v-Ä«ribus suis, subus b-Ä« bus, b-Ä«bus

1. Notice that the oblique cases of s-Ä«s have -Ä«- in the root syllable.
2. Gr-Ä«s is declined like s-Ä«s, except that the Dative and Ablative Plural are always gruibus.
3. Juppiter is for Jou-pater, and therefore contains the same stem as in Jov-is, Jov-Ä«, etc.

NÄ vis was originally a diphthong stem ending in au-, but it has passed over to the Ä--stems (Ä§ 37). Its ablative often ends in -Ä«.

V. Irregular Nouns.

42. Senex, m., CarÄ , f., Os, n., *old man. flesh. bone.*

SINGULAR. _Nom._ senex carÄ os _Gen._ senis carnis ossis _Dat._ sen-Ä« carn-Ä« oss-Ä« _Acc._ senem carnem os _Voc._ senex carÄ os _Abl._ sene carne osse

PLURAL. _Nom._ sen-Ä«s carn-Ä«s ossa _Gen._ senum carnum ossium _Dat._ senibus carnibus ossibus _Acc._ sen-Ä«s carn-Ä«s ossa _Voc._ sen-Ä«s carn-Ä«s ossa _Abl._ senibus carnibus ossibus

1. Iter, itineris, n., *way*, is inflected regularly throughout from the stem itiner-.
2. Supellex, supellectilis, f., *furniture*, is confined to the Singular. The oblique cases are formed from the stem supellectil-. The ablative has both -Ä« and -e.
3. Jecur, n., *liver*, forms its oblique cases from two stems,—jecor- and jecinor-. Thus, Gen. jecoris or jecinoris.
4. Femur, n., *thigh*, usually forms its oblique cases from the stem femor-, but sometimes from the stem femin-. Thus, Gen. femoris or feminis.

General Principles of Gender in the Third Declension.

43. 1. Nouns in -Ä« , -or, -Ä«s , -er, -Ä«s are Masculine.

2. Nouns in -Ä«s , -Ä«s, -is, -ys, -x, -s (preceded by a consonant); -dÄ« , -gÄ« (Genitive -inis); -iÄ« (abstract and collective), -Ä«s (Genitive -Ä«tis or -Ä«dis) are Feminine.

3. Nouns ending in -a, -e, -i, -y, -o, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -Ä«s are Neuter.

Chief Exceptions to Gender in the Third Declension.

44. Exceptions to the Rule for Masculines.

1. Nouns in -Ä« .

a. Feminine: carÄ , *flesh*.

2. Nouns in -or.

- a. Feminine: arbor, *tree*.
- b. Neuter: aequor, *_sea_*; cor, *_heart_*; marmor, *marble*.

3. Nouns in -ŏ s.

- a. Feminine: dŏ s, *dowry*.
- b. Neuter: ŏ s (ŏ ris), *mouth*.

4. Nouns in -er.

- a. Feminine: linter, *skiff*.
- b. Neuter: cadŏ ver, *_corpse_*; iter, *_way_*; tŏ«ber, *_tumor_*; ŏ«ber, *udder*. Also botanical names in -er; as, *acer, maple*.

5. Nouns in -ŏ•s.

- a. Feminine: seges, *crop*.

45. Exceptions to the Rule for Feminines.

1. Nouns in -ŏ s.

- a. Masculine: vŏ s, *bondsman*.
- b. Neuter: vŏ s, *vessel*.

2. Nouns in -ŏ“s.

- a. Masculine: ariŏ“s, *_ram_*; pariŏ“s, *_wall_*; pŏ“s, *foot*.

3. Nouns in -is.

- a. Masculine: all nouns in -nis and -guis; as, amnis, *_river_*; ŏ«gnis, *_fire_*; pŏ nis, *_bread_*; sanguis, *_blood_*; unguis, *nail*.

Also—

axis, *axle*. piscis, *fish*. collis, *hill*. postis, *post*. fascis, *bundle*. pulvis, *dust*. lapis, *stone*. orbis, *circle*. mŏ“nsis, *month*. sentis, *brier*.

4. Nouns in -x.

- a. Masculine: apex, *_peak_*; cŏ dex, *_tree-trunk_*; grex, *_flock_*; imbrex, *_tile_*; pollex, *_thumb_*; vertex, *_summit_*; calix, *cup*.

5. Nouns in -s preceded by a consonant.

a. Masculine: dŕns, *_tooth_*; fŕ ns, *_fountain_*; mŕ ns, *_mountain_*; pŕ ns, *bridge*.

6. Nouns in -dŕ .

a. Masculine: cardŕ , *_hinge_*; ŕ rdŕ , *order*.

46. Exceptions to the Rule for Neuters.

1. Nouns in -l.

a. Masculine: sŕ l, *_sun_*; sŕ l, *salt*.

2. Nouns in -n.

a. Masculine: pecten, *comb*.

3. Nouns in -ur.

a. Masculine: vultur, *vulture*.

4. Nouns in -ŕs.

a. Masculine: lepus, *hare*.

Greek Nouns of the Third Declension.

47. The following are the chief peculiarities of these:—

1. The ending -ŕf in the Accusative Singular; as, aetherŕf, *_aether_*; Salamŕnŕf, *Salamis*.

2. The ending -ŕs in the Nominative Plural; as, Phrygŕs, *Phrygians*.

3. The ending -ŕfs in the Accusative Plural; as, Phrygŕfs, *Phrygians*.

4. Proper names in -ŕs (Genitive -antis) have -ŕ in the Vocative Singular; as, Atlŕs (Atlantis), Vocative Atlŕ, *Atlas*.

5. Neuters in -ma (Genitive -matis) have -ŕs instead of -ibus in the Dative and Ablative Plural; as, poŕmatŕs, *poems*.

6. Orpheus, and other proper names ending in -eus, form the Vocative Singular in -eu (Orpheu, etc.). But in prose the other cases usually follow the second declension; as, Orpheŕ, Orpheŕ, etc.

7. Proper names in -ŕs, like Periclŕs, form the Genitive Singular sometimes in -is, sometimes in -ŕs, as, Periclis or Periclŕs.

8. Feminine proper names in -ŕ have -ŕs in the Genitive, but -ŕ in the other oblique cases; as,—

Nom. Didŕ _Acc._ Didŕ _Gen._ Didŕs _Voc._ Didŕ _Dat._ Didŕ _Abl._ Didŕ

9. The regular Latin endings often occur in Greek nouns.

* * * * *

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Ā--Stems.

48. Nouns of the Fourth Declension end in –us Masculine, and –Ā« Neuter. They are declined as follows:—

FrĀ«ctus, m., *fruit*. CornĀ«, n., *horn*. SINGULAR. PLURAL. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Nom._ frĀ«ctus frĀ«ctĀ«s cornĀ« cornua _Gen._ frĀ«ctĀ«s frĀ«ctuum cornĀ«s cornuum _Dat._ frĀ«ctuĀ« frĀ«ctibus cornĀ« cornibus _Acc._ frĀ«ctum frĀ«ctĀ«s cornĀ« cornua _Voc._ frĀ«ctus frĀ«ctĀ«s cornĀ« cornua _Abl._ frĀ«ctĀ« frĀ«ctibus cornĀ« cornibus

Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fourth Declension.

49. 1. Nouns in –us, particularly in early Latin, often form the Genitive Singular in –Ā«, following the analogy of nouns in –us of the Second Declension; as, senĀ tĀ«, Ā rnĀ tĀ«. This is usually the case in Plautus and Terence.

2. Nouns in –us sometimes have –Ā« in the Dative Singular, instead of –uĀ«; as, frĀ«ctĀ« (for frĀ«ctuĀ«).

3. The ending –ubus, instead of –ibus, occurs in the Dative and Ablative Plural of artĀ«s (Plural), _limbs_; tribus, _tribe_; and in dis-syllables in –cus; as, artubus, tribubus, arcubus, lacubus. But with the exception of tribus, all these words admit the forms in –ibus as well as those in –ubus.

4. Domus, *house*, is declined according to the Fourth Declension, but has also the following forms of the Second:—

domĀ« (locative), _at home_; domĀ , _from home_; domum, *homewards*, _to one's home_; domĀ s, *homewards, to their* (etc.) *homes* 5. The only Neuters of this declension in common use are: cornĀ«, _horn_; genĀ«, _knee_; and verĀ«, *spit*.

Exceptions to Gender in the Fourth Declension.

50. The following nouns in –us are Feminine: acus, _needle_; domus, _house_; manus, _hand_; porticus, _colonnade_; tribus, _tribe_; Ā^adĀ«s (Plural), _Ides_; also names of trees (Ā§ 15, 2).

* * * * *

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Ā“-Stems.

51. Nouns of the Fifth Declension end in –Ā“s, and are declined as follows:—

DiĀ“s, m., *day*. RĀ“s, f., *thing*. SINGULAR. PLURAL. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Nom._ diĀ“s diĀ“s rĀ“s rĀ“s _Gen._ diĀ“Ā« diĀ“rum rĀ“Ā« rĀ“rum _Dat._ diĀ“Ā« diĀ“bus rĀ“Ā« rĀ“bus _Acc._ diem diĀ“s rem rĀ“s _Voc._ diĀ“s diĀ“s rĀ“s rĀ“s _Abl._ diĀ“ diĀ“bus rĀ“ rĀ“bus

Peculiarities of Nouns of the Fifth Declension.

52. 1. The ending of the Genitive and Dative Singular is –Ā“Ā«, instead of –Ā“Ā«, when a consonant

precedes; as, spĀ•Ā«, rĀ•Ā«, fidĀ•Ā«.

2. A Genitive ending -Ā« (for -Ā•Ā«) is found in plĀ“bĀ« (from plĀ“bĀ“s = plĀ“bs) in the expressions tribĀ«nus plĀ“bĀ«, *tribune of the people*, and plĀ“bĀ« scĀ«tum, *_decree of the people_*; sometimes also in other words.

3. A Genitive and Dative form in -Ā“ sometimes occurs; as, aciĀ“.

4. With the exception of diĀ“s and rĀ“s, most nouns of the Fifth Declension are not declined in the Plural. But aciĀ“s, seriĀ“s, speciĀ“s, spĀ“s, and a few others are used in the Nominative and Accusative Plural.

Gender in the Fifth Declension.

53. Nouns of the Fifth Declension are regularly Feminine, except diĀ“s, *day*, and merĀ«diĀ“s, *_mid-day_*. But diĀ“s is sometimes Feminine in the Singular, particularly when it means an *appointed day*.

* * * * *

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

54. Here belong—

1. Nouns used in the Singular only.
2. Nouns used in the Plural only.
3. Nouns used only in certain cases.
4. Indeclinable Nouns.

Nouns used in the Singular only.

55. Many nouns, from the nature of their signification, are regularly used in the Singular only. Thus:—

1. Proper names; as, CicerĀ , *_Cicero_*; Italia, *Italy*.
2. Nouns denoting material; as, aes, *_copper_*; lac, *milk*.
3. Abstract nouns; as, ignĀ rantia, *_ignorance_*; bonitĀ s, *goodness*.

4. But the above classes of words are sometimes used in the Plural. Thus:—

- a) Proper names,—to denote different members of a family, or specimens of a type; as, CicerĀ nĀ“s, *_the Ciceros_*; CatĀ nĀ“s, *men like Cato*.
- b) Names of materials,—to denote objects made of the material, or different kinds of the substance; as, aera, *bronzes* (i.e. bronze figures); ligna, *woods*.
- c) Abstract nouns,—to denote instances of the quality; as, ignĀ rantiae, *cases of ignorance*.

Nouns used in the Plural only.

56. Here belong—

1. Many geographical names; as, Thä“bae, _Thebes_; Leuctra, _Leuctra_; PompejÄ«, *Pompeii*.
2. Many names of festivals; as, MegalÄ“sia, *the Megalesian festival*.
3. Many special words, of which the following are the most important:—

angustiae, *narrow pass*. mÄ nÄ“s, _spirits of the arma, weapons. dead_. dÄ“liciae, *delight*. moenia, *city walls*. dÄ«vitiae, *riches*. minae, *threats*. Ä“dÄ«s, *Ides*. nÄ«ptiae, *marriage*. indÄ«tiae, *truce*. posterÄ«, *descendants*. Ä«nsidiae, *ambush*. reliquiae, *remainder*. majÄ rÄ“s, *ancestors*. tenebrae, *darkness*. verbera, *blows*.

Also in classical prose regularly—

cervÄ«cÄ“s, *neck*. nÄ rÄ“s, *nose*. fidÄ“s, *lyre*. vÄ«scerÄ , *viscera*.

Nouns used only in Certain Cases.

57. 1. Used in only One Case. Many nouns of the Fourth Declension are found only in the Ablative Singular as, jussÄ«, _by the order_; injussÄ«, _without the order_; nÄ tÄ«, *by birth*.

2. Used in Two Cases.

a. Fors (_chance_), Nom. Sing.; forte, Abl. Sing.

b. Spontis (_free-will_), Gen. Sing.; sponte, Abl. Sing.

3. Used in Three Cases. NÄ“mÄ , *no one* (Nom.), has also the Dat. nÄ“minÄ« and the Acc. nÄ“minem. The Gen. and Abl. are supplied by the corresponding cases of nÄ«llus; viz. nÄ«llÄ«us and nÄ«llÄ .

4. Impetus has the Nom., Acc., and Abl. Sing., and the Nom. and Acc. Plu.; viz. impetus, impetum, impetÄ«, impetÄ«s.

5. a. PrecÄ«, precem, prece, lacks the Nom. and Gen. Sing.

b. Vicis, vicem, vice, lacks the Nom. and Dat. Sing.

6. Opis, dapis, and frÄ«gis,—all lack the Nom. Sing.

7. Many monosyllables of the Third Declension lack the Gen. Plu.: as, cor, lÄ«x, sÄ l, aes, Ä s (Ä ris), rÄ«s, sÄ l, tÄ«s.

Indeclinable Nouns.

58. Here belong—

fÄ s, n., *right*. nefÄ s, n., *impiety*. Ä«nstar, n., *likeness*. nihil, n., *nothing*. mÄ ne, n., *morning*. secus, n., *sex*.

1. With the exception of mÄ ne (which may serve also as Ablative, _in the morning_), the nouns in this list are simply Neuters confined in use to the Nominative and Accusative Singular.

Heteroclites.

59. These are nouns whose forms are partly of one declension, and partly of another. Thus:—

1. Several nouns have the entire Singular of one declension, while the Plural is of another; as,—

vĀ s, vĀ sis (_vessel_); Plu., vĀ sa, vĀ sorĀ um, vĀ sĀ«s, etc. jĀ«gerum, jĀ«gerĀ« (_acre_); Plu., jĀ«gera, jĀ«gerum, jĀ«geribus, etc.

2. Several nouns, while belonging in the main to one declension, have certain special forms belonging to another. Thus:—

a) Many nouns of the First Declension ending in –ia take also a Nom. and Acc. of the Fifth; as, mĀ teriĀ“s, mĀ teriem, *material*, as well as mĀ teria, mĀ teriam.

b) FamĀ“s, *hunger*, regularly of the Third Declension, has the Abl. famĀ“ of the Fifth.

c) RequiĀ“s, requiĀ“tis, *rest*, regularly of the Third Declension, takes an Acc. of the Fifth, requiem, in addition to requiĀ“tem.

d) Besides plĀ“bs, plĀ“bis, *common people*, of the Third Declension, we find plĀ“bĀ“s, plĀ“bĀ•Ā« (also plĀ“bĀ«, see Â§ 52, 2), of the Fifth.

Heterogeneous Nouns.

60. Heterogeneous nouns vary in Gender. Thus:—

1. Several nouns of the Second Declension have two forms,—one Masc. in –us, and one Neuter in –um; as, clipeus, clipeum, _shield_; carrus, carrum, *cart*.

2. Other nouns have one gender in the Singular, another in the Plural; as,—

SINGULAR. PLURAL. balneum, n., _bath_; balneae, f., _bath–house_. epulum, n., _feast_; epulae, f., *feast*. frĀ“num, n., _bridle_; frĀ“nĀ«, m. (rarely frĀ“na, n.), *bridle*. jocus, m., _jest_; joca, n. (also jocĀ«, m.), *jests*. locus, m., _place_; loca, n., _places_; locĀ«, m., *passages or topics in an author*. rĀ strum, n., _rake_; rĀ strĀ«, m.; rĀ stra, n., *rakes*.

a. Heterogeneous nouns may at the same time be heteroclites, as in case of the first two examples above.

Plurals with Change of Meaning.

61. The following nouns have one meaning in the Singular, and another in the Plural:—

SINGULAR. PLURAL. aedĀ“s, _temple_; aedĀ“s, *house*. auxilium, _help_; auxilia, *auxiliary troops*. carcer, _prison_; carcerĀ“s, _stalls for racing–chariot_. castrum, _fort_; castra, *camp*. cĀ pia, _abundance_; cĀ piae, *troops, resources*. fĀ«nis, _end_; fĀ«nĀ“s, *borders, territory*. fortĀ«na, _fortune_; fortĀ«nae, *possessions, wealth*. grĀ tia, *favor*, grĀ tiae, *thanks*. _gratitude_; impedĀ«mentum, impedĀ«menta, *baggage*. _hindrance_; littera, *letter* (of the litterae, _epistle; literature_. alphabet); mĀ s, *habit, custom*; mĀ rĀ“s, *character*. opera, *help, service*; operae, *laborers*. (ops) opis, _help_; opĀ“s, *resources*. pars, _part_; partĀ“s, _party_; _rĀ le_. sĀ l, _salt_; sĀ flĀ“s, *wit*.

* * * * *

B. ADJECTIVES.

62. Adjectives denote *quality*. They are declined like nouns, and fall into two classes,—

1. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

2. Adjectives of the Third Declension.

* * * * *

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

63. In these the Masculine is declined like *hortus*, *puer*, or *ager*, the Feminine like *porta*, and the Neuter like *bellum*. Thus, Masculine like *hortus*:—

Bonus, *good*.

SINGULAR. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ bonus bona bonum _Gen._ bon^o bon^{ae} bon^{um} _Dat._ bon^o bon^{ae} bon^{um} _Acc._ bonum bonam bonum _Voc._ bone bona bonum _Abl._ bon^o bon^o

PLURAL. _Nom._ bon^o bon^{ae} bona _Gen._ bon^o rum bon^{ae} rum bon^{um} rum _Dat._ bon^o s bon^{ae} s bon^{um} s _Acc._ bon^o s bon^{ae} s bona _Voc._ bon^o bon^{ae} bona _Abl._ bon^o s bon^{ae} s bon^{um} s

1. The Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neut. of Adjectives in *-ius* ends in *-i^o* (not in *-^o* as in case of Nouns; see Â§ 25, 1; 2). So also the Voc. Sing. of such Adjectives ends in *-ie*, not in *-^o*. Thus *eximius* forms Gen. *eximi^o*; Voc. *eximie*.

2. Distributives (see Â§ 78, 1, c) regularly form the Gen. Plu. Masc. and Neut. in *-um* instead of *-^o rum* (compare Â§ 25, 6); as, *num cent^onum*; but always *singul^o rum*.

64. Masculine like *puer*:—

Tener, *tender*.

SINGULAR. MASCULINE. FEMININE NEUTER. _Nom._ tener tenera tenerum _Gen._ tener^o tener^{ae} tener^{um} _Dat._ tener^o tener^{ae} tener^{um} _Acc._ tenerum teneram tenerum _Voc._ tener tenera tenerum _Abl._ tener^o tener^{ae} tener^{um}

PLURAL. _Nom._ tener^o tener^{ae} tenera _Gen._ tener^o rum tener^{ae} rum tener^{um} rum _Dat._ tener^o s tener^{ae} s tener^{um} s _Acc._ tener^o s tener^{ae} s tenera _Voc._ tener^o tener^{ae} tenera _Abl._ tener^o s tener^{ae} s

65. Masculine like *ager*:—

Sacer, *sacred*.

SINGULAR. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ sacer sacra sacrum _Gen._ sacr^o sacr^{ae} sacr^{um} _Dat._ sacr^o sacr^{ae} sacr^{um} _Acc._ sacrum sacram sacrum _Voc._ sacer sacra sacrum _Abl._ sacr^o sacr^{ae} sacr^{um}

PLURAL. _Nom._ sacr^o sacr^{ae} sacra _Gen._ sacr^o rum sacr^{ae} rum sacr^{um} rum _Dat._ sacr^o s sacr^{ae} s

sacrĀ«s _Acc._ sacrĀ s sacrĀ s sacra _Voc._ sacrĀ« sacrae sacra _Abl._ sacrĀ«s sacrĀ«s sacrĀ«s

1. Most adjectives in -er are declined like sacer. The following however, are declined like tener: asper, _rough_; lacer, _torn_; lĀ«ber, _free_; miser, _wretched_; prĀ sper, _prosperous_; compounds in -fer and -ger; sometimes dexter, *right*.

2. Satur, *full*, is declined: satur, satura, saturum.

Nine Irregular Adjectives.

66. Here belong—

alius, _another_; alter, _the other_; Ā«llus, _any_; nĀ«llus, _none_; uter, _which?_ (of two); neuter, _neither_; sĀ lus, _alone_; tĀ tus, _whole_; Ā«nus, *one, alone*.

They are declined as follows:—

SINGULAR. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ alius alia aliud _Gen._ alterĀ-us alterĀ-us
alterĀ-us[15] _Dat._ aliĀ« aliĀ« aliĀ« _Acc._ alium aliam aliud _Voc._ ----- _Abl._ aliĀ
aliĀ aliĀ

Nom. alter altera alterum _Gen._ alterĀ-us alterĀ-us alterĀ-us _Dat._ alterĀ« alterĀ«[16] alterĀ« _Acc._
alterum alteram alterum _Voc._ ----- _Abl._ alterĀ alterĀ alterĀ

Nom. uter utra utrum _Gen._ utrĀ«us utrĀ«us utrĀ«us _Dat._ utrĀ« utrĀ« utrĀ« _Acc._ utrum utram
utrum _Voc._ ----- _Abl._ utrĀ utrĀ utrĀ

Nom. tĀ tus tĀ ta tĀ tum _Gen._ tĀ tĀ«us tĀ tĀ«us tĀ tĀ«us _Dat._ tĀ tĀ« tĀ tĀ« tĀ tĀ« _Acc._
tĀ tum tĀ tam tĀ tum _Voc._ ----- _Abl._ tĀ tĀ tĀ tĀ tĀ tĀ

1. All these words lack the Vocative. The Plural is regular.

2. Neuter is declined like uter.

* * * * *

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

67. These fall into three classes,—

1. Adjectives of three terminations in the Nominative Singular,—one for each gender.

2. Adjectives of two terminations.

3. Adjectives of one termination.

a. With the exception of Comparatives, and a few other words mentioned below in Â§ 70, 1, all Adjectives of the Third Declension follow the inflection of Ā--stems; i.e. they have the Ablative Singular in -Ā«, the Genitive Plural in -ium, the Accusative Plural in -Ā«s (as well as -Ā“s) in the Masculine and Feminine, and the Nominative and Accusative Plural in -ia in Neuters.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

68. These are declined as follows:—

Ä€cer, *sharp*.

SINGULAR. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ Ä cer Ä cris Ä cre _Gen._ Ä cris Ä cris Ä cris _Dat._ Ä crÄ« Ä crÄ« Ä crÄ« _Acc._ Ä crem Ä crem Ä cre _Voc._ Ä cer Ä cris Ä cre _Abl._ Ä crÄ« Ä crÄ« Ä crÄ«

PLURAL. _Nom._ Ä crÄ“s Ä crÄ“s Ä cria _Gen._ Ä crium Ä crium Ä crium *Dat*, Ä crius Ä crius Ä crius _Acc._ Ä crÄ“s, -Ä«s Ä crÄ“s, -Ä«s Ä cria _Voc._ Ä crÄ“s Ä crÄ“s Ä cria _Abl._ Ä crius Ä crius Ä crius

1. Like Ä cer are declined alacer, *_lively_*; campester, *_level_*; celebrer, *_famous_*; equester, *_equestrian_*; palÄ«ster, *_marshy_*; pedester, *_pedestrian_*; puter, *_rotten_*; salÄ«ber, *_wholesome_*; silvester, *_woody_*; terrester, *_terrestrial_*; volucer, *_winged_*; also names of months in -ber, as September.

2. Celer, celeris, celere, *swift*, retains the e before r, but lacks the Genitive Plural.

3. In the Nominative Singular of Adjectives of this class the Feminine form is sometimes used for the Masculine. This is regularly true of salÄ«bris, silvestris, and terrestris. In case of the other words in the list, the use of the Feminine for the Masculine is confined chiefly to early and late Latin, and to poetry.

Adjectives of Two Terminations.

69. These are declined as follows:—

Fortis, *_strong_*. Fortior, *_stronger_*. SINGULAR. M. AND F. NEUT. M. AND F. NEUT. _Nom._ fortis forte fortior fortius _Gen._ fortis fortis fortiÄ ris fortiÄ ris _Dat._ fortÄ« fortÄ« fortiÄ rÄ« fortiÄ rÄ« _Acc._ fortem forte fortiÄ rem fortius _Voc._ fortis forte fortior fortius _Abl._ fortÄ« fortÄ« fortiÄ re fortiÄ re

PLURAL. _Nom._ fortÄ“s fortia fortiÄ rÄ“s fortiÄ ra _Gen._ fortium fortium fortiÄ rum fortiÄ rum _Dat._ fortibus fortibus fortiÄ ribus fortiÄ ribus _Acc._ fortÄ“s, -Ä«s fortia fortiÄ rÄ“s, -Ä«s fortiÄ ra _Voc._ fortÄ“s fortia fortiÄ rÄ“s fortiÄ ra _Abl._ fortibus fortibus fortiÄ ribus fortiÄ ribus

1. Fortior is the Comparative of fortis. All Comparatives are regularly declined in the same way. The Acc. Plu. in -Ä«s is rare.

Adjectives of One Termination.

70. FÄ“lÄ«x, *_happy_*. PrÄ«dÄ“ns, *_prudent_*.

SINGULAR. M. AND F. NEUT. M. AND F. NEUT. _Nom._ fÄ“lÄ«x fÄ“lÄ«x prÄ«dÄ“ns prÄ«dÄ“ns _Gen._ fÄ“lÄ«cÄ«s fÄ“lÄ«cis prÄ«dentis prÄ«dentis _Dat._ fÄ“lÄ«cÄ« fÄ“lÄ«cÄ« prÄ«dentÄ« prÄ«dentÄ« _Acc._ fÄ“lÄ«cem fÄ“lÄ«x prÄ«dentem prÄ«dÄ“ns _Voc._ fÄ“lÄ«x fÄ“lÄ«x prÄ«dÄ“ns prÄ«dÄ“ns _Abl._ fÄ“lÄ«cÄ« fÄ“lÄ«cÄ« prÄ«dentÄ« prÄ«dentÄ«

PLURAL. _Nom._ fÄ“lÄ«cÄ“s fÄ“lÄ«cia prÄ«dentÄ“s prÄ«dentia _Gen._ fÄ“lÄ«cium fÄ“lÄ«cium prÄ«dentium prÄ«dentium _Dat._ fÄ“lÄ«cibus fÄ“lÄ«cibus prÄ«dentibus prÄ«dentibus _Acc._ fÄ“lÄ«cÄ“s, -Ä«s fÄ“lÄ«cia prÄ«dentÄ“s, -Ä«s prÄ«dentia _Voc._ fÄ“lÄ«cÄ“s fÄ“lÄ«cia prÄ«dentÄ“s prÄ«dentia _Abl._ fÄ“lÄ«cibus fÄ“lÄ«cibus prÄ«dentibus prÄ«dentibus

Vetus, *old*. PlÄ«s, *more*.

SINGULAR. M. AND F. NEUT. M. AND F. NEUT. _Nom._ vetus vetus ----- plÅ«s _Gen._ veteris veteris
----- plÅ«ris _Dat._ veterÅ« veterÅ« ----- _Acc._ veterem vetus ----- plÅ«s _Voc._ vetus vetus
----- _Abl._ vetere vetere ----- plÅ«re

PLURAL. _Nom._ veterÅ«s vetera plÅ«rÅ«s plÅ«ra _Gen._ veterum veterum plÅ«rium plÅ«rium _Dat._
veteribus veteribus plÅ«ribus plÅ«ribus _Acc._ veterÅ«s vetera plÅ«rÅ«s, -Å«s plÅ«ra _Voc._ veterÅ«s
vetera ----- _Abl._ veteribus veteribus plÅ«ribus plÅ«ribus

1. It will be observed that vetus is declined as a pure Consonant-Stem; i.e. Ablative Singular in -e, Genitive Plural in -um, Nominative Plural Neuter in -a, and Accusative Plural Masculine and Feminine in -Å«s only. In the same way are declined compos, _controlling_; dÅ«ves, _rich_; particeps, _sharing_; pauper, _poor_; prÅ«nceps, _chief_; sÅ« spes, _safe_; superstes, *surviving*. Yet dÅ«ves always has Neut. Plu. dÅ«tia.

2. Inops, *needy*, and memor, *mindful*, have Ablative Singular inopÅ«, memorÅ«, but Genitive Plural inopum, memorum.

3. Participles in -Å«ns and -Å«ns follow the declension of Å«-stems. But they do not have -Å« the Ablative, except when employed as adjectives; when used as participles or as substantives, they have -e; as,--

Å« sapientÅ« virÅ«, _by a wise man_; but Å« sapiente, _by a philosopher._ TarquiniÅ« rÅ«gnante, _under the reign of Tarquin._

4. PlÅ«s, in the Singular, is always a noun.

5. In the Ablative Singular, adjectives, when used as substantives,--

a) usually retain the adjective declension; as,--

aequÅ«lis, *contemporary*, Abl. aequÅ«lÅ«. cÅ«nsulÅ«ris, *ex-consul*, Abl. cÅ«nsulÅ«rÅ«

So names of Months; as, AprÅ«lÅ«, *April*; DecembrÅ«, *December*.

b) But adjectives used as proper names have -e in the Ablative Singular; as, Celere, Celer; JuvenÅ«le, *Juvenal*.

c) Patrials in -Å«s, -Å«tis and -Å«s, -Å«tis, when designating places regularly have -Å«; as, in ArpÅ«nÅ«tÅ«, *on the estate at Arpinum*, yet -e, when used of persons; as, ab ArpÅ«nÅ«te, *by an Arpinatian*.

6. A very few indeclinable adjectives occur, the chief of which are frÅ«gÅ«, *frugal*; nÅ«quam, *worthless*.

7. In poetry, adjectives and participles in -ns sometimes form the Gen. Plu. in -um instead of -ium; as, venientum, *of those coming*.

* * * * *

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

71. 1. There are three degrees of Comparison,--the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

2. The Comparative is regularly formed by adding -ior (Neut. -ius), and the Superlative by adding -issimus

(-a, -um), to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel; as,—

altus, *high*, altior, *higher*, altissimus, *highest, very high*. fortis, *brave*, fortior, fortissimus. fÄ“lÄ“x, *fortunate*, fÄ“lÄ“cior, fÄ“lÄ“cissimus.

So also Participles, when used as Adjectives; as,—

doctus, *learned*, doctior, doctissimus. egÄ“ns, *needy*, egentior, egentissimus.

3. Adjectives in -er form the Superlative by appending -rimus to the Nominative of the Positive. The Comparative is regular. Thus:—

asper, *rough*, asperior, asperrimus. pulcher, *beautiful*, pulchrior, pulcherrimus. Ä cer, *sharp*, Ä crior, Ä cerrimus. celer, *swift*, celerior, celerrimus.

a. Notice mÄ tÄ«rus, mÄ tÄ«rior, mÄ tÄ«rissimus or mÄ tÄ«rimus.

4. Five Adjectives in -ilis form the Superlative by adding -limus to the Stem of the Positive deprived of its final vowel. The Comparative is regular. Thus:—

facilis, *easy*, faciliior, facillimus. difficilis, *difficult*, difficilior, difficillimus. similis, *like*, similioior, simillimus. dissimilis, *unlike*, dissimilioior, dissimillimus. humilis, *low*, humilioior, humillimus.

5. Adjectives in -dicus, -ficus, and -volus form the Comparative and Superlative as though from forms in -dÄ«cÄ“ns, -ficÄ“ns, -volÄ“ns. Thus:—

maledicus, *slanderos*, maledÄ«centior, maledÄ«centissimus. magnificus, *magnificent*, magnificentior, magnificentissimus. benevolus, *kindly*, benevolentior, benevolentissimus.

a. Positives in -dÄ«cÄ“ns and -volÄ“ns occur in early Latin; as maledÄ«cÄ“ns, benevolÄ“ns.

6. DÄ«ves has the Comparative dÄ«vitior or dÄ«tior; Superlative dÄ«vitissimus or dÄ«tissimus.

Irregular Comparison.

72. Several Adjectives vary the Stem in Comparison; viz.—

bonus, *good*, melior, optimus. malus, *bad*, pejor, pessimus. parvus, *small*, minor, minimus. magnus, *large*, major, maximus. multus, *much*, plÄ«s, plÄ«rimus, frÄ«gÄ«, *thrifty*, frÄ«gÄ«lior, frÄ«gÄ«lissimus, nÄ“quam, *worthless*, nÄ“quior, nÄ“quissimus.

Defective Comparison.

73. 1. Positive lacking entirely,—

(Cf. prae, *in front* prior, *former*, prÄ«mus, *first of*.) (Cf. citrÄ , *this side* ceterior, *on this* citimus, *near* of.) side_, (Cf. ultrÄ , *beyond*.) ulterior, *farther*, ultimus, *farthest*. (Cf. intrÄ , *within*.) interior, *inner*, intimus, *inmost* (Cf. prope, *near*.) propior, *nearer*, proximus, *nearest*. (Cf. dÄ“, *down*.) dÄ“terior, *inferior*, dÄ“terrimum, *worst*. (Cf. archaic potis, potior, *preferable*, potissimum, *chiefest possible*.)

2. Positive occurring only in special cases,—

posterÅ diÅ“, annÅ , posterior, *later*, postrÅ“mus, *latest*, etc. _the following *last*. day_, etc., postumus, _late-born_, posterÅ«, *posthumous*. descendants, exteri, exterior, *outer* extrÅ“mus, extimus, *foreigners*, *outermost*. nÅ tiÅ nÅ“s exterae, *foreign nations*, inferÅ«, _gods of the Å«nferior, lower, Å«nfimus, Å«mus, lower world_, *lowest*. Mare Inferum, *Mediterranean Sea*, superÅ«, _gods superior, higher, suprÅ“mus, *last*. above_, summus, *highest*. Mare Superum, *Adriatic Sea*,

3. Comparative lacking.

vetus, *old*, ----[17] veterrimus. fÅ«dus, *faithful*, ---- fÅ«dissimus. novus, *new*, ----[18] novissimus,[19] *last*. sacer, *sacred*, ---- sacerrimus. falsus, *false*, ---- falsissimus.

Also in some other words less frequently used.

4. Superlative lacking.

alacer, *lively*, alacrior, ---- ingÅ“ns, *great*, ingentior, ---- salÅ«tÅ ris, *wholesome*, salÅ«tÅ rior, ---- juvenis, *young*, jÅ«nior, ----[20] senex, *old*, senior. ----[21]

a. The Superlative is lacking also in many adjectives in -Å lis, -Å«lis, -Å-lis, -bilis, and in a few others.

Comparison by *Magis* and _MaximÅ“_.

74. Many adjectives do not admit terminational comparison, but form the Comparative and Superlative degrees by prefixing magis (_more_) and maximÅ“ (_most_). Here belong---

1. Many adjectives ending in -Å lis, -Å ris, -idus, -Å«lis, -icus, imus, Å«nus, -Å rus.

2. Adjectives in -us, preceded by a vowel; as, idÅ neus, _adapted_; arduus, _steep_; necessÅ rius, *necessary*.

a. Adjectives in -quus, of course, do not come under this rule. The first u in such cases is not a vowel, but a consonant.

Adjectives not admitting Comparison.

75. Here belong---

1. Many adjectives, which, from the nature of their signification, do not admit of comparison; as, hodiernus, _of to-day_; annuus, _annual_; mortÅ lis, *mortal*.

2. Some special words; as, mÅ«rus, gnÅ rus, merus; and a few others.

* * * * *

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

76. Adverbs are for the most part derived from adjectives, and depend upon them for their comparison.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive by changing -Å« of the Genitive Singular to -Å“; those derived from adjectives of the Third Declension, by changing -is of the Genitive Singular to -iter; as,---

cÄ rus, cÄ rÄ“, _dearly_; pulcher, pulchrÄ“, _beautifully_; Ä cer, Ä cter, _fiercely_; levis, leviter, *lightly*.

a. But Adjectives in –ns, and a few others, add –er (instead of –iter), to form the Adverb; as,—

sapiÄ“ns, sapienter, _wisely_; sollers, sollerter, *skillfully*.

Note audÄ x, audÄ cter, *boldly*.

2. The Comparative of all Adverbs regularly consists of the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective; while the Superlative of the Adverb is formed by changing the –Ä« of the Genitive Singular of the Superlative of the Adjective to –Ä“. Thus—

(cÄ rus) cÄ rÄ“, *dearly*, cÄ rius, cÄ rissimÄ“. (pulcher) pulchrÄ“, *beautifully*, pulchrius, pulcherrimÄ“. (Ä cer) Ä cter, *fiercely*, Ä crius, Ä cerrimÄ“. (levis) leviter, *lightly*, levius, levissimÄ“. (sapiÄ“ns) sapienter, *wisely*, sapientius, sapientissimÄ“. (audÄ x) audÄ cter, *boldly*, audÄ cius, audÄ cissimÄ“.

Adverbs Peculiar in Comparison and Formation.

77. 1., *well*, melius, optimÄ“. malÄ•, *ill*, pejus, pessimÄ“. magnopere, *greatly*, magis, maximÄ“. multum, *much*, plÄ«s, plÄ«rimum. nÄ n multum, *little*, minus, minimÄ“. parum, diÄ«, *long*, diÄ«tius, diÄ«tissimÄ“. nÄ“quiter, *worthlessly*, nÄ“quius, nÄ“quissimÄ“. saepe, *often*, saepius, saepissimÄ“. mÄ tÄ«rÄ“, *betimes*, mÄ tÄ«rius, mÄ tÄ«rimÄ“. mÄ tÄ«rissimÄ“. prope, *near*, propius, proximÄ“. nÄ«per, *recently*, ---- nÄ«perrimÄ“. ---- potius, *rather*, potissimum, *especially*. ---- prius, *previously*, prÄ«mum, *first. before*, secus, *otherwise*, sä“tius, *less*.

2. A number of adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form an Adverb in –Ä , instead of –Ä“; as,—

crÄ“brÄ , _frequently_; falsÄ , _falsely_; continuÄ , subitÄ , _suddenly_; _immediately_; rÄ rÄ , *rarely*, and a few others.

a. cito, quickly, has –Ä .

3. A few adjectives employ the Accusative Singular Neuter as the Positive of the Adverb; as,—

multum, _much_; paulum, facile, _little_; *easily*.

4. A few adjectives of the First and Second Declensions form the Positive in –iter; as,—

fÄ«rmus, fÄ«rmiter, _firmly_; hÄ«mä nus, hÄ«mä niter, _humanly_; largus, largiter, _copiously_; alius, aliter, *otherwise*.

a. violentus has violenter.

5. Various other adverbial suffixes occur, the most important of which are –tus and –tim; as, antÄ«quitus, _anciently_; paulÄ tim, *gradually*.

* * * * *

NUMERALS.

78. Numerals may be divided into—

I. Numeral Adjectives, comprising—

- a. *Cardinals*; as, *unus, one*; *duo, two*; etc.
- b. *Ordinals*; as, *primus, first*; *secundus, second*; etc.
- c. *Distributives*; as, *singulus, one by one*; *binus, two by two*; etc.

II. Numeral Adverbs; as, *semel, once*; *bis, twice*; etc.

79. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

CARDINALS. ORDINALS. 1. *unus, na, num primus, first* 2. *duo, duae, duo secundus, second* 3. *tres, tria tertius, third* 4. *quattuor quater, fourth* 5. *quinque quintus, fifth* 6. *sex sextus* 7. *septem septimus* 8. *octo octavus* 9. *novem novus* 10. *decem decimus* 11. *undecim undecimus* 12. *duodecim duodecimus* 13. *tredecim tertius decimus* 14. *quattuordecim quater decimus* 15. *quindecim quintus decimus* 16. *sedecim, sextus decimus sexdecim* 17. *septendecim septimus decimus* 18. *duodviginti, viginti, viginti unus* 19. *duodviginti, viginti unus* 20. *viginti, viginti unus* 21. *viginti, unus, viginti primus, unus et viginti, unus et viginti* 22. *viginti, duo, viginti secundus, duo et viginti, alter et viginti* 30. *triginti, triginti* 40. *quadragesima, quadragesima* 50. *quingentesima, quingentesima* 60. *sexagesima, sexagesima* 70. *septuagesima, septuagesima* 80. *octogesima, octogesima* 90. *nonagesima, nonagesima* 100. *centum, centum* 101. *centum, unus, centum primus, centum et unus, centum et primus* 200. *ducenti, -ae, -a ducenti* 300. *trecenti, trecenti* 400. *quadringenti, quadringenti* 500. *quingenti, quingenti* 600. *sescenti, sescenti* 700. *septingenti, septingenti* 800. *octingenti, octingenti* 900. *nonaginta, nonaginta* 1,000. *millia, millia* 2,000. *duo milia bis milia* 100,000. *centum milia centia, milia* 1,000,000. *decia, centia, milia decia, centia, milia*

DISTRIBUTIVES. ADVERBS. 1. *singuli, one by one semel, once* 2. *binus, two by two bis* 3. *ternus, ternus* 4. *quaternus, quater* 5. *quinus, quinquies* 6. *sexus, sexies* 7. *septus, septies* 8. *octus, octies* 9. *novus, novies* 10. *decus, decies* 11. *undecus, undecies* 12. *duodecus, duodecies* 13. *ternus, denus, terdecies* 14. *quaternus, denus, quaterdecies* 15. *quinus, denus, quinquies* 16. *sexus, denus, sexies* 17. *septus, denus, septies* 18. *duodecus, vicus, octies, decies* 19. *duodecus, viginti, viginti unus, decies* 20. *viginti, viginti, viginti unus, viginti, viginti* 21. *viginti, viginti, singulus, viginti, semel singulus, et viginti, viginti* 22. *viginti, viginti, binus, viginti, bis binus, et viginti, viginti* 30. *triginti, triginti, triginti, triginti* 40. *quadragesima, quadragesima, quadragesima, quadragesima* 50. *quingentesima, quingentesima, quingentesima, quingentesima* 60. *sexagesima, sexagesima, sexagesima, sexagesima* 70. *septuagesima, septuagesima, septuagesima, septuagesima* 80. *octogesima, octogesima, octogesima, octogesima* 90. *nonagesima, nonagesima, nonagesima, nonagesima* 100. *centum, centum, centum, centum* 101. *centum, centum, singulus, centum, semel centum, et singulus* 200. *ducenti, ducenti, ducenti, ducenti* 300. *trecenti, trecenti, trecenti, trecenti* 400. *quadringenti, quadringenti, quadringenti, quadringenti* 500. *quingenti, quingenti, quingenti, quingenti* 600. *sescenti, sescenti, sescenti, sescenti* 700. *septingenti, septingenti, septingenti, septingenti* 800. *octingenti, octingenti, octingenti, octingenti* 900. *nonaginta, nonaginta, nonaginta, nonaginta* 1,000. *singula milia, milia, milia, milia* 2,000. *binus milia, bis milia, milia, milia* 100,000. *centum milia, centum milia, centum milia, centum milia*

NOTE.— *-nsimus* and *-ns* are often written in the numerals instead of *-simus* and *-is*.

Declension of the Cardinals.

80. 1. The declension of *unus* has already been given under § 66.

2. Duo is declined as follows:—

Nom. duo duae duo _Gen._ duŕum duŕum duŕum _Dat._ duŕibus duŕibus duŕibus _Acc._ duŕus, duo duŕus duo _Abl._ duŕibus duŕibus duŕibus

a. So ambŕus, *both*, except that its final o is long.

3. Trŕs is declined,—

Nom. trŕs tria _Gen._ trium trium _Dat._ tribus tribus _Acc._ trŕs (trŕs) tria _Abl._ tribus tribus

4. The hundreds (except centum) are declined like the Plural of bonus.

5. Mŕlle is regularly an adjective in the Singular, and indeclinable. In the Plural it is a substantive (followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated; Å§ 201, 1), and is declined,—

Nom. mŕlia _Acc._ mŕlia _Gen._ mŕlium _Voc._ mŕlia _Dat._ mŕlibus _Abl._ mŕlibus

Thus mŕlle hominŕs, *a thousand men*; but duo mŕlia hominum, *two thousand men*, literally *two thousands of men*.

a. Occasionally the Singular admits the Genitive construction; as, mŕlle hominum.

6. Other Cardinals are indeclinable. Ordinals and Distributives are declined like Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.

Peculiarities in the Use of Numerals.

81. 1. The compounds from 21 to 99 may be expressed either with the larger or the smaller numeral first. In the latter case, et is used. Thus:—

trŕgintŕ sex or sex et trŕgintŕ, *thirty-six*.

2. The numerals under 90, ending in 8 and 9, are often expressed by subtraction; as,—

duodŕvŕgintŕ, *eighteen* (but also octŕdecim);

ŕndŕquadrŕgintŕ, *thirty-nine* (but also trŕgintŕ novem or novem et trŕgintŕ).

3. Compounds over 100 regularly have the largest number first; the others follow without et; as,—

centum vŕgintŕ septem, *one hundred and twenty-seven*.

annŕ octingentŕsimŕ octŕgŕsimŕ secundŕ, *in the year 882*.

Yet et may be inserted where the smaller number is either a digit or one of the tens; as,—

centum et septem, *one hundred and seven*;

centum et quadrŕgintŕ, *one hundred and forty*.

4. The Distributives are used—

a) To denote *so much each*, *_so many apiece_*; as,—

bÄ«na talenta eÄ«s dedit, *he gave them two talents each.*

b) When those nouns that are ordinarily Plural in form, but Singular in meaning, are employed in a Plural sense; as,—

bÄ«nae litterae, *two epistles.*

But in such cases, Ä«nÄ« (not singulÄ«) is regularly employed for *one*, and trÄ«nÄ« (not ternÄ«) for *three*; as,—

Ä«nae litterae, *_one epistle_*; trÄ«nae litterae, *three epistles.*

c) In multiplication; as,—

bis bÄ«na sunt quattuor, *twice two are four.*

d) Often in poetry, instead of the cardinals; as,—

bÄ«na hastÄ«lia, *two spears.*

* * * * *

C. PRONOUNS.

82. A Pronoun is a word that indicates something without naming it.

83. There are the following classes of pronouns:—

I. Personal. V. Intensive. II. Reflexive. VI. Relative. III. Possessive. VII. Interrogative. IV. Demonstrative. VIII. Indefinite.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

84. These correspond to the English *I, you, he, she, it*, etc., and are declined as follows:—

First Person. Second Person. Third Person.

SINGULAR. _Nom._ ego, *I* tÄ«, *thou* is, *_he_*; ea, *_she_*; id, *it* _Gen._ meÄ« tuÄ« (For declension see Ä§ 87.) _Dat._ mihi[22] tibi[22] _Acc._ mÄ« tÄ« _Voc._ ——— tÄ« _Abl._ mÄ« tÄ«

PLURAL. _Nom._ nÄ« s, *we* vÄ« s, *you* _Gen._ nostrum, nostrÄ« vestrum, vestrÄ« _Dat._ nÄ« bÄ«s vÄ« bÄ«s _Acc._ nÄ« s vÄ« s _Voc._ ——— vÄ« s _Abl._ nÄ« bÄ«s vÄ« bÄ«s

1. A Dative Singular mÄ« occurs in poetry.

2. Emphatic forms in –met are occasionally found; as, egomet, *_I myself_*; tibimet, *_to you yourself_*; tÄ« has tÄ«te and tÄ«temet (written also tÄ«timet).

3. In early Latin, mÄ«d and tÄ«d occur as Accusative and Ablative forms.

* * * * *

II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

85. These refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand; like *myself*, *yourself*, in '*I see myself*;' etc. They are declined as follows:—

First Person. _Second Person._ _Third Person._ Supplied by oblique cases of ego.
 cases of tÄ«. _Gen._ meÄ«, *of myself* tuÄ«, *of thyself* suÄ« _Dat._ mihi, *to myself* tibi, *to thyself* sibi[22]
 Acc. mÄ“, *myself* tÄ“, *thyself* sÄ“ or sÄ“sÄ“ _Voc._ ----- _Abl._ mÄ“, *with myself*, tÄ“, *with thyself*, sÄ“ or sÄ“sÄ“ etc. etc.

1. The Reflexive of the Third Person serves for *all genders* and for *both numbers*. Thus *sui* may mean, *of himself*, *herself*, *itself*, or *of themselves*; and so with the other forms.

2. All of the Reflexive Pronouns have at times a *reciprocal* force; as,—

inter sÄ“ pignant, they fight with each other.

3. In early Latin, *sÄ“d* occurs as Accusative and Ablative.

* * * * *

III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

86. These are strictly adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, and are inflected as such. They are—

First Person. _Second Person._ *meus*, -a, -um, *my*; *tuus*, -a, -um, *thy*; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*, *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*, *our*; *your*;

Third Person. *suus*, -a, -um, *his*, *her*, *its*, *their*.

1. *Suus* is exclusively Reflexive; as,—

pater lÄ«berÄ s suÄ s amat, the father loves his children.

Otherwise, *his*, *her*, *its* are regularly expressed by the Genitive Singular of *is*, viz. *ejus*; and *their* by the Genitive Plural, *eÄ rum*, *eÄ rum*.

2. The Vocative Singular Masculine of *meus* is *mÄ«*.

3. The enclitic -*pte* may be joined to the Ablative Singular of the Possessive Pronouns for the purpose of emphasis. This is particularly common in case of *suÄ*, *suÄ*; as, *suÄ pte*, *suÄ pte*.

* * * * *

IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

87. These point out an object as here or there, or as previously mentioned. They are—

hÄ«c, *this* (where I am); *iste*, *that* (where you are); *ille*, *that* (something distinct from the speaker); *is*, *that* (weaker than *ille*); *Ä«dem*, *the same*.

HÄ«c, iste, and ille are accordingly the Demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons respectively.

HÄ«c, *this*. SINGULAR PLURAL. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ hä«c haec hÄ c hÄ« hae haec _Gen._ hÄ«jus[23] hÄ«jus hÄ«jus hÄ rum hÄ rum hÄ rum _Dat._ huic huic huic hÄ«s hÄ«s hÄ«s _Acc._ hunc hanc hÄ c hÄ s hÄ s haec _Abl._ hÄ c hÄ c hÄ«s hÄ«s hÄ«s

Iste, *that*, _that of yours._ SINGULAR. PLURAL. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ iste ista istud[24] istÄ« istae ista[24] _Gen._ istÄ«us istÄ«us istÄ«us istÄ rum istÄ rum istÄ rum _Dat._ istÄ« istÄ« istÄ« istÄ«s istÄ«s istÄ«s _Acc._ istum istam istud istÄ s istÄ s ista[24] _Abl._ istÄ istÄ istÄ istÄ«s istÄ«s istÄ«s

Ille (archaic olle), *that, that one, he*, is declined like iste.[25]

Is, *he, this, that*. SINGULAR PLURAL. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. *Nom.* is ea id eÄ«, iÄ«, eae ea (Ä«) _Gen._ ejus ejus ejus eÄ rum eÄ rum eÄ rum _Dat._ eÄ« eÄ« eÄ«s, iÄ«s eÄ«s, iÄ«s eÄ«s, iÄ«s eÄ«s, iÄ«s _Acc._ eum eam id eÄ s eÄ s ea _Abl._ eÄ eÄ eÄ eÄ«s, iÄ«s eÄ«s, iÄ«s eÄ«s, iÄ«s

Ä«dem, *the same*. SINGULAR. PLURAL. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. *Nom.* Ä«dem eadem idem eÄ«dem, eaedem eadem iÄ«dem _Gen._ ejusdem ejusdem ejusdem eÄ rundem eÄ rundem eÄ rundem _Dat._ eÄ«dem eÄ«dem eÄ«dem eÄ«sdem eÄ«sdem eÄ«sdem _Acc._ eundem eandem idem eÄ sdem eÄ sdem eadem _Abl._ eÄ dem eÄ dem eÄ dem eÄ«sdem eÄ«sdem eÄ«sdem

The Nom. Plu. Masc. also has Ä«dem, and the Dat. Abl. Plu. Ä«sdem or iÄ«sdem

* * * * *

V. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

88. The Intensive Pronoun in Latin is ipse. It corresponds to the English *myself*, etc., in '*I myself*, *he himself*.'

SINGULAR PLURAL. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ ipse ipsa ipsum ipsÄ« ipsae ipsa _Gen._ ipsÄ«us ipsÄ«us ipsÄ«us ipsÄ rum ipsÄ rum ipsÄ rum _Dat._ ipsÄ« ipsÄ« ipsÄ« ipsÄ«s ipsÄ«s ipsÄ«s _Acc._ ipsum ipsam ipsum ipsÄ s ipsÄ s ipsa _Abl._ ipsÄ ipsÄ ipsÄ ipsÄ«s ipsÄ«s ipsÄ«s

* * * * *

VI. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

89. The Relative Pronoun is quÄ«, who. It is declined:--

SINGULAR PLURAL. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. MASCULINE. FEMININE. NEUTER. _Nom._ quÄ« quae quod quÄ« quae quae _Gen._ cÄ«jus cÄ«jus cÄ«jus quÄ rum quÄ rum quÄ rum _Dat._ cui cui cui quibus[26] quibus quibus _Acc._ quem quam quod quÄ s quÄ s quae _Abl._ quÄ [27] quÄ quibus[26] quibus quibus

* * * * *

VII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

90. The Interrogative Pronouns are quis, _who?_ (substantive) and quÄ«, _what? what kind of?_ (adjective).

1. Quis, _who?_

SINGULAR. PLURAL. MASC. AND FEM. NEUTER _Nom._ quis quid The rare Plural _Gen._ cÄ«jus cÄ«jus follows the declension _Dat._ cui cui of the Relative Pronoun. _Acc._ quem quid _Abl._ quÄ« quÄ«

2. QuÄ«, _what? what kind of?_ is declined precisely like the Relative Pronoun; viz. quÄ«, quae, quod, etc.

a. An old Ablative quÄ« occurs, in the sense of _how? why?_

b. QuÄ« is sometimes used for quis in Indirect Questions.

c. Quis, when limiting words denoting persons, is sometimes an adjective. But in such cases quis homÄ« = _what man?_ whereas quÄ« homÄ« = _what sort of man?_

d. Quis and quÄ« may be strengthened by adding -nam. Thus:--

Substantive: quisnam, _who, pray?_ quidnam, _what, pray?_ Adjective: quÄ«nam, quaenam, quodnam, _of what kind, pray?_

* * * * *

VIII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

91. These have the general force of *some one*, *any one*.

SUBSTANTIVES. ADJECTIVES. M. AND F. NEUT. MASC. FEM. NEUT. quis, quid, quÄ«, quae, qua, quod, *any one, anything. any.* aliquis, aliquid, aliquÄ«, aliqua, aliquod, *some one, any. something.* quisquam, quidquam, quisquam, quidquam, *any one, anything. any* (rare) quispiam, quidpiam, quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, *any one, anything. any.* quisque, quidque, quisque, quaeque, quodque, *each. each.* quÄ«vÄ«s, quaevÄ«s, quidvÄ«s, quÄ«vis, quaevÄ«s, quodvis, quÄ«libet, quaelibet, quidlibet, quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet, *any one* (_anything_) *any you wish you wish* quÄ«dam, quaedam, quiddam, quÄ«dam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain person, or a certain thing.*

1. In the Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined. Thus: Genitive Singular alicÄ«jus, cÄ«juslibet, etc.

2. Note that aliquÄ« has aliqua in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter. QuÄ« has both qua and quae in these same cases.

3. QuÄ«dam forms Accusative Singular quendam, quandam; Genitive Plural quÄ«rundam, quÄ«rundam; the m being assimilated to n before d.

4. Aliquis may be used adjectively, and (occasionally) aliquÄ« substantively.

5. In combination with nÄ«, sÄ«, nisi, num, either quis or quÄ« may stand as a Substantive. Thus: sÄ« quis or sÄ« quÄ«.

6. Ecquis, *any one*, though strictly an Indefinite, generally has interrogative force. It has both substantive and

adjective forms,—substantive, *ecquis, ecquid*; adjective, *ecquæ*, *ecquæ* and *ecqua, ecquod*.

7. *Quisquam* is not used in the Plural.

8. There are two Indefinite Relatives,—*quicumque* and *quisquis*, *whoever*. *Quicumque* declines only the first part; *quisquis* declines both but has only *quisquis, quidquid, quæ quæ*, in common use.

* * * * *

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

92. The following adjectives, also, frequently have pronominal force:—

1. *alius*, *another*; *alter*, *the other*; *uter*, *which of two?* (*interr.*); *neuter*, *neither*; *whichever of two* (*rel.*); *quis*, *one*; *nullus*, *no one* (*in oblique cases*)

2. The compounds,—

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two*; *utercumque, utracumque, utrumcumque*, *whoever of two*; *uterlibet, utralibet, utrumlibet*, *either one you please*; *utervæ, utravæ, utrumvæ*, *either one you please*; *alteruter, alterutra, alterutrum*, *the one or the other*.

In these, *uter* alone is declined. The rest of the word remains unchanged, except in case of *alteruter*, which may decline both parts; as,—

Nom. alteruter altera utra alterum utrum _Gen._ alterius utræ, etc.

* * * * *

CHAPTER II.

—*Conjugation.*—

93. A Verb is a word which asserts something; as, *est*, *he is*; *amat*, *he loves*. The Inflection of Verbs is called *Conjugation*.

94. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person*:—

1. *Two Voices*,—*Active and Passive*.

2. *Three Moods*,—*Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative*.

3. *Six Tenses*,—

Present, Perfect, Imperfect, Pluperfect, Future, Future Perfect.

But the *Subjunctive* lacks the *Future and Future Perfect*; while the *Imperative* employs only the *Present and Future*.

4. *Two Numbers*,—*Singular and Plural*.

5. Three Persons,—First, Second, and Third.

95. These make up the so-called *Finite Verb*. Besides this, we have the following Noun and Adjective Forms:—

1. Noun Forms,—Infinitive, Gerund, and Supine.

2. Adjective Forms,—Participles (including the Gerundive).

96. The Personal Endings of the Verb are,—

Active. Passive. *Sing.* 1. -ā; -m; -ā« (Perf. Ind.); -r. 2. -s; -stā« (Perf. Ind.); -rā«s, -re; -tā or wanting (Impv.); -re, -tor (Impv.). 3. -t; -tā (Impv.); -tur; -tor (Impv.). *Plu.* 1. -mus; -mur. 2. -tis; -stis (Perf. Ind.); -minā«. -te, -tā te (Impv.); 3. -nt; -ā«runt (Perf. Ind.); -ntur; -ntor (Impv.). -ntā (Impv.);

VERB STEMS.

97. Conjugation consists in appending certain endings to the Stem. We distinguish three different stems in a fully inflected verb,—

I. Present Stem, from which are formed— 1. Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, 2. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, 3. The Imperative, 4. The Present Infinitive, – (Active and Passive.) 5. The Present Active Participle, the Gerund, and Gerundive. II. Perfect Stem, from which are formed— 1. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, 2. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, 3. Perfect Infinitive, – (Active.) III. Participial Stem, from which are formed— 1. Perfect Participle, 2. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative, 3. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, 4. Perfect Infinitive, – (Passive.)

Apparently from the same stem, though really of different origin, are the Supine, the Future Active Participle, the Future Infinitive Active and Passive.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

98. There are in Latin four regular Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the vowel of the termination of the Present Infinitive Active, as follows:—

INFINITIVE DISTINGUISHING CONJUGATION. TERMINATION. VOWEL. I. -ā re ā II. -ā«re ā« III. -ā•re ā• IV. -ā«re ā«

99. PRINCIPAL PARTS. The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Perfect Participle[28] constitute the Principal Parts of a Latin verb,—so called because they contain the different stems, from which the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

* * * * *

CONJUGATION OF SUM.

100. The irregular verb *sum* is so important for the conjugation of all other verbs that its inflection is given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. FUT. PARTIC.[29] *sum esse fuā« futā«rus*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. SINGULAR. PLURAL. *sum, I am, sumus, we are, es, thou art, estis, you are, est, _he is_; sunt, they are.*

IMPERFECT. *eram, I was, erās mus, we were, erās s, thou wast, erās tis, you were, erat, _he was_; erant, they were.*

FUTURE. *erā , I shall be, erimus, we shall be, eris, thou wilt be, eritis, you will be, erit, _he will be_; erunt, they will be.*

PERFECT. *fuā«, I have been, I was, fuimus, we have been, we were, fuistā«, thou hast been, _thou fuistis, you have been, you wast, were_, fuit, he has been, _he was_; fuā“runt, fuā“re, they have been, they were.*

PLUPERFECT. *fueram, I had been, fuerā mus, we had been, fuerā s, thou hadst been, fuerā tis, you had been, fuerat, _he had been_; fuerant, they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT. *fuerā , I shall have been, fuerimus, we shall have been, fueris, thou wilt have been, fueritis, you will have been, fuerit, _he will have been_; fuerint, they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.[30]

PRESENT. SINGULAR. PLURAL. *sim, may I be, sā«mus, let us be, sā«s, mayst thou be, sā«tis, be ye, may you be, sit, let him be, _may he be_; sint, let them be.*

IMPERFECT. *essem,[31] I should be, essā“mus, we should be, essā“s,[31] thou wouldst be, essā“tis, you would be, esset,[31] _he would be_; essent,[31] they would be.*

PERFECT. *fuerim, I may have been, fuerā«mus, we may have been, fuerā«s, thou mayst have been, fuerā«tis, you may have been, fuerit, _he may have been_; fuerint, they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT. *fuissem, I should have been, fuissā“mus, we should have been. fuissā“s, thou wouldst have been, fuissā“tis, you would have been, fuisset, _he would have been_; fuissent, they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE. *_Pres._ es, _be thou_; este, be ye, _Fut._ estā , thou shalt be, estā te, ye shall be, estā , _he shall be_; suntā , they shall be.*

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *_Pres._ esse, to be. _Perf._ fuisse, to have been. _Fut._ futā«rus esse,[32] _to be _Fut._ futā«rus,[33] about to be. about to be_.*

* * * * *

FIRST (OR Ä€-) CONJUGATION.

101. Active Voice.—*Amā , I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. PERF. PASS. PARTIC. *amā amā re amā vā« amā tus*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. SINGULAR. PLURAL. *amā , I love, amā mus, we love, amā s, you love, amā tis, you love, amat, _he loves_; amant, they love.*

IMPERFECT. *amā bam, I was loving,[34] amā bā mus, we were loving, amā bā s, you were loving, amā bā tis, you were loving, amā bat, _he was loving_; amā bant, they were loving* FUTURE. *amā bā , I shall love, amā bimus, we shall love, amā bis, you will love, amā bitis, you will love, amā bit, _he will love_; amā bunt, they will love.*

PERFECT. *amā vā«, I have loved, I loved, amā vimus, we have loved, we loved, amā vistā«, you have loved, _you amā vistis, you have loved, you loved loved_, amā vit, he has loved, _he loved_; amā vā“runt, –ā“re, they have loved, they loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *amā veram, I had loved, amā verā mus, we had loved, amā verā s, you had loved, amā verā tis, you had loved, amā verat, _he had loved_; amā verant, they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT. *amā verā , I shall have loved, amā verimus, we shall have loved, amā veris, you will have loved, amā veritis, you will have loved, amā verit, _he will have loved_; amā verint, they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. *amem, may I love, amā“mus, let us love, amā“s, may you love, amā“tis, may you love, amet, _let him love_; ament, let them love.*

IMPERFECT. *amā rem, I should love, amā rā“mus, we should love, amā rā“s, you would love, amā rā“tis, you would love, amā ret, _he would love_; amā rent, they would love.*

PERFECT. *amā verim, I may have loved, amā verā«mus, we may have loved, amā verā«s, you may have loved, amā verā«tis, you may have loved, amā verit, _he may have loved_; amā verint, they may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT. *amā vissem, I should have loved, amā vā«ssā“mus, we should have loved, amā vissā“s, you would have loved, amā vissā“tis, you would have loved, amā visset, _he would have loved_; amā vissent, they would have loved.*

IMPERATIVE. *_Pres._ amā , _love thou_; amā te, love ye. _Fut._ amā tā , thou shalt love, amā tā te, ye shall love, amā tā , _he shall love_; amantā , they shall love.*

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *_Pres._ amā re, to love. _Pres._ amā ns,[35] loving. _Perf._ amā visse, to have loved. (Gen. amantis.) _Fut._ amā tā«rus esse, _to be _Fut._ amā tā«rus, about to love. about to love_*

GERUND. SUPINE. *_Gen._ amandā«, of loving, _Dat._ amandā , for loving, _Acc._ amandum, loving, _Acc._ amā tum, to love, _Abl._ amandā , by loving. _Abl._ amā tā«, to love, be loved.*

102. Passive Voice.—Amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. *amā r amā rā« amā tus sum*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *_I am loved._ SINGULAR. PLURAL. amor amā mur amā ris amā minā« amā tur amantur*

IMPERFECT *_I was loved._ amā bar amā bā mur amā bā ris, or –re amā bā mini amā bā tur*

amÄ bantur

FUTURE. *_I shall be loved._* amÄ bor amÄ bimus amÄ beris, *or –re amÄ biminÄ« amÄ bitur amÄ buntur*

PERFECT *I have been loved,* or *_I was loved._* amÄ tus (–a, –um) sum[36] amÄ tÄ« (–ae, –a) sumus amÄ tus es amÄ tÄ« estis amÄ tus est amÄ tÄ« sunt

PLUPERFECT. *_I had been loved._* amÄ tus eram[36] amÄ tÄ« erÄ mus amÄ tus erÄ s amÄ tÄ« erÄ tis amÄ tus erat amÄ tÄ« erant

FUTURE PERFECT. *_I shall have been loved._* amÄ tus erÄ [36] amÄ tÄ« erimus amÄ tus eris amÄ tÄ« eritis amÄ tus erit amÄ tÄ« erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. *May I be loved,* *_let him be loved._* amer amÄ“mur amÄ“ris, *or –re amÄ“mini amÄ“tur amentur*

IMPERFECT.

I should be loved, *_he would be loved._* amÄ rer amÄ rÄ“mur amÄ rÄ“ris, *or –re amÄ rÄ“minÄ« amÄ rÄ“tur amÄ rentur*

PERFECT.

I may have been loved. amÄ tus sim[37] amÄ tÄ« sä«mus amÄ tus sä«s amÄ ti sä«tis amÄ tus sit amÄ ti sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been loved, *_he would have been loved._* amÄ tus essem[37] amÄ tÄ« essÄ“mus amÄ tus essÄ“s amÄ tÄ« essÄ“tis amÄ tus esset amÄ ti essent

IMPERATIVE. *_Pres._* amÄ re,[38] *_be thou amÄ minÄ«, _be ye loved._* loved_; *_Fut._* amÄ tor, *thou shalt be loved,* amÄ tor, *_he shall be amantor, they shall be loved.* loved_;

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *_Pres._* amÄ rÄ«, *to be loved.* *_Perf._* amÄ tus esse, *_to have been* *_Perfect._* amÄ tus, *loved, loved.* *having been loved.* *_Fut._* amÄ tum Ä«rÄ«, *_to be about* *_Gerundive._* amandus, *to be to be loved.* loved_, *_deserving to be loved._*

* * * * *

SECOND (OR Ä'–) CONJUGATION.

103. Active voice.--MoneÄ , *_I advise._*

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. PERF. PASS. PARTIC. moneÄ monÄ“re monuÄ« monitus

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *_I advise._*

SINGULAR. PLURAL. moneo monent mus monentis monet monent

IMPERFECT. *I was advising*, or *I advised*. monentibus monentibus mus monentibus s monentibus tis monentibus bat monentibus bant

FUTURE. *I shall advise*. monentibus monentibus bimus monentibus bis monentibus bitis monentibus bit monentibus bunt

PERFECT. *I have advised*, or *I advised*. monentibus monentibus monuimus monentibus monuistibus monentibus monuistibus monuit monentibus runt, or -re

PLUPERFECT. *I had advised*. monentibus monentibus monueram monentibus mus monentibus s monentibus tis monentibus monuerat monentibus monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have advised*. monentibus monentibus monuerimus monentibus monueris monentibus monueritis monentibus monuerit monentibus monuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I advise, *let him advise*. moneam monentibus mus monentibus s monentibus tis moneat monentibus moneant

IMPERFECT. *I should advise*, *he would advise*. monentibus rem monentibus rē mus monentibus rē s monentibus rē tis monentibus ret monentibus rent

PERFECT. *I may have advised*. monentibus monentibus monuerim monentibus mus monentibus s monentibus tis monentibus monuerit monentibus monuerint

PLUPERFECT. *I should have advised*, *he would have advised*. monentibus monentibus monuissem monentibus mus monentibus s monentibus tis monentibus monuisset monentibus monuissent

IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* monentibus, *advise thou*; monentibus te, *advise ye*. *Fut.* monentibus tū, *thou shall advise*; monentibus tū te, *ye shall advise*, *advise*, monentibus tū, *he shall advise*; monentibus, *they shall advise*.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *Pres.* monentibus re, *to advise*. *Pres.* monentibus ns, *advising*. *Perf.* monentibus nse, *to have (Gen. monentibus.) advised*. *Fut.* monentibus rus esse, *to be Fut. monentibus rus, about to advise. advise*.

GERUND. SUPINE. *Gen.* monentibus, *of advising*, *Dat.* monentibus, *for advising*, *Acc.* monentibus, *advising*, *Acc.* monentibus, *to advise*, *Abl.* monentibus, *by advising*. *Abl.* monentibus, *to advise, be advised*.

104. Passive voice.--Moneor, *I am advised*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. moneor monentibus rē monitus sum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *I am advised*.

SINGULAR. PLURAL. moneor monentibus mur monentibus ris monentibus minentibus tur monentibus

IMPERFECT. *I was advised*. monentibus bar monentibus bā mur monentibus bā ris, or -re monentibus bā minentibus tur monentibus bantur

FUTURE. *I shall be advised.* _ monĀ“bor monĀ“bimur monĀ“beris, *or* –re monĀ“biminĀ« monĀ“bitur monĀ“buntur

PERFECT. *I have been advised, I was advised.* _ monitus sum monitĀ« sumus monitus es monitĀ« estis monitus est monitĀ« sunt

PLUPERFECT. *I had been advised.* _ monitus eram monitĀ« erĀ mus monitus erĀ s monitĀ« erĀ tis monitus erat monitĀ« erant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have been advised.* _ monitus erĀ monitĀ« erimus monitus eris monitĀ« eritis monitus erit monitĀ« erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. *May I be advised, let him be advised.* _ monear moneĀ mur moneĀ ris, *or* –re moneĀ minĀ« moneĀ tur moneantur

IMPERFECT. *I should be advised, he would be advised.* _ monĀ“rer monĀ“rĀ“mur monĀ“rĀ“ris, *or* –re monĀ“rĀ“minĀ« monĀ“rĀ“tur monĀ“rentur

PERFECT. *I may have been advised.* _ monitus sim monitĀ« sĀ«mus monitus sĀ«s monitĀ« sĀ«tis monitus sit monitĀ« sint

PLUPERFECT. *I should have been advised, he would have been advised.* _ monitus essem monitĀ« essĀ“mus monitus essĀ“s monitĀ« essĀ“tis monitus esset monitĀ« essent

IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* _ monĀ“re, *be thou advised*; monĀ“minĀ«, *be ye advised.* *Fut.* _ monĀ“tor, *thou shalt be advised*, monĀ“tor, *he shall be monentor, they shall be advised.* advised_.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *Pres.* _ monĀ“rĀ«, *to be advised.* *Perfect.* _ monitus, *advised, having been advised.* *Perf.* _ monitus esse, *to have been advised* *Fut.* _ monitum Ā«rĀ«, *to be about* *Gerundive.* _ monendus, *to be to be advised.* _ advised_, *deserving to be advised.* _

* * * * *

THIRD (OR CONSONANT-) CONJUGATION.

105. Active Voice.—RegĀ , *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. PERF. PASS. PARTIC. regĀ regere rĀ“xĀ« rĀ“ctus

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *I rule* SINGULAR. PLURAL. regĀ regimus regis regitis regit regunt

IMPERFECT. *I was ruling, or I ruled.* regĀ“bam regĀ“bĀ mus regĀ“bĀ s regĀ“bĀ tis regĀ“bat regĀ“bant

FUTURE. *I shall rule.* regam regĀ“mus regĀ“s regĀ“tis reget regent

PERFECT. *I have ruled, or I ruled* rĀ“xĀ« rĀ“ximus rĀ“xistĀ« rĀ“xistis rĀ“xit rĀ“xĀ“runt, *or* –Ā“re

PLUPERFECT. *I had ruled.* rÄ“xeram rÄ“xerÄ mus rÄ“xerÄ s rÄ“xerÄ tis rÄ“xerat rÄ“xerant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have ruled.* rÄ“xerÄ rÄ“xerimus rÄ“xeris rÄ“xeritis rÄ“xerit rÄ“xerint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. *May I rule, _let him rule._* regam regÄ mus regÄ s regÄ tis regat regant

IMPERFECT. *I should rule, _he would rule._* regerem regerÄ“mus regerÄ“s regerÄ“tis regeret regerent

PERFECT. *_I may have ruled._* rÄ“xerim rÄ“xerÄ«mus rÄ“xerÄ«s rÄ“xerÄ«tis rÄ“xerit rÄ“xerint

PLUPERFECT. *I should have ruled, _he would have ruled._* rÄ“xissem rÄ“xissÄ“mus rÄ“xissÄ“s rÄ“xissÄ“tis rÄ“xisset rÄ“xissent

IMPERATIVE. *rege, _rule thou_; regite, rule ye. regitÄ , thou shall rule, regitÄ te, ye shall rule, regitÄ , _he shall rule_; reguntÄ , they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *regere, to rule. _Pres._ regÄ“ns, ruling. rÄ“xisse, to have ruled. (Gen. regentis.) rÄ“ctÄ«rus esse, _to be about to _Fut._ rÄ“ctÄ«rus, about to rule rule_.*

GERUND. SUPINE. *regendÄ«, of ruling, regendÄ , for ruling, regendum, ruling, _Acc._ rÄ“ctum, to rule, regendÄ , by ruling. _Abl._ rÄ“ctÄ«, to rule, be ruled.*

106. Passive Voice.—Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. regor regÄ« rÄ“ctus sum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *_I am ruled._*

SINGULAR. PLURAL. regor regimur regeris regiminÄ« regitur reguntur

IMPERFECT. *_I was ruled._* regÄ“bar regÄ“bÄ mur regÄ“bÄ ris, *or* –re regÄ“bÄ minÄ« regÄ“bÄ tur regÄ“bantur

FUTURE. *_I shall be ruled._* regar regÄ“mur regÄ“ris, *or* –re regÄ“minÄ« regÄ“tur regentur

PERFECT. *I have been ruled, or I was ruled.* rÄ“ctus sum rÄ“ctÄ« sumus rÄ“ctus es rÄ“ctÄ« estis rÄ“ctus est rÄ“ctÄ« sunt

PLUPERFECT. *_I had been ruled._* rÄ“ctus eram rÄ“ctÄ« erÄ mus rÄ“ctus erÄ s rÄ“ctÄ« erÄ tis rÄ“ctus erat rÄ“ctÄ« erant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have been ruled* rÄ“ctus erÄ rÄ“ctÄ« erimus rÄ“ctus eris rÄ“ctÄ« eritis rÄ“ctus erit rÄ“ctÄ« erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. *May I be ruled, _let him be ruled._* regar regÄ mur regÄ ris, *or* –re regÄ minÄ« regÄ tur regantur

IMPERFECT. *I should be ruled, _he would be ruled._* regerer regerÄ“mur regerÄ“ris, or –re regerÄ“minÄ«
regerÄ“tur regerentur

PERFECT. *_I may have been ruled._* rÄ“ctus sim rÄ“ctÄ« sÄ«mus rÄ“ctus sÄ«s rÄ“ctÄ« sÄ«tis rÄ“ctus sit
rÄ“ctÄ« sint

PLUPERFECT. *I should have been ruled, _he would have been ruled._* rÄ“ctus essem rÄ“ctÄ« essÄ“mus
rÄ“ctus essÄ“s rectÄ« essÄ“tis rÄ“ctus esset rectÄ« essent

IMPERATIVE. *_Pres._* regere, *_be thou ruled_;* regiminÄ«, *be ye ruled. _Fut._* regitor, *thou shalt be ruled,*
regitor, *_he shall be reguntor, they shall be ruled. ruled_;*

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *_Pres._* regÄ«, *to be ruled. _Perfect._* rÄ“ctus, *ruled, having been ruled. _Perf._*
rÄ“ctus esse, *_to have been _Gerundive._* regendus, *to be ruled. ruled_, deserving to be ruled. _Fut._*
rÄ“ctum Ä«rÄ«, *to be about to be ruled.*

* * * * *

FOURTH (OR Äª–) CONJUGATION.

107. Active voice.—AudiÄª, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. PERF. PASS. PARTIC. audiÄª audiÄªre
audiÄªvÄª« audiÄªtus

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *_I hear._*

SINGULAR. PLURAL. audiÄª audiÄªmus audiÄªs audiÄªtis audit audiunt

IMPERFECT. *I was hearing, or _I heard._* audiÄªbam audiÄªbÄª mus audiÄªbÄªs audiÄªbant
audiÄªbant

FUTURE. *_I shall hear._* audiam audiÄªmus audiÄªs audiÄªtis audiet audient

PERFECT. *I have heard, or _I heard._* audiÄªvÄª« audiÄªvimus audiÄªvistÄª« audiÄªvistis audiÄªvit
audiÄªvÄª«runt, *_or _Äªre*

PLUPERFECT. *_I had heard._* audiÄªveram audiÄªverÄª mus audiÄªverÄªs audiÄªverÄªtis audiÄªverat
audiÄªverant

FUTURE PERFECT. *_I shall have heard._* audiÄªverÄª« audiÄªverimus audiÄªveris audiÄªveritis audiÄªverit
audiÄªverint

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. *May I hear, _let him hear._* audiam audiÄª mus audiÄªs audiÄªtis audiat audiant

IMPERFECT. *I should hear, _he would hear._* audiÄªrem audiÄªrÄª« mus audiÄªrÄª«s audiÄªrÄª«tis audiÄªret
audiÄªrent

PERFECT. *I may have heard.* _ audÄ«verim audÄ«verÄ«mus audÄ«verÄ«s audÄ«verÄ«tis audÄ«verit audÄ«verint

PLUPERFECT. *I should have heard, he would have heard.* _ audÄ«vissem audÄ«vissÄ“mus audÄ«vissÄ“s audÄ«vissÄ“tis audÄ«visset audÄ«vissent

IMPERATIVE. *Pres.* _ audÄ«, *hear thou;* audÄ«te, *hear ye.* *Fut.* _ audÄ«tÄ , *thou shalt hear,* audÄ«tÄ te, *ye shall hear,* audÄ«tÄ , *he shall hear;* audiuntÄ , *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. *Pres.* _ audÄ«re, *to hear.* *Pres.* _ audiÄ“ns, *hearing.* *Perf.* _ audÄ«visse, *to have (Gen. audientis.) heard.* *Fut.* _ audÄ«tÄ«rus esse, *to be* *Fut.* _ audÄ«tÄ«rus, *about to about to hear.* hear_.

GERUND. SUPINE *Gen.* _ audiendÄ«, *of hearing,* *Dat.* _ audiendÄ , *for hearing,* *Acc.* _ audiendum, *hearing,* *Acc.* _ audÄ«tum, *to hear,* *Abl.* _ audiendÄ , *by hearing.* *Abl.* _ audÄ«tÄ«, *to hear, be heard.*

108. Passive Voice.—Audior, *I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. audior audÄ«rÄ« audÄ«tus sum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE. *I am heard.*

SINGULAR. PLURAL. audior audÄ«mur audÄ«ris audÄ«minÄ« audÄ«tur audiuntur

IMPERFECT. *I was heard.* audiÄ“bar audiÄ“bÄ mur audiÄ“bÄ ris, *or* –re audiÄ“bÄ minÄ« audiÄ“bÄ tur audiÄ“bantur

FUTURE. *I shall be heard.* audiar audiÄ“mur audiÄ“ris, *or* –re audiÄ“minÄ« audiÄ“tur audientur

PERFECT. *I have been heard, or I was heard.* audÄ«tus sum audÄ«tÄ« sumus audÄ«tus es audÄ«tÄ« estis audÄ«tus est audÄ«tÄ« sunt

PLUPERFECT. *I had been heard.* audÄ«tus eram audÄ«tÄ« erÄ mus audÄ«tus erÄ s audÄ«tÄ« erÄ tis audÄ«tus erat audÄ«tÄ« erant

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have been heard.* audÄ«tus erÄ audÄ«tÄ« erimus audÄ«tus eris audÄ«tÄ« eritis audÄ«tus erit audÄ«tÄ« erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

May I be heard, let him be heard. audiar audiÄ mur audiÄ ris, *or* –re audiÄ minÄ« audiÄ tur audiantur

IMPERFECT. *I should be heard, he would be heard.* audÄ«rer audÄ«rÄ“mur audÄ«rÄ“ris, *or* –re audirÄ“minÄ« audÄ«rÄ“tur audÄ«rentur

PERFECT. *I may have been heard.* audÄ«tus sim audÄ«tÄ« sä«mus audÄ«tus sä«s audÄ«tÄ« sä«tis audÄ«tus sit audÄ«tÄ« sint

PLUPERFECT.

I should have been heard, he would have been heard. audÄ«tus essem audÄ«tÄ« essÄ«mus audÄ«tus essÄ«s
audÄ«tÄ« essÄ«tis audÄ«tus esset audÄ«tÄ« essent

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ audÄ«re, _be thou heard_; audÄ«minÄ«, be ye heard. _Fut._ audÄ«tor, *thou shalt be heard*, audÄ«tor, _he shall be audiuntor, they shall be heard. heard_;

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ audÄ«rÄ«, *to be heard*. _Perfect._ audÄ«tus, *heard, having been heard*
Perf. audÄ«tus esse, *to have* _Gerundive._ audiendus, *to be been heard.* heard_, *deserving to be heard*
Fut. audÄ«tum Ä«rÄ«, *to be about to be heard*.

* * * * *

VERBS IN -IÄ OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

109. 1. Verbs in -iÄ of the Third Conjugation take the endings of the Fourth Conjugation wherever the latter endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System.

2. Here belong—

a) capiÄ, _to take_; cupiÄ, _to desire_; faciÄ, _to make_; fodiÄ, _to dig_; fugiÄ, _to flee_; jaciÄ, _to throw_; pariÄ, _to bear_; quatiÄ, _to shake_; rapiÄ, _to seize_; sapiÄ, *to taste*.

b) Compounds of laciÄ and speciÄ (both ante-classical); as, alliciÄ, _entice_; cÄ nspiciÄ, *behold*.

c) The deponents gradior, _to go_; morior, *to die*, patior, *to suffer*.

110. Active voice.—CapiÄ, *I take*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. PERF. PASS. PARTIC. capiÄ, capere, cÄ«pÄ«, captus.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. PLURAL. capiÄ, capis, capit; capimus, capitis, capiunt.

IMPERFECT. capiÄ«bam, -iÄ«bÄ s, -iÄ«bat; capiÄ«bÄ mus, -iÄ«bÄ tis, -iÄ«bant.

FUTURE. capiam, -iÄ«s, -iet; capiÄ«mus, -iÄ«tis, -ient.

PERFECT. cÄ«pÄ«, -istÄ«, -it; cÄ«pimus, -istis, -Ä«runt or -Ä«re.

PLUPERFECT. cÄ«peram, -erÄ s, -erat; cÄ«perÄ mus, -erÄ tis, -erant.

FUTURE PERFECT. cÄ«perÄ, -eris, -erit; cÄ«perimus, -eritis, -erint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. capiam, -iÄ s, -iat; capiÄ mus, -iÄ tis, -iant.

IMPERFECT. caperem, -erēs, -eret; caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.

PERFECT. cāperim, -eris, -erit; cāperēmus, -erētis, -erint.

PLUPERFECT. cāpissēm, -issēs, -isset; cāpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ cape; capite. _Fut._ capitā, capitā te, capitā; capiuntā.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ capere _Pres._ capiēns. _Perf._ cāpisse. _Fut._ captārus esse. _Fut._ captārus.

GERUND. SUPINE. _Gen._ capiendā, _Dat._ capiendā, _Acc._ capiendum, _Acc._ captum, _Abl._ capiendā. _Abl._ captā.

111. Passive Voice.--Capior, *I am taken*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. PRES. IND. PRES. INF. PERF. IND. capior, capā, captus sum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR. PLURAL. capior, caperis, capitur; capimur, capiminā, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT. capiābar, -iābaris, -iābatur; capiāmur, -iābaminā, -iābantur.

FUTURE. capiar, -iāris, -iātur; capiāmur, -iāminā, -ientur.

PERFECT. captus sum, es, est; captā sumus, estis, sunt.

PLUPERFECT. captus eram, erās, erat; captā erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT. captus erā, eris, erit; captā erimus, eritis, erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT. capiar, -iāris, -iātur; capiāmur, -iāminā, -iantur.

IMPERFECT. caperer, -erāris, -erātur; caperēmur, -erētminā, -erentur.

PERFECT. captus sim, sās, sit; captā sām, sātis, sint.

PLUPERFECT. captus essem, essēs, esset; captā essēmus, essētis, essent.

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ capere; capiminā. _Fut._ capitor, capitor; capiuntor.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ capā. _Perf._ captus esse. _Perfect._ captus. _Fut._ captum rā. _Gerundive._ capiendus.

* * * * *

DEPONENT VERBS.

112. Deponent Verbs have in the main Passive *forms* with Active or Neuter *meaning*. But—

a. They have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participles, Gerund, and Supine.

b. They have the following Passive meanings: always in the Gerundive, and sometimes in the Perfect Passive Participle; as—

sequendus, *to be followed*; adeptus, *attained*.

113. Paradigms of Deponent Verbs are—

I. Conj. mārōr, mārā rā, mārā tus sum, *admire*. II. Conj. vereor, vererā, veritus sum, *fear*. III. Conj. sequor, sequā, secātus sum, *follow*. IV. Conj. largior, largā rā, largātus sum, *give*. III. (in -ior) patior, patā, passus sum, *suffer*.

INDICATIVE MOOD. I. II. III. IV. III (in -ior) _Pres._ mārōr vereor sequor largior patior mārā ris verāris sequeris largiris pateris mārā tur verātur sequitur largātur patitur mārāmur verāmur sequimur largāmur patimur mārā minā verāminā sequiminā largāminā patiminā mārāntur verentur sequuntur largiuntur patiuntur _Impf._ mārā bar verābar sequābar largiābar patiābar _Fut._ mārā bor verābor sequar largiar patiar _Perf._ mirā tus sum veritus sum secātus sum largātus sum passus sum _Plup._ mārā tus veritus secātus largātus passus eram eram eram eram eram _F.P._ mārā tus erā veritus erā secātus erā largātus erā passus erā

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Pres._ mārōrer verear sequar largiar patiar _Impf._ mārā rer verārer sequerer largārer paterer _Perf._ mārā tus sim veritus sim secātus sim largātus sim passus sim _Plup._ mārā tus veritus sectātus largātus passus essem essem essem essem essem

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ mārā re, verāre, sequere, largāre, patere, etc. etc. etc. etc. etc. _Fut._ mārā tor, verātor, sequitor, largātor, patitor, etc. etc. etc. etc. etc.

INFINITIVE. _Pres._ mārā ri verā rā sequā largā rā patā _Perf._ mārā tus veritus secātus largātus passus esse esse esse esse esse esse _Fut._ mārā tārus veritārus secātārus largātārus passārus esse esse esse esse esse esse

PARTICIPLES. _Pres._ mārā ns verāns sequāns largiāns patiāns _Fut._ mārā tārus veritārus secātārus largitārus passārus _Perf._ mārā tus veritus secātus largitus passus _Ger._ mārārandus verendus sequendus largiendus patiendus

GERUND. mārārandā verendā sequendā largiendā patiendā mirandā, verendā, sequendā, largiendā, patiendā, etc. etc. etc. etc. etc.

SUPINE. mārā tum, veritum, secātum, largātum, passum, -tā -tā -tā -tā -sā

* * * * *

SEMI-DEPONENTS.

114. 1. Semi-Deponents are verbs which have the Present System in the Active Voice, but the Perfect System in the Passive without change of meaning. Here belong—

audeā, audēre, ausus sum, *to dare*. gaudeā, gaudeēre, gāvāsus sum, *to rejoice*. soleā, solēre,

solitus sum, *to be wont*. fĀ«dĀ , fĀ«dere, fĀ«sus sum, *to trust*.

2. The following verbs have a Perfect Passive Participle with Active meaning:—

adolĀ“scĀ , *_grow up_*; adultus, *having grown up*, cĀ“nĀ re, *_dine_*; cĀ“nĀ tus, *having dined*. placĀ“re, *_please_*; placitus, *having pleased, agreeable*. prandĀ“re, *_lunch_*; prĀ nsus, *having lunched*. pĀ tĀ re, *_drink_*; pĀ tus, *having drunk*. jĀ«rĀ re, *_swear_*; jĀ«rĀ tus, *having sworn*.

a. JĀ«rĀ tus is used in a passive sense also.

3. Revertor and dĀ“vertor both regularly form their Perfect in the Active Voice; viz.—

revertor, revertĀ« (Inf.), revertĀ« (Perf.), *to return*. dĀ“vertor, dĀ“vertĀ« (Inf.), dĀ“vertĀ« (Perf.), *to turn aside*.

* * * * *

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

115. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations,—the Active and the Passive. The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the auxiliary sum, the Passive by combining the Gerundive with the same auxiliary.

Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE MOOD. *_Pres._* amĀ tĀ«rus (–a, –um) sum, *I am about to love*. *_Inf._* amĀ tĀ«rus eram, *I was about to love*. *_Fut._* amĀ tĀ«rus erĀ , *I shall be about to love*. *_Perf._* amĀ tĀ«rus fuĀ« , *I have been (was) about to love*. *_Plup._* amĀ tĀ«rus fueram, *I had been about to love*. *_Fut. P._* amĀ tĀ«rus fuerĀ , *I shall have been about to love*.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *_Pres._* amĀ tĀ«rus sim, *may I be about to love*. *_Imp._* amĀ tĀ«rus essem, *I should be about to love*. *_Perf._* amĀ tĀ«rus fuerim, *I may have been about to love*. *_Plup._* amĀ tĀ«rus fuissem, *I should have been about to love*.

INFINITIVE. *_Pres._* amĀ tĀ«rus esse, *to be about to love*. *_Perf._* amĀ tĀ«rus fuisse, *to have been about to love*.

Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

INDICATIVE. *_Pres._* amandus (–a, –um) sum, *I am to be loved, must be loved*. *_Imp._* amandus eram, *I was to be loved*. *_Fut._* amandus erĀ , *I shall deserve to be loved*. *_Perf._* amandus fuĀ« , *I was to be loved*. *_Plup._* amandus fueram, *I had deserved to be loved*. *_Fut. P._* amandus fuerĀ , *I shall have deserved to be loved*.

SUBJUNCTIVE. *_Pres._* amandus sim, *may I deserve to be loved*. *_Imp._* amandus essem, *I should deserve to be loved*. *_Perf._* amandus fuerim, *I may have deserved to be loved*. *_Plup._* amandus fuissem, *I should have deserved to be loved*.

INFINITIVE. *_Pres._* amandus esse, *to deserve to be loved*. *_Perf._* amandus fuisse, *to have deserved to be loved*.

* * * * *

PECULIARITIES OF CONJUGATION.

116. 1. Perfects in $-v\ddot{a}\ll$, $-v\ddot{a}\ll$, and $-v\ddot{a}\ll$, with the forms derived from them, often drop the *ve* or *vi* before endings beginning with *r* or *s*. So also $n\ddot{a}\ v\ddot{a}\ll$ (from $n\ddot{a}\ sc\ddot{a}$) and the compounds of $m\ddot{a}\ v\ddot{a}\ll$ (from *move*). Thus:—

$am\ddot{a}\ vist\ddot{a}\ll$ $am\ddot{a}\ st\ddot{a}\ll$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'vist\ddot{a}\ll$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'st\ddot{a}\ll$ $am\ddot{a}\ visse$ $am\ddot{a}\ sse$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'visse$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'sse$
 $am\ddot{a}\ v\ddot{a}\ 'runt$ $am\ddot{a}\ runt$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'v\ddot{a}\ 'runt$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'runt$ $am\ddot{a}\ verim$ $am\ddot{a}\ rim$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'verim$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'rim$
 $am\ddot{a}\ veram$ $am\ddot{a}\ ram$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'veram$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'ram$ $am\ddot{a}\ ver\ddot{a}$ $am\ddot{a}\ r\ddot{a}$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'ver\ddot{a}$ $d\ddot{a}\ 'l\ddot{a}\ 'r\ddot{a}$
 $n\ddot{a}\ vist\ddot{a}\ll$ $n\ddot{a}\ st\ddot{a}\ll$ $n\ddot{a}\ verim$ $n\ddot{a}\ rim$ $n\ddot{a}\ visse$ $n\ddot{a}\ sse$ $n\ddot{a}\ veram$ $n\ddot{a}\ ram$ $aud\ddot{a}\ll vist\ddot{a}\ll$ $aud\ddot{a}\ll st\ddot{a}\ll$
 $aud\ddot{a}\ll visse$ $aud\ddot{a}\ll sse$

2. In the Gerund and Gerundive of the Third and Fourth Conjugations, the endings $-undus$, $-und\ddot{a}\ll$, often occur instead of $-endus$ and $-end\ddot{a}\ll$, as *faciundus*, *faciund\ddot{a}\ll*.

3. $d\ddot{a}\ll c\ddot{a}$, $d\ddot{a}\ll c\ddot{a}$, *faci\ddot{a}*, form the Imperatives, $d\ddot{a}\ll c$, $d\ddot{a}\ll c$, *fac*. But compounds of *faci\ddot{a}* form the Imperative in $-fice$, as $c\ddot{a}\ nface$. Compounds of $d\ddot{a}\ll c\ddot{a}$, $d\ddot{a}\ll c\ddot{a}$, accent the ultima; as, $\ddot{a}\ 'd\ddot{a}\ll \hat{a}\ 'c$, $\ddot{a}\ 'd\ddot{a}\ll \hat{a}\ 'c$.

4. Archaic and Poetic forms:—

a. The ending $-ier$ in the Present Infinitive Passive; as, $am\ddot{a}\ rier$, $mon\ddot{a}\ 'rier$, $d\ddot{a}\ll cier$, for $am\ddot{a}\ r\ddot{a}\ll$, $mon\ddot{a}\ 'r\ddot{a}\ll$, $d\ddot{a}\ll c\ddot{a}\ll$.

b. The ending $-b\ddot{a}\ll$ for $-i\ddot{a}\ll b\ddot{a}\ll$ in Imperfects of the Fourth Conjugation, and $-b\ddot{a}\ll$ for $-iam$ in Futures; as, $sc\ddot{a}\ll b\ddot{a}\ll$, $sc\ddot{a}\ll b\ddot{a}\ll$, for $sci\ddot{a}\ll b\ddot{a}\ll$, *sciam*.

c. Instead of the fuller forms, in such words as $d\ddot{a}\ll xist\ddot{a}\ll$, $scr\ddot{a}\ll psistis$, $surr\ddot{a}\ll xisse$, we sometimes find $d\ddot{a}\ll xt\ddot{a}\ll$, $scr\ddot{a}\ll ptis$, $surr\ddot{a}\ll xe$, etc.

d. The endings $-im$, $-s$, etc. (for $-am$, $-s$, etc.) occur in a few Subjunctive forms; as, $edim$ (eat), $duint$, $perduint$.

5. In the Future Active and Perfect Passive Infinitive, the auxiliary *esse* is often omitted; as, $\ddot{a}\ ct\ddot{a}\ll rum$ for $\ddot{a}\ cturum esse$; $\ddot{a}\ jectus$ for $\ddot{a}\ jectus esse$.

* * * * *

FORMATION OF THE VERB STEMS.

Formation of the Present Stem.

117. Many verbs employ the simple Verb Stem for the Present Stem; [39] as, $d\ddot{a}\ll cere$, $am\ddot{a}\ re$, $mon\ddot{a}\ 're$, $aud\ddot{a}\ll re$. Others modify the Verb Stem to form the Present, as follows:—

1. By appending the vowels, \ddot{a} , \ddot{a}' , $\ddot{a}\ll$; as,—

Present Stem Verb Stem $juv\ddot{a}\ re$, $juv\ddot{a}$ – $juv-$. $aug\ddot{a}\ 're$, $aug\ddot{a}\ 're$ – $aug-$. $vinc\ddot{a}\ll re$, $vinc\ddot{a}\ll re$ – $vinc-$.

2. By adding *i*, as $capi\ddot{a}$, Present Stem $capi-$ (Verb Stem $cap-$).

3. By the insertion of *n* (*m* before labial–mutes) before the final consonant of the Verb Stem; as, $fund\ddot{a}$

(Stem fud-), rumpĀ (Stem rup-).

4. By appending -n to the Verb Stem; as,--

cern-Ā pell-Ā (for pel-nĀ).

5. By appending t to the Verb Stem; as,--

flect-Ā.

6. By appending sc to the Verb Stem; as,--

crĀ“sc-Ā . scĀ«sc-Ā .

7. By Reduplication, that is, by prefixing the initial consonant of the Verb Stem with i; as,--

gi-gn-Ā (root gen-), si-st-Ā (root sta-).

Formation of the Perfect Stem.

118. The Perfect Stem is formed from the Verb Stem--

1. By adding v (in case of Vowel Stems); as,--

amĀ v-Ā«, dĀ“lĀ“v-Ā«, audĀ«v-Ā«.

2. By adding u (in case of some Consonant Stems); as,--

strepu-Ā«, genu-Ā«, alu-Ā«.

3. By adding s (in case of most Consonant Stems); as,--

carp-Ā , Perfect carps-Ā«. scrĀ«b-Ā , " scrĀ«ps-Ā« (for scrĀ«b-sĀ«). rĀ«d-eĀ , " rĀ«s-Ā« (for rĀ«d-sĀ«). sent-iĀ , " sĀ“ns-Ā« (for sent-sĀ«). dĀ«c-Ā , " dĀ«x-Ā« (i.e. dĀ«c-sĀ«).

a. Note that before the ending -sĀ« a Dental Mute (t, d) is lost; a Guttural Mute (c, g) unites with s to form x; while the Labial b is changed to p.

4. Without addition. Of this formation there are three types:--

a) The Verb Stem is reduplicated by prefixing the initial consonant with the following vowel or e; as,--

currĀ , Perfect cu-currĀ«. poscĀ , " po-poscĀ«. pellĀ , " pe-pulĀ«.

NOTE 1.--Compounds, with the exception of dĀ , stĀ , sistĀ , discĀ , poscĀ , omit the reduplication. Thus: com-pulĀ«, but re-poposcĀ«.

NOTE 2.--Verbs beginning with sp or st retain both consonants in the reduplication, but drop s from the stem; as, spondeĀ , spo-pondĀ«; stĀ , stetĀ«.

b) The short vowel of the Verb Stem is lengthened; as, legĀ , lĀ“gĀ«; agĀ , Ā“gĀ«. Note that Āf by this process becomes Ā“.

c) The vowel of the Verb Stem is unchanged; as, *vertĀ*, *vertĀ*«; *minuĀ*, *minuĀ*«.

Formation of the Participial Stem.

119. The Perfect Passive Participle, from which the Participial Stem is derived by dropping *-us*, is formed:--

1. By adding *-tus* (sometimes to the Present Stem, sometimes to the Verb Stem); as,--

amĀ -re, Participle *amĀ -tus*. *dĀ*“*lĀ*“*-re*, " *dĀ*“*lĀ*“*-tus*, *audĀ*«*-re*, " *audĀ*«*-tus*, *leg-ere*, " *lĀ*“*c-tus*, *scrĀ*«*b-ere*, " *scrĀ*«*p-tus*, *sentĀ*«*-re*, " *sĀ*“*n-sus* (for *sent-tus*). *caed-ere*, " *cae-sus* (for *caed-tus*).

a. Note that *g*, before *t*, becomes *c* (see *Ā*§ 8, 5); *b* becomes *p*; while *dt* or *tt* becomes *ss*, which is then often simplified to *s* (*Ā*§ 8, 2).

2. After the analogy of Participles like *sĀ*“*nsus* and *caesus*, where *-sus* arises by phonetic change, *-sus* for *-tus* is added to other Verb Stems; as,--

lĀ b-Ā«, Participle *lĀ p-sus*. *fĀ*«*g-ere*, " *fĀ*«*-xus*.

a. The same consonant changes occur in appending this ending *-sus* to the stem as in the case of the Perfect ending *-si* (see *Ā*§ 118, 3, a).

3. A few Verbs form the Participle in *-Ā-tus*; as,--

domĀ -re, *dom-Ā-tus*. *monĀ*“*-re*, *mon-Ā-tus*.

4. The Future Active Participle is usually identical in its stem with the Perfect Passive Participle; as, *amĀ -tus*, *amĀ tĀ*«*rus*; *moni-tus*, *monitĀ*«*rus*. But--

juvĀ -re, Perf. Partic. *jĀ*«*tus*, has Fut. Act. Partic. *juvĀ tĀ*«*rus*. [40] *lavĀ -re*, " " *lautus*, " " *lavĀ tĀ*«*rus*. *par-ere*, " " *partus*, " " *paritĀ*«*rus*. *ru-ere*, " " *rutus*, " " *ruitĀ*«*rus*. *secĀ f-re*, " " *sectus*, " " *secĀ tĀ*«*rus*. *fru-Ā-*, " " *frĀ*«*ctus*, " " *fruitĀ*«*rus*. *mor-Ā*«, " " *mortuus*, " " *moritĀ*«*rus*. *orĀ*«*-rĀ*«, " " *ortus*, " " *oritĀ*«*rus*.

* * * * *

LIST OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS, WITH PRINCIPAL PARTS.

First (*Ā*€*-*) Conjugation.

120. I. PERFECT IN *-VĀ*^a.

amĀ *amĀ re* *amĀ vĀ*« *amĀ tus* *love* All regular verbs of the First Conjugation follow this model.

pĀ tĀ *pĀ tĀ re* *pĀ tĀ vĀ*« *pĀ tus* (*Ā*§ 114, *drink* 2)

II. PERFECT IN *-UĀ*^a.

crepĀ *crepĀ re* *crepuĀ*« *crepitĀ*«*rus* *rattle* *cubĀ* *cubĀ re* *cubuĀ*« *cubitĀ*«*rus* *lie down* *domĀ* *domĀ re* *domuĀ*« *domitus* *tame* *fricĀ* *fricĀ re* *fricuĀ*« *frictus* *and rub* *fricĀ tus* *micĀ* *micĀ re* *micuĀ*« ----- *glitter* *dĀ*«*micĀ* *dĀ*«*micĀ re* *dĀ*«*micĀ vĀ*« *dĀ*«*micĀ tum* *fight* (est)[41] *ex-plicĀ* *explicĀ re* *explicĀ vĀ*« *explicĀ tus* *unfold* (*-uĀ*«) (*-itus*) *im-plicĀ* *implicĀ re* *implicĀ vĀ*« *implicĀ tus* *entwine*

(-uÄ«) (-itus) secÄ secÄ re secuÄ« sectus *cut* sonÄ sonÄ re sonuÄ« sonÄ tÄ«rus *sound* tonÄ tonÄ re tonuÄ« ——— *thunder* vetÄ vetÄ re vetuÄ« vetitus *forbid* III. PERFECT IN -Ä^a WITH LENGTHENING OF THE STEM VOWEL.

juvÄ juvÄ re jÄ«vÄ« jÄ«tus *help* lavÄ lavÄ re lÄ vÄ« lautus *wash* IV. PERFECT REDUPLICATED.

stÄ stÄ re stetÄ« stÄ tÄ«rus

V. DEPONENTS.

These are all regular, and follow _mÄ«ror_, _mÄ«rÄ rÄ«_, _mÄ«rÄ tus sum_.

Second (_Ä'_) Conjugation.

121. I. PERFECT IN -VÄ^a.

dÄ«leÄ dÄ«lÄ«re dÄ«lÄ«vÄ« dÄ«lÄ«tus *destroy* fleÄ flÄ«re flÄ«vÄ« flÄ«tus *weep, lament*
com-pleÄ [42] complÄ«re complÄ«vÄ« complÄ«tus *fill up* abolÄ abolÄ«re abolÄ«vÄ« abolitus *destroy*
cieÄ [43] ciÄ«re cÄ«vÄ« citus *set in motion* II. PERFECT IN -UÄ^a.

a. Type -eÄ , -Ä«re, -uÄ«, -itus.

arceÄ arcÄ«re arcuÄ« keep off coerceÄ coerceÄ«re coerçuÄ« coercitus *hold in check* exerceÄ exercÄ«re exercuÄ« exercitus *practise* caleÄ calÄ«re caluÄ« calitÄ«rus *be warm* careÄ carÄ«re caruÄ« caritÄ«rus *be without* doleÄ dolÄ«re doluÄ« dolitÄ«rus *grieve* habeÄ habÄ«re habuÄ« habitus *have* dÄ«beÄ dÄ«bÄ«re dÄ«buÄ« dÄ«bitus *owe* praebeÄ praebeÄ«re praebuÄ« praebitus *offer* jaceÄ jacÄ«re jacuÄ« jacitÄ«rus *lie* mereÄ merÄ«re meruÄ« meritus *earn, deserve* moneÄ monÄ«re monuÄ« monitus *advise* noceÄ nocÄ«re nocuÄ« nocitum (est) *injure* pä reÄ pä rÄ«re pä ruÄ« pä ritÄ«rus *obey* placeÄ placÄ«re placuÄ« placitÄ«rus *please* taceÄ tacÄ«re tacuÄ« tacitÄ«rus *be silent* terreÄ terrÄ«re terruÄ« territus *frighten* valeÄ valÄ«re valuÄ« valitÄ«rus *be strong* NOTE 1.—The following lack the Participial Stem:— egeÄ egÄ«re eguÄ« ——— *want* Ä«mineÄ Ä«minÄ«re Ä«minuÄ« ——— *stand forth* flÄ reÄ flÄ rÄ«re flÄ ruÄ« ——— *bloom* horreÄ horrÄ«re horruÄ« ——— *bristle* lateÄ latÄ«re latuÄ« ——— *lurk* niteÄ nitÄ«re nituÄ« ——— *gleam* oleÄ olÄ«re oluÄ« ——— *smell* palleÄ pallÄ«re palluÄ« ——— *be pale* pateÄ patÄ«re patuÄ« ——— *lie open* rubeÄ rubÄ«re rubuÄ« ——— *be red* sileÄ silÄ«re siluÄ« ——— *be silent* splendeÄ splendÄ«re splenduÄ« ——— *gleam* studeÄ studÄ«re studuÄ« ——— *study* stupeÄ stupÄ«re stupuÄ« ——— *be amazed* timeÄ timÄ«re timuÄ« ——— *fear* torpeÄ torpÄ«re torpuÄ« ——— *be dull* vigeÄ vigÄ«re viguÄ« ——— *flourish* vireÄ virÄ«re viruÄ« ——— *be green* and others.

NOTE 2.—The following are used only in the Present System:— aveÄ avÄ«re ——— ——— *wish* frÄ«geÄ frÄ«gÄ«re ——— ——— *be cold* immineÄ imminÄ«re ——— ——— *overhang* maereÄ maerÄ«re ——— ——— *mourn* polleÄ pollÄ«re ——— ——— *be strong* and others.

b. Type -eÄ , -Ä«re, -uÄ«, -tus (-sus).

cÄ«nseÄ cÄ«nsÄ«re cÄ«nsuÄ« cÄ«nsus *estimate* doceÄ doceÄ«re docuÄ« doctus *teach* misceÄ miscÄ«re miscuÄ« mixtus *mix* teneÄ tenÄ«re tenuÄ« ——— *hold* So _contineÄ _ and _sustineÄ _; but— retineÄ retinÄ«re retinuÄ« retentus *retain* obtineÄ obtinÄ«re obtinuÄ« obtentus *maintain* torreÄ torrÄ«re torruÄ« tostus *bake* III. PERFECT IN -SÄ^a.

augeÄ augÄ«re auxÄ« auctus *increase* torqueÄ torquÄ«re torsÄ« tortus *twist* indulgeÄ indulgÄ«re indulgÄ« ——— *indulge* lÄ«ceÄ lÄ«cÄ«re lÄ«xÄ« ——— *be light* lÄ«geÄ lÄ«gÄ«re lÄ«xÄ« ——— *mourn* jubeÄ jubÄ«re jussÄ« jussus *order* per-mulceÄ permulcÄ«re permulsÄ« permulsus *soothe* rÄ«deÄ

rÄ«dÄ“re rÄ«sÄ« rÄ«sum (est) *laugh* suÄ deÄ suÄ dÄ“re suÄ sÄ« suÄ sum (est) *advise* abs–tergeÄ abstergÄ“re abstersÄ« abstersus *wipe off* Ä rdeÄ Ä rdÄ“re Ä rsÄ« Ä rsÄ«rus *burn* haereÄ haerÄ“re haesÄ« haesÄ«rus *stick* maneÄ manÄ“re mä nsÄ« mä nsÄ«rus *stay* algeÄ algÄ“re alsÄ« ——— *be cold* fulgeÄ fulgÄ“re fulsÄ« ——— *gleam* urgeÄ urgÄ“re ursÄ« ——— *press* IV. PERFECT IN –Ä^a WITH REDUPLICATION.

mordeÄ mordÄ“re momordÄ« morsus *bite* spondeÄ spondÄ“re spondÄ« spÄ nsus *promise* tondeÄ tondÄ“re totondÄ« tÄ nsus *shear* pendeÄ pendÄ“re pependÄ« ——— *hang* V. PERFECT IN –Ä^a WITH LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

caveÄ cavÄ“re cÄ vÄ« cautÄ«rus *take care* faveÄ favÄ“re fÄ vÄ« fautÄ«rus *favor* foveÄ fovÄ“re fÄ vÄ« fÄ tus *cherish* moveÄ movÄ“re mä vÄ« mä tus *move* paveÄ pavÄ“re pä vÄ« ——— *fear* sedeÄ sedÄ“re sä“dÄ« sessÄ«rus *sit* videÄ vidÄ“re vÄ«dÄ« vÄ«sus *see* voveÄ vovÄ“re vÄ vÄ« vÄ tus *vow* VI. PERFECT IN –Ä^a WITHOUT EITHER REDUPLICATION OR LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

ferveÄ fervÄ“re (fervÄ«, ——— *boil* ferbuÄ«) prandeÄ prandÄ“re prandÄ« prÄ nsus (Ä§ 114, *lunch* 2) strÄ«deÄ strÄ«dÄ“re strÄ«dÄ« ——— *creak* VII. DEPONENTS.

liceor licÄ“rÄ« licitus sum *bid* polliceor pollicÄ“rÄ« pollicitus sum *promise* mereor merÄ“rÄ« meritus sum *earn* misereor miserÄ“rÄ« miseritus sum *pity* vereor verÄ“rÄ« veritus sum *fear* fateor fatÄ“rÄ« fassus sum *confess* cÄ nfitior cÄ nfitÄ“rÄ« cÄ nfessus sum *confess* reor rÄ“rÄ« ratus sum *think* medeor medÄ“rÄ« ——— *heal* tueor tuÄ“rÄ« ——— *protect* Third (Consonant) Conjugation.

122. I. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Perfect in –sÄ«.

a. Type –Ä , –Ä•re, –sÄ«, –tus.

carpÄ carpere carpsÄ« carptus *pluck* sculpÄ sculpere sculpsÄ« sculptus *chisel* rÄ“pÄ rÄ“pere rÄ“psÄ« ——— *creep* serpÄ serpere serpsÄ« ——— *crawl* scribÄ scribere scrÄ«psÄ« scrÄ«ptus *write* nÄ«bÄ nÄ«bere nÄ«psÄ« nÄ«pta (woman *marry* only) regÄ regere rÄ“xÄ« rÄ“ctus *govern* tegÄ tegere tÄ“xÄ« tÄ“ctus *cover* af–flÄ«gÄ afflÄ«gere afflÄ«xÄ« afflÄ«ctus *shatter* dÄ«cÄ dÄ«cere dÄ«xÄ« dictus *say* dÄ«cÄ dÄ«cere dÄ«xÄ« ductus *lead* coquÄ coquere coxÄ« coctus *cook* trahÄ trahere trÄ xÄ« trÄ ctus *draw* vehÄ vehere vexÄ« vectus *carry* cingÄ cingere cÄ«nxÄ« cÄ«nctus *gird* tingÄ tingere tÄ«nxÄ« tÄ«nctus *dip* jungÄ jungere jÄ«nxÄ« jÄ«nctus *join* fingÄ fingere fÄ«nxÄ« fÄ«ctus *would* pingÄ pingere pä«nxÄ« pä«ctus *paint* stringÄ stringere strÄ«nxÄ« strictus *bind* –stinguÄ [44] –stinguere –stÄ«nxÄ« –stÄ«nctus *blot out* unguÄ unguere Ä«nxÄ« Ä«nctus *anoint* vÄ«vÄ vÄ«vere vÄ«xÄ« vÄ«ctum (est) *live* gerÄ gerere gessÄ« gestus *carry* urÄ Ä«rere ussÄ« Ä«stus *burn* temnÄ temnere con–tempÄ« con–temptus *despise* b. Type –Ä , –Ä•re, –sÄ«, –sus.

fÄ«gÄ fÄ«gere fÄ«xÄ« fÄ«xus *fasten* mergÄ mergere mersÄ« mersus *sink* spargÄ spargere sparsÄ« sparsus *scatter* flectÄ flectere flexÄ« flexus *bend* nectÄ nectere nexÄ« nexus *twine* (nexÄ«) mittÄ mittere mä«sÄ« missus *send* rÄ dÄ rÄ dere rÄ sÄ« rÄ sus *shave* rÄ dÄ rÄ dere rÄ sÄ« rÄ sus *gnaw* vÄ dÄ vÄ dere –vÄ sÄ«[45] –vÄ sum *march, walk* (est)[45] lÄ«dÄ lÄ«dere lÄ«sÄ« lÄ«sum (est) *play* trÄ«dÄ trÄ«dere trÄ«sÄ« trÄ«sus *push* laedÄ laedere laesÄ« laesus *injure, hurt* claudÄ claudere clausÄ« clausus *close* plaudÄ plaudere plausÄ« plausum (est) *clap* explÄ dÄ explÄ dere explÄ sÄ« explÄ sus *hoot off* cÄ“dÄ cÄ“dere cessÄ« cessum (est) *withdraw* dÄ«vidÄ dÄ«videre dÄ«vÄ«sÄ« dÄ«vÄ«sus *divide* premÄ premere pressÄ« pressus *press* 2. Perfect in –Ä« with Reduplication.

ab–dÄ abdere abdidÄ« abditus *conceal* red–dÄ red–dere reddidÄ« redditus *return* So _addÄ _.

_condĀ _ , _dĀ“dĀ _ , _perĀ _ , _prĀ dĀ _ , _trĀ dĀ _ , etc. cĀ n–sistĀ cĀ nsistere cĀ nstītĀ«
 ----- _take one's stand_ resistĀ resistere restitĀ« ----- resist circumstistĀ circumstistere circumstetĀ«
 ----- surround cadĀ cadere cecidĀ« cĀ sĀ«rus fall caedĀ caedere cecĀ«dĀ« caesus kill pendĀ
 pendere pependĀ« pĀ“nsus weigh, pay tendĀ tendere tetendĀ« tentus stretch tundĀ tundere tutudĀ«
 tĀ«sus, tĀ«nsus beat fallĀ fallere fefellĀ« (falsus, as deceive Adj.) pellĀ pellere pepulĀ« pulsus drive out
 currĀ currere cucurrĀ« cursum (est) run parcĀ parcere pepercĀ« parsĀ«rus spare canĀ canere cecinĀ«
 ----- sing tangĀ tangere tetigĀ« tĀ ctus touch pungĀ pungere pupugĀ« pĀ«nctus prick NOTE.—In the
 following verbs the perfects were originally reduplicated, but have lost the reduplicating syllable:—
 per–cellĀ percellere perculĀ« percussus strike down findĀ findere fidĀ« fissus split scindĀ scindere
 scidĀ« scissus tear apart tollĀ tollere sus–tulĀ« sublĀ tus remove 3. Perfect in –Ā« with Lengthening of
 Stem Vowel.

agĀ agere Ā“gĀ« Ā ctus drive, do peragĀ peragere perĀ“gĀ« perĀ ctus finish subigĀ subigere
 subĀ“gĀ« subĀ ctus subdue cĀ gĀ cĀ gere coĀ“gĀ« coĀ ctus force, gather frangĀ frangere frĀ“gĀ«
 frĀ ctus break perfringĀ perfringere perfrĀ“gĀ« perfrĀ ctus break down legĀ legere lĀ“gĀ« lĀ“ctus
 gather, read perlegĀ perlegere perlĀ“gĀ« perlĀ“ctus read through colligĀ colligere collĀ“gĀ«
 collĀ“ctus collect dĀ“ligĀ dĀ“ligere dĀ“lĀ“gĀ« dĀ“lĀ“ctus choose dĀ«ligĀ dĀ«ligere dĀ«lĀ“xĀ«
 dĀ«lĀ“ctus love intellegĀ intellegere intellĀ“xĀ« intellĀ“ctus understand neglegĀ neglegere neglĀ“xĀ«
 neglĀ“ctus neglect emĀ emere Ā“mĀ« Ā“mptus buy coĀ«mĀ coĀ«mere coĀ“mĀ« coĀ“mptus buy up
 redimĀ redimere redĀ“mĀ« redĀ“mptus buy back dirimĀ dirimere dirĀ“mĀ« dirĀ“mptus destroy
 dĀ“mĀ dĀ“mere dĀ“mpsĀ« dĀ“mptus take away sĀ«mĀ sĀ«mere sĀ«mpsĀ« sĀ“mptus take
 prĀ mĀ prĀ mere prĀ mpsĀ« (prĀ mptus, as take out Adj.) vincĀ vincere vĀ«cĀ« victus conquer
 re–linquĀ relinquere relĀ«quĀ« relĀ«ctus leave rumpĀ rumpere rĀ«pĀ« ruptus break edĀ Ā“sse (Ā§
 Ā“dĀ« Ā“sus eat 128) fundĀ fundere fĀ«dĀ« fĀ«sus four 4. Perfect in –Ā« without either Reduplication
 or Lengthening of Stem Vowel.

excĀ«dĀ excĀ«dere excĀ«dĀ« excĀ«sus hammer cĀ nsĀ«dĀ cĀ nsĀ«dere cĀ nsĀ“dĀ« ----- _take
 one's seat_ possĀ«dĀ possĀ«dere possĀ“dĀ« possessus take possession accendĀ accendere accendĀ«
 accĀ“nsus kindle a–scendĀ ascendere ascendĀ« ascĀ“nsum (est) climb dĀ“–fendĀ dĀ“fendere
 dĀ“fendĀ« dĀ“fĀ“nsus defend pre–hendĀprehendereprehendĀ«prehĀ“nsus seize Ā«cĀ Ā«cere Ā«cĀ«
 ictus strike vellĀ vellere vellĀ« vulsus pluck vertĀ vertere vertĀ« versus turn pandĀ pandere pandĀ«
 passus spread solvĀ solvere solvĀ« solĀ«tus loose vĀ«sĀ vĀ«sere vĀ«sĀ« vĀ«sus visit volvĀ volvere
 volvĀ« volĀ«tus roll verrĀ verrere verrĀ« versus sweep 5. Perfect in –uĀ«.

in–cumbĀ incumbere incubuĀ« incubitĀ«rus lean on gignĀ gignere genuĀ« genitus bring forth molĀ
 molere moluĀ« molitus grind vomĀ vomere vomuĀ« vomitus vomit fremĀ fremere fremuĀ« ----- snort
 gemĀ gemere genuĀ« ----- sigh metĀ metere messuĀ« messus reap tremĀ tremere tremuĀ« -----
 tremble strepĀ strepere strepuĀ« ----- rattle alĀ alete aluĀ« altus (alitus) nourish colĀ colere coluĀ«
 cultus cultivate incolĀ incolere incoluĀ« ----- inhabit excolĀ excolere excoluĀ« excultus perfect
 cĀ nsulĀ cĀ nsulere cĀ nsuluĀ« cĀ nsultus consult cĀ nserĀ cĀ nserere cĀ nseruĀ« cĀ nsertus
 join dĀ“serĀ dĀ“serere dĀ“seruĀ« dĀ“sertus desert disserĀ disserere disseruĀ« ----- discourse texĀ
 texere texuĀ« textus weave 6. Perfect in –vĀ«.

sinĀ sinere sĀ«vĀ« situs allow desinĀ dĀ“sinere dĀ“siĀ« dĀ“situs cease ponĀ pĀ nere posuĀ«
 positus place ob–linĀ oblinere oblĀ“vĀ« oblitus smear serĀ serere sĀ“vĀ« satus sow cĀ nserĀ
 cĀ nserere cĀ nsĀ“vĀ« cĀ nsitus plant cernĀ cernere ----- separate discernĀ discernere
 discrĀ“vĀ« discrĀ“tus distinguish dĀ“cernĀ dĀ“cernere dĀ“crĀ“vĀ« dĀ“crĀ“tus decide spĕrnĀ
 spĕrnere sprĀ“vĀ« sprĀ“tus scorn sternĀ sternere strĀ vĀ« strĀ tus spread prĀ –sternĀ prĀ sternere
 prĀ strĀ vĀ« prĀ strĀ tus overthrow petĀ petere petĀ«vĀ« petĀ«tus seek (petiĀ«) appetĀ appetere
 appetĀ«vĀ« appetĀ«tus long for terĀ terere trĀ«vĀ« trĀ«tus rub quaerĀ quaerere quaesĀ«vĀ«
 quaesĀ«tus seek acquĀ«rĀ acquĀ«rere acquĀ«sĀ«vĀ« acquĀ«sĀ«tus acquire arcessĀ arcessere
 arcessĀ«vĀ« arcessĀ«tus summon capessĀ capessere capessĀ«vĀ« capessĀ«tus seize lacessĀ lacessere

laccessÄ«vÄ« laccessÄ«tus *provoke* 7. Used only in Present System.

angÄ angere ----- *choke* lambÄ lambere ----- *lick* claudÄ claudere ----- *be lame*
furÄ furere ----- *rave* vergÄ vergere ----- *bend* and a few others.

II. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -U.

induÄ induere induÄ« indÄ«tus *put on* imbuÄ imbuere imbuÄ« imbÄ«tus *moisten* luÄ luere luÄ« -----
wash polluÄ polluere polluÄ« pollÄ«tus *defile* minuÄ minuere minuÄ« minÄ«tus *lessen* statuÄ statuere
statuÄ« statÄ«tus *set up* cÄ nstituÄ cÄ nstituere cÄ nstituÄ« cÄ nstitÄ«tus *determine* suÄ suere suÄ«
sÄ«tus *sew* tribuÄ tribuere tribuÄ« tribÄ«tus *allot* ruÄ ruere ruÄ« ruitÄ«rus *fall* dÄ«ruÄ dÄ«ruere
dÄ«ruÄ« dÄ«rutus *destroy* obruÄ obruere obruÄ« obrutus *overwhelm* acuÄ acuere acuÄ« ----- *sharpen*
arguÄ arguere arguÄ« ----- *accuse* congruÄ congruere congruÄ« ----- *agree* metuÄ metuere metuÄ«
----- *fear* ab-nuÄ abnuere abnuÄ« ----- *decline* re-spuÄ respuere respuÄ« ----- *reject* struÄ struere
strÄ«xÄ« strÄ«ctus *build* fluÄ fluere flÄ«xi (flÄ«xus, as *flow* Adj.)

III. VERBS WITH PRESENT STEM ENDING IN -I.

capiÄ cupere cupÄ«vÄ« cupÄ«tus *wish* sapiÄ sapere sapÄ«vÄ« ----- *taste* rapiÄ rapere rapuÄ« raptus
snatch dÄ«ripiÄ dÄ«riperere dÄ«ripuÄ« dÄ«reptus *plunder* cÄ nspiciÄ cÄ nspicere cÄ nspexÄ«
cÄ nspectus *gaze at* aspiciÄ aspiciere aspexÄ« aspectus *behold* illiciÄ illicere illexÄ« illectus *allure*
pelliciÄ pellicere pellexÄ« plectus *allure* Ä«liciÄ Ä«licere Ä«licuÄ« Ä«licitus *elicit* quatiÄ quaterere
----- *quassus* concutiÄ concutere concussÄ« concussus *shake* pariÄ parere peperÄ« partus *bring*
forth capiÄ capere cÄ«pÄ« captus *take* accipiÄ accipere accÄ«pÄ« acceptus *accept* incipiÄ incipere
incÄ«pÄ« inceptus *begin* faciÄ facere fÄ«cÄ« factus *make* afficiÄ afficere affÄ«cÄ« affectus *affect*
Passive, afficior, afficÄ«, affectus sum. So other prepositional compounds, _perficiÄ_, _perficior_;
interficiÄ, _interficior_; etc. But— assuÄ«faciÄ assuÄ«facere assuÄ«fÄ«cÄ« assuÄ«factus *accustom*
Passive, assuÄ«fiÄ, assuÄ«fieri, assuÄ«factus sum. So also _patefaciÄ_, _patefÄ«Ä_; _calefaciÄ_,
calefÄ«Ä; and all non-prepositional compounds. jaciÄ jacere jÄ«cÄ« jactus *hurl* abiciÄ abicere
abjÄ«cÄ« abjectus *throw away* fodiÄ fodere fÄ«dÄ« fossus *dig* fugiÄ fugere fÄ«gÄ« fugitÄ«rus *flee*
effugiÄ effugere effÄ«gÄ« ----- *escape* IV. VERBS IN -SCÄÆ.

1. Verbs in -scÄ from Simple Roots.

poscÄ poscere poposcÄ« ----- *demand* discÄ discere didicÄ« ----- *learn* pÄ scÄ pÄ scere pÄ vÄ«
pÄ stus *feed* pÄ scor pÄ scÄ« pÄ stus sum *graze* crÄ«scÄ crÄ«scere crÄ«vÄ« crÄ«tus *grow*
cÄ nsuÄ«scÄ cÄ nsuÄ«scere cÄ nsuÄ«vÄ« cÄ nsuÄ«tus _accustom one's self_ quiÄ«scÄ quiÄ«scere
quiÄ«vÄ« quiÄ«tÄ«rus *be still* adolÄ«scÄ adolÄ«scere adolÄ«vi *adultus* grow up *obsolÄ«scÄ*
obsolÄ«scerÄ« *obsolÄ«vÄ«* ----- *grow old* nÄ scÄ nÄ scere nÄ vÄ« ----- *become acquainted with*
ignÄ scÄ ignÄ scere ignÄ vÄ« ignÄ tÄ«rus *pardon* agnÄ scÄ agnÄ scere agnÄ vÄ« agnitus
recognize cognÄ scÄ cognÄ scere cognÄ vÄ« cognitus *get acquainted with* 2. Verbs in -scÄ formed
from other Verbs.

These usually have Inchoative or Inceptive meaning (see Â§ 155, 1). When they have the Perfect, it is the same as that of the Verbs from which they are derived.

flÄ rÄ«scÄ flÄ rÄ«scere flÄ ruÄ« _begin to (flÄ reÄ) bloom_ scÄ«scÄ scÄ«scere scÄ«vÄ« *enact*
(scÄ«o) Ä rÄ«scÄ Ä rÄ«scere Ä ruÄ« *become dry* (Ä reÄ) calÄ«scÄ calÄ«scere caluÄ« *become hot*
(caleÄ) cÄ nsenÄ«scÄ cÄ nsenÄ«scere cÄ nsenuÄ« *grow old* (seneÄ) extimÄ«scÄ extimÄ«scere
extimuÄ« *fear greatly* (timeÄ) ingemÄ«scÄ ingemÄ«scere ingemuÄ« *sigh* (gemÄ) adhaerÄ«scÄ
adhaerÄ«scere adhaesÄ« *stick* (haereÄ)

3. Verbs in –scĀ derived from Adjectives, usually with Inchoative meaning.

obdĀ«rĀ«scĀ obdĀ«rĀ«scere obdĀ«ruĀ« grow hard (dĀ«rus) Ā«vanĀ«scĀ Ā«vanĀ«scere Ā«vinuĀ« disappear (vĀ nus) percrĀ«brĀ«sco percrĀ«brĀ«scere percrĀ«bruĀ« grow fresh (crĀ«ber) mĀ tĀ«rescĀ mĀ tĀ«rĀ«scere mĀ tĀ«ruĀ« grow ripe (mĀ tĀ«rus) obmĀ«tĀ«scĀ obmĀ«tĀ«scere obmĀ«tuĀ« grow dumb (mĀ«tus)

V. DEPONENTS.

fungor fungi fĀ«nctus sum perform queror querĀ« questus sum complain loquor loquĀ« locĀ«tus sum speak sequor sequĀ« secĀ«tus sum follow fruor fruĀ« fruitĀ«rus enjoy perfruor perfruĀ« perfrĀ«ctus sum thoroughly enjoy lĀ bor lĀ bi lĀ psus sum glide amplector amplectĀ« amplexus sum embrace nĀ«tor nĀ«tĀ« nĀ«sus sum, strive nĀ«xus sum gradior gradĀ« gressus sum walk patior patĀ« passus sum suffer perpetior perpetĀ« perpersus sum endure Ā«tor Ā«tĀ« Ā«sus sum use morior morĀ« mortuus sum die adipĀ«scor adipĀ«scĀ« adeptus sum acquire comminĀ«scor comminĀ«scĀ« commentus sum invent reminĀ«scor reminĀ«scĀ« ——— remember nancĀ«scor nancĀ«scĀ« nactus acquire (nactus) sum nĀ scor nĀ scĀ« nĀ tus sum be born oblĀ«vĀ«scor oblĀ«vĀ«scĀ« oblĀ«tus sum forget pacĀ«scor pacĀ«scĀ« pactus sum covenant proficĀ«scor proficĀ«scĀ« profectus sum set out ulcĀ«scor ulcĀ«scĀ« ultus sum avenge Ā«rĀ scor Ā«rĀ scĀ« (Ā«rĀ tus, as be angry Adj.) vescor vescĀ« ——— eat Fourth Conjugation.

123. I. PERFECT ENDS IN –VĀ^a.

audiĀ audĀ«re audĀ«vĀ« audĀ«tus hear So all regular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. sepeliĀ sepelĀ«re sepelĀ«vĀ« sepultus bury II. PERFECT ENDS IN –UĀ^a.

aperiĀ aperĀ«re aperuĀ« apertus open operiĀ operĀ«re operuĀ« opertus cover saliĀ salĀ«re saluĀ« ——— leap III. PERFECT ENDS IN –SĀ^a.

saepiĀ saepĀ«re saepsĀ« saeptus hedge in sancĀ«re sĀ nxĀ« sĀ nctus ratify vinciĀ vincĀ«re vinxĀ« vinctus bind amiciĀ amicĀ«re ——— amictus envelop fulciĀ fulcĀ«re fulsĀ« fultus prop up referciĀ refercĀ«re refersĀ« refertus fill sarcĀ«re sarsĀ« sartus patch hauriĀ haurĀ«re hausĀ« haustus draw sentiĀ sentĀ«re sĀ«nsĀ« sĀ«nsus feel IV. PERFECT IN –Ā^a WITH LENGTHENING OF STEM VOWEL.

veniĀ venĀ«re vĀ«nĀ« ventum (est) come adveniĀ advenĀ«re advĀ«nĀ« adventum (est) arrive inveniĀ invenĀ«re invĀ«nĀ« inventus find V. PERFECT WITH LOSS OF REDUPLICATION.

reperiĀ reperĀ«re repperĀ« repertus find comperiĀ comperĀ«re comperĀ« compertus learn VI. USED ONLY IN THE PRESENT.

feriĀ ferĀ«re ——— ——— strike Ā«suriĀ Ā«surĀ«re ——— ——— be hungry VII. DEPONENTS.

largior largĀ«rĀ« largĀ«tus sum bestow So many others. experior experĀ«rĀ« expertus sum try opperior opperĀ«rĀ« oppertus sum await Ā rdior Ā rdĀ«rĀ« Ā rsus sum begin orior orĀ«rĀ« ortus sum arise Orior usually follows the Third Conjugation in its inflection; as oreris, _orĀ-tur_, _orĀ-mur_; orerer (Imp. Subj.); orere (Imper.). mĀ«tior mĀ«tĀ«rĀ« mĀ«nsus sum measure assentior assentĀ«rĀ« assĀ«nsus sum assent * * * * *

IRREGULAR VERBS.

124. A number of Verbs are called Irregular. The most important are sum, dĀ , edĀ , ferĀ , volĀ , nĀ lĀ , mĀ lĀ , eĀ , fĀ«Ā . The peculiarity of these Verbs is that they append the personal endings in

many forms directly to the stem, instead of employing a connecting vowel, as *fer-s* (2d Sing. of *fer-Ā*), instead of *fer-i-s*. They are but the relics of what was once in Latin a large class of Verbs.

125. The Inflection of *sum* has already been given. Its various compounds are inflected in the same way. They are—

absum abesse Ḃ *fu*Ḃ« *am absent* _Pres. Partic_. *abs*Ḃ“ns (*absentis*), *absent*. *adsum adesse adfu*Ḃ« *am present* *d*Ḃ“sum *desse d*Ḃ“*fu*Ḃ« *am lacking* *insum inesse* Ḃ«*nfu*Ḃ« *am in* *intersum interesse interfu*Ḃ« *am among* *praesum praeesse praefu*Ḃ« *am in charge of* _Pres. Partic_. *praes*Ḃ“ns (*praesentis*), *present* *obsum obesse obfu*Ḃ« *hinder* *pr*Ḃ“sum *pr*Ḃ“desse *pr*Ḃ“*fu*Ḃ« *am of advantage* *subsum subesse subfu*Ḃ« *am underneath* *supersum superesse superfu*Ḃ« *am left* NOTE.—*Pr*Ḃ“sum is compounded of *pr*Ḃ“d (earlier form of *pr*Ḃ“) and *sum*; the *d* disappears before consonants, as *pr*Ḃ“sumus; but *pr*Ḃ“destis.

126. *Possum*. In its Present System *possum* is a compound of *pot-* (for *pote*, able) and *sum*; *potu*Ḃ« is from an obsolete *pot*Ḃ“re.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. *possum, posse, potu*Ḃ«, *to be able*.

INDICATIVE MOOD. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ *possum, potes, potest; possumus, potestis, possunt.* _Imp._ *poteram; poter*Ḃ mus. _Fut._ *poter*Ḃ ; *poterimus.* _Perf._ *potu*Ḃ«; *potuimus.* _Plup._ *potueram; potuer*Ḃ mus. _Fut. P._ *potuer*Ḃ ; *potuerimus.*

SUBJUNCTIVE. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ *possim, poss*Ḃ«s, *possit; poss*Ḃ«mus, *poss*Ḃ«tis, *possint.* _Imp._ *possem; poss*Ḃ“mus. _Perf._ *potuerim; potuer*Ḃ«mus. _Plup._ *potuissem; potuiss*Ḃ“mus.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ *posse.* _Pres._ *pot*Ḃ“ns (as an adjective). _Perf._ *potuisse.*

127. *D*Ḃ , *I give*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. *d*Ḃ , *d*Ḃfre, *ded*Ḃ«, *d*Ḃftus.

Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ *d*Ḃ , *d*Ḃ s, dat; *d*Ḃfmus, *d*Ḃftis, *dant.* _Imp._ *d*Ḃfbam, etc.; *d*ḂfbḂ mus. _Fut._ *d*ḂfbḂ , etc.; *d*Ḃfbimus. _Perf._ *ded*Ḃ«; *dedimus.* _Plup._ *dederam; deder*Ḃ mus. _Fut. P._ *deder*Ḃ ; *dederimus.*

SUBJUNCTIVE _Pres._ *dem; d*Ḃ“mus. _Imp._ *d*Ḃfrem; *d*ḂfrḂ“mus. _Perf._ *dederim; deder*Ḃ«mus. _Plup._ *dedissem; dediss*Ḃ“mus.

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ *d*Ḃ ; *d*Ḃfte. _Fut._ *d*ḂftḂ ; *d*ḂftḂ te. *d*ḂftḂ . *dant*Ḃ .

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ *d*Ḃfre. *d*Ḃ ns. _Perf._ *dedisse.* _Fut._ *d*ḂftḂ«rus esse. *d*ḂftḂ«rus.

GERUND. SUPINE. *dand*Ḃ«, etc. *d*Ḃftum, *d*ḂftḂ«.

1. The passive is inflected regularly with the short vowel. Thus: *d*ḂfrḂ«, *d*Ḃftur, *d*ḂfrḂ“tur, etc.

2. The archaic and poetic Present Subjunctive forms *duim, duint, perduit, perduint*, etc., are not from the root *da-*, but from *du-*, a collateral root of similar meaning.

128. *Ed*Ḃ , *I eat*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. edĀ , Ă“sse, Ă“dĂ«, Ă“sus.

Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD. _Pres._ edĀ , edimus, Ă“s, Ă“stis, Ă“st; edunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Imp._ Ă“ssem, Ă“ssĂ“mus, Ă“ssĂ“s, Ă“ssĂ“tis, Ă“sset; Ă“ssent.

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ Ă“s; Ă“ste. _Fut._ Ă“stĀ ; Ă“stĀ te. Ă“stĀ ; eduntĀ .

INFINITIVE. _Pres._ Ă“sse.

Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD. _Pres. 3d Sing._ Ă“stur.

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Imp. 3d Sing._ Ă“ssĂ“tur.

1. Observe the long vowel of the forms in Ă“s–, which alone distinguishes them from the corresponding forms of esse, *to be*.

2. Note comedĀ , comĂ“sse, comĂ“dĂ«, comĂ“sus or comĂ“stus, *consume*.

3. The Present Subjunctive has edim, –Ă“s, –it, etc., less often edam, –Ă s, etc.

129. FerĀ , *I bear*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS. ferĀ , ferre, tulĂ«, lĀ tus.

Active Voice.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PLURAL. SINGULAR. _Pres._ ferĀ , fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.[46] _Imp._ ferĂ“bam; ferĂ“bĂ mus. _Fut._ feram; ferĂ“mus. _Perf._ tulĂ«; tulimus. _Plup._ tuleram; tulerĂ mus. _Fut. P._ tulerĀ ; tulerimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Pres._ feram; ferĂ mus. _Imp._ ferrem; ferrĂ“mus. _Perf._ tulerim; tulerĂ«mus. _Plup._ tulissem; tulissĂ“mus.

IMPERATIVE _Pres._ fer; ferte. _Fut._ fertĀ ; fertĀ te. fertĀ ; feruntĀ .

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ ferre. _Pres._ ferĂ“ns. _Perf._ tulisse. _Fut._ lĀ tĀ«rus esse. _Fut._ lĀ tĀ«rus.

GERUND. SUPINE. _Gen._ ferendĂ«. _Dat._ ferendĀ . _Acc._ ferendum. _Acc._ lĀ tum. _Abl._ ferendĀ . _Abl._ lĀ tĀ«.

Passive Voice. feror, ferrĂ«, lĀ tus sum, *to be borne*.

INDICATIVE MOOD. PLURAL. SINGULAR. _Pres._ feror, ferris, fertur; ferimur, feriminĂ«, feruntur. _Imp._ ferĂ“bar; ferĂ“bĂ mur. _Fut._ ferar; ferĂ“mur. _Perf._ lĀ tus sum; lĀ tĀ« sumus. _Plup._ lĀ tus eram; lĀ tĀ« erĂ mus. _Fut. P._ lĀ tus erĀ ; lĀ tĀ« erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Pres._ ferar; ferÄ mur. _Imp._ ferrer; ferrÄ“mur. _Perf._ lÄ tus sim; lÄ tÄ« sÄ«mus. _Plup._ lÄ tus essem; lÄ tÄ« essÄ“mus.

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ ferre; ferimimÄ«. _Fut._ fertor; ---- fertor; feruntor.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ ferrÄ«. _Perf._ lÄ tus esse. _Perf._ lÄ tus. _Fut._ lÄ tum Ä«rÄ«. _Fut._ ferendus.

So also the Compounds--

afferÄ afferre attulÄ« allÄ tus *bring toward* auferÄ auferre abstulÄ« ablÄ tus *take away* cÄ nferÄ cÄ nferre contulÄ« collÄ tus *compare* differÄ differre distulÄ« dÄ«lÄ tus *put off* efferÄ efferre extulÄ« Ä“lÄ tus *carry out* Ä«nferÄ Ä«nferre intulÄ« illÄ tus *bring against* offerÄ offerre obtulÄ« oblÄ tus *present* referÄ referre rettulÄ« relÄ tus *bring back* NOTE.—The forms sustulÄ« and sublÄ tus belong to tollÄ .

130. volÄ , nÄ lÄ , mÄ lÄ .

PRINCIPAL PARTS. volÄ , velle, voluÄ«, _to wish._ nÄ lÄ , nÄ lle, nÄ luÄ«, _to be unwilling._ mÄ lÄ , mÄ lle, mÄ luÄ«, _to prefer._

INDICATIVE MOOD. _Pres._ volÄ , nÄ lÄ , mÄ lÄ , vÄ«s, nÄ n vÄ«s, mÄ vÄ«s, vult; nÄ n vult; mÄ vult; volumus, nÄ lumus, mÄ lumus, vultis, nÄ n vultis, mÄ vultis, volunt. nÄ lunt. mÄ lunt. _Imp._ volÄ“bam. nÄ lÄ“bam. mÄ lÄ“bam. _Fut._ volam. nÄ lam. mÄ lam. _Perf._ voluÄ«, nÄ luÄ«. mÄ luÄ«. _Plup._ volueram. nÄ lueram. mÄ lueram. _Fut. P._ voluerÄ . nÄ luerÄ . mÄ luerÄ .

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Pres._ velim, -Ä«s, -it, nÄ lim. mÄ lÄ«m. etc. _Inf._ vellem, -Ä“s, -et, nÄ llem. mÄ llem. etc. _Perf._ voluerim. nÄ luerim. mÄ luerim. _Plup._ voluissem. nÄ luissem. mÄ luissem.

IMPERATIVE.

Pres. nÄ lÄ«; nÄ lÄ«te. _Fut._ nÄ lÄ«tÄ ; nÄ lÄ«tÄ te. nÄ lÄ«tÄ ; nÄ luntÄ .

INFINITIVE. _Pres._ velle. nÄ lle. mÄ lle. _Perf._ voluisse. nÄ luisse. mÄ luisse

PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ volÄ“ns nÄ lÄ“ns. ----

131. fÄ«Ä .

PRINCIPAL PARTS. fÄ«Ä , fÄ«erÄ«, factus sum, *to become, be made*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR, PLURAL. _Pres._ fÄ«Ä , fÄ«s, fit; fÄ«mus, fÄ«tis, fÄ«unt. _Inf._ fÄ«Ä“bam; fÄ«Ä“bÄ mus. _Fut._ fÄ«am; fÄ«Ä“mus. _Perf._ factus sum; factÄ« sumus. _Plup._ factus eram; factÄ« erÄ mus. _Fut. P._ factus erÄ ; factÄ« erimus.

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Pres._ fÄ«am; fÄ«Ä mus. _Imp._ fierem; fierÄ“mus. _Perf._ factus sim; factÄ« sÄ«mus. _Plup._ factus essem; factÄ« essÄ“mus.

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ fÄ«; fÄ«te. PARTICIPLE. INFINITIVE. _Pres._ fierÄ«. _Perf._ factus esse. _Perf._ factus. _Fut._ factum Ä«rÄ«. _Ger._ faciendus.

NOTE.—A few isolated forms of compounds of *fĀ«Ā* occur; as, *dĀ“fit _lacks_*; *Ā«nfit, begins*.

132. *EĀ* .

PRINCIPAL PARTS. *eĀ* , *Ā«re*, *Ā«vĀ«*, *itum (est)*, *to go*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ *eĀ* , *Ā«s*, *it*; *Ā«mus*, *Ā«tis*, *eunt*. _Imp._ *Ā«bam*; *Ā«bĀ mus*. _Fut._ *Ā«bĀ* ; *Ā«bimus*. _Perf._ *Ā«vĀ«* (*iĀ«*); *Ā«vimus* (*iimus*). _Plup._ *Ā«veram* (*ieram*); *Ā«verĀ mus* (*ierĀ mus*) _Fut. P._ *Ā«verĀ* (*ierĀ*); *Ā«verimus* (*ierimus*).

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ *eam*; *eĀ mus*. _Inf._ *Ā«rem*; *Ā«rĀ“mus*. _Perf._ *Ā«verim* (*ierim*); *Ā«verĀ«mus* (*ierĀ«mus*). _Pluf._ *Ā«vissem* (*iissem*, *Ā«ssem*); *Ā«vissĀ“mus* (*iissĀ“mus*, *Ā«ssĀ“mus*).

IMPERATIVE. _Pres._ *Ā«*; *Ā«te*. _Fut._ *Ā«tĀ* ; *Ā«tĀ te*, *Ā«tĀ* ; *euntĀ* .

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE. _Pres._ *Ā«re*. _Pres._ *iĀ“ns*. _Perf._ *Ā«visse* (*Ā«sse*). (_Gen._ *euntis*.) _Fut._ *itĀ«rus esse*. _Fut._ *itĀ«rus*. *Gerundive*, *eundum*.

GERUND. SUPINE. *eundĀ«*, etc. *itum*, *itĀ«*.

1. Transitive compounds of *eĀ* admit the full Passive inflection; as *adeor*, *adĀ«ris*, *adĀ«tur*, etc.

* * * * *

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs lack certain forms. The following are the most important:—

133. USED MAINLY IN THE PERFECT SYSTEM.

CoepĀ«, *MeminĀ«*, *Ā«EdĀ«*, *_I have I remember. I hate. begun._*

INDICATIVE MOOD. _Perf._ *coepĀ«*. *meminĀ«*. *Ā« dĀ«*. _Plup._ *coeperam*. *memineram*. *Ā« deram*. _Fut. P._ *coeperĀ* . *meminerĀ* . *Ā« derĀ* .

SUBJUNCTIVE. _Perf._ *coeperim*. *meminerim*. *Ā« derim*. _Pluf._ *coepissem*. *meminisse*. *Ā« disse*.

IMPERATIVE. _Sing._ *mementĀ* ; _Plur._ *mementĀ te*.

INFINITIVE. _Perf._ *coepisse*. *meminisse*. *Ā« disse*. _Fut._ *coeptĀ«rus esse*. *Ā« sĀ«rus esse*.

PARTICIPLE. _Perf._ *coeptus*, *begun*. *Ā« sus*. _Fut._ *coeptĀ«rus*. *Ā« sĀ«rus*.

1. When *coepĀ«* governs a Passive Infinitive it usually takes the form *coeptus est*; as, *amĀ rĀ« coeptus est*, *he began to be loved*.

2. Note that *meminĀ«* and *Ā« dĀ«*, though Perfect in form, are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have the force of the Imperfect and Future; as, *memineram*, *_I remembered_*; *Ā« derĀ* , *I shall*

hate.

134. Inquam, *I say* (inserted between words of a direct quotation)

INDICATIVE MOOD. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ inquam, ----- inquis, ----- inquit; inquiunt. _Fut._
----- inquit's, ----- inquiet. ----- _Perf. 3d Sing._ inquit.

135. Ajā , *I say.*

INDICATIVE MOOD. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ ajā , ----- aās, ----- ait; ajunt. _Imp._ ajā“bam,
ajā“bā mus, ajā“bā s, ajā“bā tis, ajā“bat; ajā“bant. _Perf. 3d Sing._ aāt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. 3d Sing. ajat.

NOTE.—For aāsne, *do you mean?* aān is common.

136. Fā rā« , *to speak.*

This is inflected regularly in the perfect tenses. In the Present System it has—

INDICATIVE MOOD. SINGULAR. PLURAL. _Pres._ ----- fā tur. ----- _Fut._
fā bor, ----- fā bitur. ----- _Impv._ fā re. _Inf._ fā rā«. _Pres. fantis, fantā«, etc. Partic._
Gerund, fandā«; _D. and Abl._, fandā . _G._, *Gerundive*, fandus.

NOTE.—Forms of fā rā« are rare. More frequent are its compounds; as,— affā tur, *he addresses*;
praefā mur, *we say in advance.*

137. OTHER DEFECTIVE FORMS.

1. Queā , quā«re, quā«vā«, *to be able*, and nequeā , nequā«re, nequā«vā«, *to be unable*, are inflected like eā , but occur chiefly in the Present Tense, and there only in special forms.

2. Quaesā , *I entreat*; quaesumus, *we entreat*.

3. Cedo (2d sing. Impv.), cete (2d plu.); *give me, tell me*.

4. Salvā“, salvā“te, *hail*. Also Infinitive, salvā“re.

5. Havā“ (avā“), havā“te, *hail*. Also Infinitive, havā“re.

* * * * *

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

138. Impersonal Verbs correspond to the English, *it snows, it seems, etc.* They have no personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun; as, mā“ pudet hā c fā“cisse, lit. *it shames me to have done this*; hā c decet, *this is fitting*. Here belong—

I. Verbs denoting operations of the weather; as,—

fulget fulsit *it lightens* tonat tonuit *it thunders* grandinat ——— *it hails* ningit ninxit *it snows* pluit pluit *it rains*
II. Special Verbs.

paenitet paenitÄ“re paenituit *it repents* piget pigÄ“re piguit *it grieves* pudet pudÄ“re puduit *it causes shame*
taedet taedÄ“re taedit *it disgusts* miseret miserÄ“re miseruit *it causes pity* libet libÄ“re libuit *it pleases* licet
licÄ“re licuit *it is lawful* oportet oportÄ“re oportuit *it is fitting* decet decÄ“re decuit *it is becoming* dÄ“decet
dÄ“decÄ“re dÄ“decuit *it is unbecoming* rÄ“fert rÄ“ferre rÄ“tulit *it concerns* III. Verbs Impersonal only in
Special Senses.

cÄ nstat cÄ nstÄ re cÄ nstitit *it is evident* praestat praestÄ re praestitit *it is better* juvat juvÄ re jÄ«vit *it*
delights appÄ ret appÄ rÄ“re appÄ ruit *it appears* placet placÄ“re placuit *it pleases* (placitum est) accÄ“dit
accÄ“dere accessit *it is added* accidit accidere accidit *it happens* contingit contingere contigit *it happens*
Ä“venit Ä“venÄ«re Ä“vÄ“nit *it turns out* interest interesse interfuit *it concerns* IV. The Passive of
Intransitive Verbs; as,—

Ä«tur lit. *it is gone* _i.e. some one goes_ curritur lit. *it is run* _i.e. some one runs_ ventum est lit. *it has been*
come _i.e. some one has come_ veniendum est lit. *it must be come* _i.e. somebody must come_ pugnÄ rÄ«
potest lit. *it can be fought* _i.e. somebody can fight_

* * * * *

PART III.

* * * * *

PARTICLES.

* * * * *

139. Particles are the four Parts of Speech that do not admit of inflection; viz. Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections.

ADVERBS.

140. Adverbs denote manner, place, time, or degree Most adverbs are in origin case-forms which have become stereotyped by usage. The common adverbial terminations have already been given above (Ä§ 76). The following TABLE OF CORRELATIVES is important:—

RELATIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE. INDEFINITE. INTERROGATIVE. ubi, _where; where_? hÄ«c, *here*. alicubÄ«, Ä«squam, ibi, illÄ«c, istÄ«c, Ä«spiam, *somewhere*. there. quÄ , _whither; hÄ«c, *hither*. aliquÄ , _to some whither_? eÄ , istÄ«c, illÄ«c, place_. *thither*. unde, _whence; hinc, *hence*. alicunde, _from whence_? inde, istinc, illinc, somewhere_. *thence*. quÄ , _where; where_? hÄ c, *by this way*. aliquÄ , *by some way*. eÄ , istÄ c, illÄ c, *by that way*. cum, *when*. nunc, *now*. aliquandÄ , umquam, quandÄ , _when_? tum, tunc, *then*. *sometime, ever*. quotiÄ“ns, _as often totiÄ“ns, *so often*. aliquotiÄ“ns, _some as; _how often_? number of times_. quam, _as much as_; tam, *so much*. aliquantum, _how much_? *somewhat*.

PREPOSITIONS.

141. Prepositions show relations of words. The following Prepositions govern the Accusative:—

ad, *to*. contrā , *against*. post, *after*. adversus, ergā , *toward*. praeter, *past*. against. extrā , *outside*. prope, *near*. adversum, *toward*. infrā , *below*. propter, *on account against*. inter, *between*. of. ante, *before*. intrā , *within*. secundum, *after*. apud, *with*. juxtā , *near*. subter, *beneath*. near. ob, *on account super*, *over*. circā , *around*. of. suprā , *above*. circiter, *about*. penes, *in the hands* trā ns, *across*. circum, *around*. of. ultrā , *beyond*. cis, *this side* per, *through*. versus, *toward*. of. pō ne, *behind*. citrā , *this side of*.

1. A^asque is often prefixed to ad, in the sense of *even*; as,—

A^asque ad urbem, *even to the city*.

2. Versus always follows its case; as,—

Rō mam versus, *toward Rome*.

It may be combined with a preceding Preposition; as,—

ad urbem versus, *toward the city*.

3. Like prope, the Comparatives propior, propius, and the Superlatives proximus, proximā , sometimes govern the Accusative; as,—

Ubiā « proximā « Rhā « num incolunt, *the Ubii dwell next to the Rhine*; propius castra hostium, *nearer the camp of the enemy*.

142. The following Prepositions govern the Ablative:—

Ā , ab, abs, *from*, cum, *with*. prā , *in front of*, by. dā , *from*, *for*. absque, *without*. concerning. sine, *without*. cā ram, *in the* , ex, *from out* tenus, *up to*. presence of. of. prae, *before*.

1. Ā , ab, abs. Before vowels or h, ab must be used; before consonants we find sometimes Ā , sometimes ab (the latter usually not before the labials b, p, f, v, m; nor before c, g, q, or t); abs occurs only before tā , and Ā is admissible even there.

2. Ā , ex. Before vowels or h, ex must be used; before consonants we find sometimes Ā , sometimes ex.

3. Tenus regularly follows its case, as, pectoribus tenus, *up to the breast*. It sometimes governs the Genitive, as, labrā rum tenus, *as far as the lips*.

4. Cum is appended to the Pronouns of the First and Second Persons, and to the Reflexive Pronoun; usually also to the Relative and Interrogative. Thus:—

mā «cum nā bā «scum quā cum *or* cum quā tā «cum vā bā «scum quā cum *or* cum quā sā «cum quibuscum *or* cum quibus On quā «cum, see § 89, Footnote 27.

143. Two Prepositions, in, *in*, into, and sub, *under*, govern both the Accusative and the Ablative. With the Accusative they denote motion; with the Ablative, rest; as,—

in urbem, *into the city*; in urbe, *in the city*.

1. Subter and super are also occasionally construed with the Ablative.

144. RELATION OF ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

1. Prepositions were originally Adverbs, and many of them still retain their adverbial meaning; as, post, _afterwards_; ante, _previously_; contra, *on the other hand*, etc.

2. Conversely several words, usually adverbs, are occasionally employed as prepositions; as, clam, procul, simul, palam, with the Accusative. procul, simul, palam, with the Ablative.

3. Anastrophe. A Preposition sometimes follows its case. This is called Anastrophe; as, quos inter erat, *those among whom he was*.

Anastrophe occurs chiefly with dissyllabic prepositions.

CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS.

145. 1. Conjunctions are used to connect ideas. For Coordinate Conjunctions, see § 341 ff. Subordinate Conjunctions are treated in connection with Subordinate Clauses.

2. Interjections express emotion. Thus:—

1. Surprise; as, en, ecce, e. 2. Joy; as, iueo. 3. Sorrow and Pain; as, heu, vae, prohe. 4. Calling; as, heus, eho.

* * * * *

PART IV.

* * * * *

WORD-FORMATION.

* * * * *

I. DERIVATIVES.

146. Derivatives are formed by appending certain terminations called Suffixes to stems of verbs, nouns, or adjectives.

A. NOUNS.

1. Nouns derived from Verbs.

147. 1. The suffix -tor (-sor), Fem. -trix, denotes _the agent_; as, victor, victrix, _victor_ ; defensor, *defender*.

NOTE.—The suffix -tor is occasionally appended to noun stems; as,---

gladiator, *gladiator* (from gladius).

2. The suffix –or (originally –ō s) denotes *an activity or a condition*; as,--

amor, *love*; timor, *fear*; dolor, *pain*.

3. The suffixes –tiō (–siō), Gen. –ō nis, and –tus (–sus), Gen. –ō s, denote *an action as in process*; as,--

vā“nā tiō, *hunting*; obsessiō, *blockade*; gemitus, *sighing*; cursus, *running*.

NOTE.--Rarer endings with the same force are:--

a) –tō«ra, –sō«ra; as,--

sepultō«ra, *burial*; mē“nsō«ra, *measuring*.

b) –ium; as,--

gaudium, *rejoicing*.

c) –dō«dō ; as,--

cupō«dō , *desire*.

4. The suffixes –men, –mentum, –crum, –trum, –bulum, –culum, denote *the means or place* of an action; as,--

lō«men (lō«c–s–men), *light*; vocō bulum, *word*; ō rnō mentum, *ornament*; documentum, *proof*; sepulcrum, *grave*; arō trum, *plough*; vehiculum, *carriage*.

2. Nouns derived from Nouns.

148. 1. Diminutives end in--

–ulus, (–ula, –ulum) –olus, (–ola, –olum), after a vowel –culus, (–cula, –culum) –ellus, (–ella, –ellum)
–illus, (–illa, –illum)

as,--

nō«dulus, *little nest* (nō«dus); virgula, *wand* (virga); oppidulum, *little town* (oppidum); fō«liolus, *little son* (fō«lius); opusculum, *little work* (opus); tabella, *tablet* (tabula); lapillus, *pebble* (lapis).

NOTE 1.--It will be observed that in gender the Diminutives follow the gender of the words from which they are derived.

NOTE 2.--The endings –ellus, –illus contain the primitive form of the diminutive suffix, viz., –lo-. Thus:--

agellus, *field*, for ager–lus; lapillus, *pebble*, for lapis–lus.

2. The suffix –ium appended to nouns denoting persons designates either *a collection* of such persons or *their function*; as,--

collō«gium, *a corporation, body of colleagues* (collō«ga); sacerdotium, *priestly function* (sacerdotō s).

3. The suffixes *-ārium*, *-ā'tum*, *-ā'le* designate a place where objects *are kept* or *are found in abundance*; as,—

columbārium, *_dove-cote_* (*columba*); *olivā'tum*, *_olive-orchard_* (*oliva*); *ovā'le*, *_sheep-fold_* (*ovis*).

4. The suffix *-ā'tus* denotes *official position* or *_honor_*; as,—

consulā'tus, *consulship* (*consul*).

5. The suffix *-ā'na* appended to nouns denoting persons designates *a vocation* or *_the place where it is carried on_*; as,—

doctrā'na, *teaching* (*doctor*, *_teacher_*); *medicā'na*, *the art of healing* (*medicus*, *_physician_*); *sā'trā'na*, *_cobblers' shop_* (*sā'tor*, *_cobbler_*).

6. Patronymics are Greek proper names denoting *son of ...*, *daughter of ...*. They have the following suffixes:—

a) Masculines: *-idās*, *-adās*, *-ādās*; as, *Priamidās*, *_son of Priam_*; *Aeneadās*, *_son of Aeneas_*; *Pēlādās*, *son of Peleus*.

b) Feminines: *-ās*, *-is*, *-ias*; as, *Nērās*, *_daughter of Nereus_*; *Atlantis*, *_daughter of Atlas_*; *Thaumantias*, *daughter of Thaumias*.

3. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

149. The suffixes *-tās* (*-itās*), *-tādā* (*-itādā*), *-ia*, *-itia* are used for the formation of abstract nouns *_denoting qualities_*; as,—

bonitās, *_goodness_*; *celeritās*, *_swiftness_*; *magnitādā*, *_greatness_*; *audā'cia*, *_boldness_*; *amā'citia*, *friendship*.

* * * * *

B. ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives derived from Verbs.

150. 1. The suffixes *-bundus* and *-cundus* give nearly the force of a present participle; as,—
tremebundus, *_trembling_*; *juvā'cundus* (*juvā*), *pleasing*.

2. The suffixes *-ā'x* and *-ulus* denote *an inclination* or *tendency*, mostly a faulty one; as,—

loquā'x, *_loquacious_*; *crā'dulus*, *credulous*.

3. The suffix *-idus* denotes *_a state_*; as,—

calidus, *_hot_*; *timidus*, *_timid_*; *cupidus*, *eager*.

4. The suffixes *-ilis* and *-bilis* denote *capacity* or *ability*, usually in a passive sense; as,—

fragilis, *fragile* (i.e. capable of being broken); docilis, *docile*.

2. Adjectives derived from Nouns.

a) From Common Nouns.

151. 1. The suffixes *-eus* and *-inus* are appended to names of substances or materials; as,--

aureus, _of gold_; *ferreus*, _of iron_; *fāginus*, *of beech*.

2. The suffixes *-ius*, *-icus*, *-ālis*, *-ālis*, *-āris*, *-ārius*, *-nus*, *-ānus*, *-ānus*, *-āvus*, *-ānsis* signify *belonging to*, *connected with*; as,--

rātorius, _oratorical_; *legiōnārius*, _legionary_; *bellicus*, _pertaining to war_; *paternus*, _paternal_; *cāvilis*, _civil_; *urbānus*, _of the city_; *rāgalis*, _regal_; *marānus*, _marine_; *cānsularis*, _consular_; *aestāvus*, _pertaining to summer_; *circānsis*, *belonging to the circus*.

3. The suffixes *-āsus* and *-lentus* denote *fullness*; as,--

perāculāsus, *full of danger*, *glāriāsus*, _glorious_; *periculāsus*, _dangerous_; *opulentus*, *wealthy*.

4. The suffix *-tus* has the force of *provided with*; as,--

barbātus, _bearded_; *stellātus*, *set with stars*.

b) From Proper Names.

152. 1. Names of *persons* take the suffixes: *-ānus*, *-iānus*, *-ānus*; as,--

Catāniānus, _belonging to Plautānus_, *Catāniānus*, _belonging to Cato_; *Plautus*.

2. Names of *nations* take the suffixes *-icus*, *-ius*; as,--

Germānicus, _German_; *Thraciānus*, *Thracian*.

3. Names of *places* take the suffixes *-ānus*, *-ānus*, *-ānsis*, *-aeus*, *-ius*; as,--

Rāmānus, _Roman_; *Athēniānsis*, _Athenian_; *Amerānus*, _of America_; *Smyrnaeus*, _of Smyrna_; *Corinthius*, *Corinthian*.

NOTE.-- *-ānus* and *-ānsis*, appended to names of countries, designate something *stationed in the country* or *connected with it*, but not *indigenous*; as,--

bellum Africānum, _a war (of Romans with Romans) in Africa_. *bellum Hispāniānse*, *a war carried on in Spain*. *legiōnes Gallicānae*, _(Roman) legions stationed in Gaul_.

3. Adjectives derived from Adjectives.

153. Diminutives in *-ulus* sometimes occur; as,--

parvulus, _little_; *misellus* (passer), *poor little* (sparrow); *pauperculus*, *needy*.

4. Adjectives derived from Adverbs.

154. These end in *-ernus*, *-ternus*, *-tÄ«nus*, *-tÄ-nus*; as,--

hodiernus, *_of to-day_* (*hodiÄ«*); *hesternus*, *of yesterday* (*herÄ«*); *intestÄ«nus*, *internal* (*intus*); *diÄ«tinus*, *_long-lasting_* (*diÄ«*).

* * * * *

C. VERBS.

1. Verbs derived from Verbs.

155. 1. INCEPTIVES OR INCHOATIVES. These end in *-scÄ«*, and are formed from Present Stems. They denote *_the beginning of an action_*; as,--

labÄ« scÄ«, *begin to totter* (from *labÄ«*); *horrÄ«scÄ«*, *grow rough* (from *horreÄ«*); *tremÄ«scÄ«*, *begin to tremble* (from *tremÄ«*); *obdormÄ«scÄ«*, *fall asleep* (from *dormiÄ«*).

2. FREQUENTATIVES OR INTENSIVES. These denote *a repeated or energetic action*. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in *-tÄ«* or *-sÄ«*. Those derived from verbs of the First Conjugation end in *-itÄ«* (not *-Ä«tÄ«*, as we should expect). Examples of Frequentatives are--

jactÄ«, *toss about, brandish* (from *jaciÄ«*, *_hurl_*); *cursÄ«*, *run hither and thither* (from *currÄ«*, *_run_*); *volitÄ«*, *flit about* (from *volÄ«*, *_fly_*).

a. Some double Frequentatives occur; as,--

cantitÄ«, *sing over and over* (*cantÄ«*); *cursitÄ«*, *keep running about* (*cursÄ«*); *ventitÄ«*, *keep coming*.

b. *agitÄ«*, *set in motion*, is formed from the Present Stem.

3. DESIDERATIVES. These denote *a desire to do something*. They are formed from the Participial Stem, and end in *-uriÄ«*; as,--

Ä«suriÄ«, *desire to eat, am hungry* (*edÄ«*); *parturiÄ«*, *want to bring forth, _am in* (*pariÄ«*). *labor_*

2. Verbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives (Denominatives).

156. Denominatives of the First Conjugation are mostly transitive; those of the Second exclusively intransitive. Those of the Third and Fourth Conjugations are partly transitive, partly intransitive. Examples are--

a) From Nouns:--

fraudÄ«, *defraud* (*fraus*); *vestiÄ«*, *clothe* (*vestis*); *flÄ«reÄ«*, *bloom* (*flÄ«s*).

b) From Adjectives:--

lÄ«berÄ«, *free* (*lÄ«ber*); *saeviÄ«*, *be fierce* (*saevus*).

* * * * *

D. ADVERBS.

157. 1. Adverbs derived from verbs are formed from the Participial Stem by means of the suffix *-im*; as,--
certim, *emulously* (*certim*); *cursim*, *in haste* (*currim*); *statim*, *immediately* (*stam*).

2. Adverbs derived from nouns and adjectives are formed:--

a) With the suffixes *-tim* (*-sim*), *-im*; as,--

gradim, *_step by step_*;

paulim, *_gradually_*;

virim, *man by man*.

b) With the suffix *-tus*; as,--

antiquitus, *_of old_*;

radicitus, *from the roots*.

c) With the suffix *-ter*; as,--

breviter, *briefly*.

* * * * *

II. COMPOUNDS.

158. 1. Compounds are formed by the union of simple words. The second member usually contains the *essential meaning* of the compound; the first member expresses *some modification* of this.

2. Vowel changes often occur in the process of composition. Thus:--

a. In the second member of compounds. (See § 7, 1.)

b. The final vowel of the stem of the first member of the compound often appears as *-i* where we should expect *-a* or *-f*; sometimes it is dropped altogether, and in case of consonant stems *-i* is often inserted; as,--

signifer, *_standard-bearer_*;

tubicen, *_trumpeter_*;

magnanimus, *_high-minded_*;

matricida, *matricide*.

159. EXAMPLES OF COMPOUNDS.

1. Nouns:--

PART IV.

a) Preposition + Noun; as,--

dÄ“–decus, _disgrace_;

pro–avus, _great–grandfather_.

b) Noun + Verb Stem; as,--

agri–cola, _farmer_;

frÄ tri–cÄ«da, *fratricide*.

2. Adjectives:--

a) Preposition + Adjective (or Noun); as,--

per–magnus, _very great_;

sub–obscÄ«rus, _rather obscure_;

Ä –mÄ“ns, *frantic*.

b) Adjective + Noun; as,--

magn–animus, _great–hearted_;

celeri–pÄ“s, _swift–footed_.

c) Noun + Verb Stem; as,--

parti–ceps, _sharing_;

morti–fer, _death–dealing_.

3. Verbs:--

The second member is always a verb. The first may be--

a) A Noun; as,--

aedi–ficÄ , *build*.

b) An Adjective; as,--

ampli–ficÄ , *enlarge*.

c) An Adverb; as,--

male–dÄ«cÄ , *rail at*.

d) Another Verb; as,--

PART V.

cale-faciÅ , *make warm*.

e) A Preposition; as,--

ab-jungÅ , *_detach_*;

re-ferÅ , *_bring back_*;

dis-cernÅ , *_distinguish_*;

ex-spectÅ , *await*.

NOTE.--Here belong the so-called INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS:

ambi- (amb-), *_around_*;

dis- (dir-, di-), *apart, _asunder_*;

por-, *_forward_*;

red- (re-), *_back_*;

sÄ“d- (sÄ“-), *_apart from_*;

vÄ“-, *without*.

4. Adverbs:--

These are of various types; as,--

anteÄ , *_before_*;

Ä«lÄ«cÅ (in locÅ), *_on the spot_*;

imprÄ«mÄ«s, *_especially_*;

obviam, *in the way*.

* * * * *

PART V.

* * * * *

SYNTAX.

* * * * *

160. Syntax treats of the use of words in sentences

CHAPTER I.

—_Sentences._

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

161. Sentences may be classified as follows:—

1. DECLARATIVE, which state something; as,—

puer scribit, *the boy is writing.*

2. INTERROGATIVE, Which ask a question; as,—

quid puer scribit, *what is the boy writing?*

3. EXCLAMATORY, which are in the form of an exclamation; as,—

quot libros scribit, *how many books he writes!*

4. IMPERATIVE, which express a command or an admonition; as,—

scribe, *write!*

FORM OF INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

162. Questions may be either Word-Questions or Sentence-Questions.

1. Word-Questions. These are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs, such as—quis, quare, quare, quare, quare, quare, etc. Thus:—

quis venit, *who comes?* quam diu manebit, *how long will he stay?*

2. Sentence-Questions. These are introduced—

a) By *ne* implying the answer 'yes'; as,—

ne videtis, *do you not see?*

b) By *num* implying the answer 'no'; as,—

num exspectas, *do you expect?* (i.e. *you don't expect, do you?*)

c) by the enclitic *-ne*, appended to the emphatic word (which usually stands first), and simply asking for information; as,—

videtisne, *do you see?*

A question introduced by *-ne* may receive a special implication from the context; as,—

sensistisne, *did you not perceive?*

d) Sometimes by no special word, particularly in expressions of *surprise* or *indignation*; as,—

tÅ« in jÅ«dicum cÅ«nspectum venÅ«re audÅ«s, *do you dare to come into the presence of the judges?*

3. Rhetorical Questions. These are questions merely in form, being employed to express an emphatic assertion; as, *quis dubitat, who doubts?* (= no one doubts).

4. Double Questions. Double Questions are introduced by the following particles:—

utrum ... an;

—ne ... an;

---- ... an.

If the second member is negative, annÅ«n (less often necne) is used. Examples:—

utrum honestum est an turpe, } honestumne est an turpe, } *is it honorable or base?*
 suntne dÅ« annÅ«n, } *are there gods or not?*

a. An was not originally confined to double questions, but introduced single questions, having the force of —ne, nÅ«ne, or num. Traces of this use survive in classical Latin; as,—

Ä«rÅ«bus gerendÅ«s abstrahit senectÅ«s. Quibus? An eÅ«s quae juventÅ«te geruntur et vÅ«rÅ«bus? *Old age (it is alleged) withdraws men from active pursuits. From what pursuits? Is it not merely from those which are carried on by the strength of youth?*

5. Answers.

a. The answer YES is expressed by ita, etiam, vÅ«rÅ«, sÅ«nÅ«, or by repetition of the verb; as,—

'vÅ«sne locum mÅ«tÅ«mus?' 'sÅ«nÅ«.' *'Shall we change the place?'* *'Certainly.'*

'estÅ«sne vÅ«s lÅ«gatÅ«?' 'sumus.' *'Are you envoys?'* *'Yes.'*

b. The answer NO is expressed by nÅ«n, minimÅ«, minimÅ« vÅ«rÅ«, or by repeating the verb with a negative; as,—

'jam ea praeteriit?' 'nÅ«n.' *'Has it passed?'* *'No.'*

'estne frÅ«ter intus?' 'nÅ«n est.' *'Is your brother within?'* *'No.'*

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.

163. The two essential parts of a sentence are the SUBJECT and PREDICATE.

The SUBJECT is that *concerning which something is said, asked, etc.* The PREDICATE is that *which is said, asked, etc., concerning the SUBJECT.*

SIMPLE AND COMPOUND SENTENCES.

164. Sentences containing but one Subject and one Predicate are called SIMPLE SENTENCES, those

containing more are called COMPOUND SENTENCES. Thus *puer librās legit*, *the boy reads books*, is a Simple Sentence; but *puer librās legit et epistulās scrībit*, *the boy reads books and writes letters*, is a Compound Sentence. The different members of a Compound Sentence are called Clauses.

165. COÖRDINATE AND SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. Clauses which stand upon an equality are called COÖRDINATE; a Clause dependent on another is called SUBORDINATE. Thus in *puer librās legit et epistulās scrībit* the two clauses are Coördinate; but in *puer librās legit quās pater scrībit*, *the boy reads the books which his father writes*, the second clause is Subordinate to the first.

* * * * *

CHAPTER II.

—_Syntax of Nouns._

SUBJECT.

166. The Subject of a Finite Verb (i.e. any form of the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative) is in the Nominative Case.

1. The Subject may be—

a) A Noun or Pronoun; as,—

puer scrībit, *the boy writes*;

hic scrībit, *this man writes*.

b) An Infinitive; as,—

decūrum est prō patriā morī, *to die for one's country is a noble thing*.

c) A Clause; as,—

opportūne accidit quod videretis, *it happened opportunely that you saw*.

2. A Personal Pronoun as Subject is usually implied in the Verb and is not separately expressed; as,—

scrībō, *I write*; *videt*, *he sees*.

a. But for the purpose of emphasis or contrast the Pronoun is expressed; as,—

ego scrībō et tū legis, *I write, and you read*.

3. The verb is sometimes omitted when it can be easily supplied from the context, especially the auxiliary *sum*; as,—

recte ille (sc. facit), *he does rightly*; *consul profectus (sc. est)*, *the consul set out*.

PREDICATE NOUNS.

167. A PREDICATE NOUN is one connected with the Subject by some form of the verb *Sum* or a similar verb.

168. A Predicate Noun agrees with its Subject in Case; [47] as,—

Cicerus orator fuit, _Cicero was an orator_;

Numa cretus est, *Numa was elected king*.

1. when possible, the Predicate Noun usually agrees with its Subject in Gender also; as,—

philosophia est vitae magistra, *philosophy is the guide of life*.

2. Besides *sum*, the verbs most frequently accompanied by a Predicate Noun are—

a) *fi*, *esse*, *existere*; *manere*; *videor*; as,—

Croesus non semper mansit rex, *Croesus did not always remain king*.

b) Passive verbs of *making*, *calling*, *regarding*, etc.; as, *creor*, *appellor*, *habeor*; as,—

Romulus rex appellatus est, _Romulus was called king_;

habitus est deus, *he was regarded as a god*.

APPOSITIVES.

169. 1. An Appositive is a Noun explaining or defining another Noun denoting the same person or thing; as,—

Cicerus consul, _Cicero, the Consul_;

urbs Roma, *the city Rome*.

2. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in Case; as,—

opera Ciceronis, _the works of Cicero, the orator_;

apud Herodotum, *patrem historiae*, _in the works of Herodotus, the father of history_.

3. When possible, the Appositive agrees with its Subject in Gender also; as,—

assentatorum, *adjutorum vitiorum*, _flattery, the promoter of evils_.

4. A Locative may take in Apposition the Ablative of *urbs* or *oppidum*, with or without a preposition; as,—

Corinthae, *Achaeae urbe*, or *in Achaeae urbe*, _at Corinth, a city of Greece_.

5. PARTITIVE APPPOSITION. A Noun denoting a whole is frequently followed by an Appositive denoting a part; as,—

milites, fortissimus quisque, hostibus resistunt, _the soldiers, all the bravest of them, resisted the

enemy_.

* * * * *

THE CASES.

THE NOMINATIVE.

170. The Nominative is confined to its use as Subject, Appositive, or Predicate Noun, as already explained. See §§ 166–169.

* * * * *

THE VOCATIVE.

171. The Vocative is the Case of direct address; as,—

cr̄dite mihi, j̄dic̄s, _believe me, judges_.

1. By a species of attraction, the Nominative is occasionally used for the Vocative, especially in poetry and formal prose; as, aud̄ t̄, populus Alb̄ nus, _hear ye, Alban people!_

2. Similarly the Appositive of a Vocative may, in poetry, stand in the Nominative; as, n̄ te, mea magna potentia s̄ lus, _O son, alone the source of my great power_.

* * * * *

THE ACCUSATIVE.

172. The Accusative is the Case of the Direct Object.

173. The Direct Object may express either of the two following relations:—

A. The PERSON OR THING AFFECTED by the action; as,—

c̄ nsulem interf̄cit, _he slew the consul_;

leḡ librum, *I read the book.*

B. The RESULT PRODUCED by the action; as,—

librum scr̄ps̄, *I wrote a book* (i.e. produced one);

templum struit, *he constructs a temple.*

174. Verbs that admit a Direct Object of either of these two types are TRANSITIVE VERBS.

a. Verbs that regularly take a Direct Object are sometimes used without it. They are then said to be employed _absolutely_; as,—

r̄mor est meum gn̄ tum am̄ re, *it is rumored that my son is in love.*

Accusative of the Person or Thing Affected.

175. 1. This is the most frequent use of the Accusative; as in—

parentÄ“s amÄ mus, _we love our parents_;

mare aspicit, *he gazes at the sea.*

2. The following classes of Verbs taking an Accusative of this kind are worthy of note:—

a) Many Intransitive Verbs, when compounded with a Preposition, become Transitive. Thus:—

1) Compounds of circum, praeter, trÄ ns; as,—

hostÄ“s circumstÄ re, _to surround the enemy;_

urbem praeterÄ«re, _to pass by the city;_

mÄ«rÄ s trÄ nscendere, _to climb over the walls._

2) Less frequently, compounds of ad, per, in, sub; as,—

adÄ«re urbem, _to visit the city;_

peragrÄ re Italiam, _to travel through Italy;_

inÄ«re magistrÄ tum, _to take office;_

subÄ«re perÄ«culum, _to undergo danger._

b) Many Verbs expressing emotions, regularly Intransitive, have also a Transitive use; as,—

queror fÄ tum, _I lament my fate;_

doleÄ ejus mortem, _I grieve at his death;_

rÄ«deÄ tuam stultitiam, _I laugh at your folly._

So also lÄ«geÄ , maereÄ , _mourn_; gemÄ , _bemoan_; horreÄ , *shudder*, and others.

c) The impersonals decet, _it becomes_; dÄ“decet, _it is unbecoming_; juvat, *it pleases*, take the Accusative of the Person Affected; as,—

mÄ“ decet haec dÄ«cere, _it becomes me to say this._

d) In poetry many Passive Verbs, in imitation of Greek usage, are employed as Middles (Ä§ 256, 1; 2), and take the Accusative as Object; as,—

galeam induitur, _he puts on his helmet;_

cÄ«nctus tempora hederÄ , _having bound his temples with ivy;_

nā dā sinus collācta, *_having gathered her dress in a knot._*

Accusative of the Result Produced.

176. 1. The ordinary type of this Accusative is seen in such expressions as—

librum scribā, *_I write a book_;*

domum aedificā, *I build a house.*

2. Many Verbs usually Intransitive take a *Neuter Pronoun*, or *Adjective*, as an Accusative of Result. Thus:—

a) A Neuter Pronoun; as,—

haec gemābat, *_he made these moans_;*

idem glāriā rā, *_to make the same boast_;*

eadem peccat, *he makes the same mistakes.*

b) A Neuter Adjective,—particularly *Adjectives of number* or *amount*,—multum, multa, pauca, etc.; also nihil; as,—

multa egeā, *_I have many needs_;*

pauca studet, *_he has few interests_;*

multum valet, *_he has great strength_;*

nihil peccat, *he makes no mistake.*

NOTE.—In poetry other Adjectives are freely used in this construction; as—

minitāntem vānā, *_making vain threats_;*

acerbā tuāns, *_giving a fierce look_;*

dulce loquentem, *sweetly talking.*

3. The adverbial use of several Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives grows out of this Accusative; as,—

multum sunt in vānā tīā ne, *they are much engaged in hunting.*

a. So also plācrimum, *_very greatly_;* plācrimque, *_generally_;* aliquid, *_somewhat_;* quid, *_why?_* nihil, *_not at all_;* etc.

4. Sometimes an Intransitive Verb takes an Accusative of Result which is of kindred etymology with the Verb. This is called a **COGNATE ACCUSATIVE**, and is usually modified by an Adjective; as,—

sempiternam servitātem serviat, *_let him serve an everlasting slavery_;*

vātam dāram vāxā, *I have lived a hard life.*

a. Sometimes the Cognate Accusative is not of kindred etymology, but merely of kindred meaning; as,—
 stadium currit, *he runs a race*;

Olympia vincit, *he wins an Olympic victory*.

5. The Accusative of Result occurs also after Verbs of *tasting* and *smelling*; as,—

piscis mare sapit, *the fish tastes of the sea*;

ŀ rĀ tiĀ nĀ“s antĀ«quitĀ tem redolent, *the speeches smack of the past*.

Two Accusatives—Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.

177. Many Verbs of *Making, Choosing, Calling, Showing*, and the like, take two Accusatives, one of the Person or Thing Affected, the other a Predicate Accusative; as,—

mĀ“ hĀ“rĀ“dem fĀ“cit, *he made me heir*.

Here mĀ“ is Direct Object, hĀ“rĀ“dĀ“m Predicate Accusative. So also—

eum jĀ«dicem cĀ“pĀ“re, *they took him as judge*;

urbem RĀ mam vocĀ vit, *he called the city Rome*;

sĀ“ virum praestitit, *he showed himself a man*.

2. The Predicate Accusative may be an Adjective as well as a Noun; as,—

hominĀ“s caecĀ s reddit cupiditĀ s, *covetousness renders men blind*;

ApollĀ SĀ cratem sapientissimum jĀ«dicĀ vit, *Apollo adjudged Socrates the wisest man*.

a. Some Verbs, as reddĀ , usually admit only an Adjective as the Predicate Accusative.

3. In the Passive the Direct Object becomes the Subject, and the Predicate Accusative becomes Predicate Nominative (Ā§ 168, 2, b): as,—

urbs RĀ ma vocĀ ta est, *the city was called Rome*.

a. Not all Verbs admit the Passive construction; reddĀ and efficiĀ , for example, never take it.

Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

178. 1. Some Verbs take two Accusatives, one of the Person Affected, the other of the Result Produced. Thus:—

a) Verbs of *requesting* and *demanding*; as,—

Ā tium dĀ«vĀ s rogat, *he asks the gods for rest*;

mĀ“ duĀ s ŀ rĀ tiĀ nĀ“s postulĀ s, *you demand two speeches of me*.

So also *rā*, *poscā*, *repscā*, *expscā*, *flāgitā*, though some of these prefer the Ablative with *ab* to the Accusative of the Person; as,—

opem ā tā“ poscā, *I demand aid of you.*

b) Verbs of *teaching* (*doceā* and its compounds); as,—

tā“ litterās doceā, *I teach you your letters.*

c) Verbs of *inquiring*; as,—

tā“ haec rogā, *—I ask you this—*

tā“ sententiam rogā, *I ask you your opinion.*

d) Several Special Verbs; *viz.* *moneā*, *admoneā*, *commoneā*, *cāgā*, *accūsā*, *arguā*, and a few others. These admit only a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective as Accusative of the Thing; as,—

hāc tā“ moneā, *—I give you this advice—*

mā“ id accūsās, *—you bring this accusation against me—*

id cāgit nās nā tāra, *—nature compels us (to) this—*

e) One Verb of *concealing*, *cālā*; as,—

nā n tā“ cālā vā« sermā nem, *I have not concealed the conversation from you.*

2. In the Passive construction the Accusative of the Person becomes the Subject, and the Accusative of the Thing is retained; as,—

omnās artās ā doctus est, *—he was taught all accomplishments—*

rogātus sum sententiam, *—I was asked my opinion—*

multa ā dmonāmur, *we are given many admonitions.*

a. Only a few Verbs admit the Passive construction.

Two Accusatives with Compounds.

179. 1. Transitive compounds of *trāns* may take two Accusatives, one dependent upon the Verb, the other upon the Preposition, as,—

mā«litās flā«men trānsportat, *he leads his soldiers across the river.*

2. With other compounds this construction is rare.

3. In the Passive the Accusative dependent upon the preposition is retained; as,—

mā«litās flā«men trā dā«cābantur, *the soldiers were led across the river.*

Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative.

180. 1. The Synecdochical (or Greek) Accusative denotes the *part* to which an action or quality refers; as,—
 tremit artÅ«s, literally, *he trembles as to his limbs*, i.e. his limbs tremble;

nÅ«da genÅ«, lit. *bare as to the knee*, i.e. with knee bare;

manÅ«s revinctus, lit. *tied as to the hands*, i.e. with hands tied.

2. Note that this construction—

a) Is borrowed from the Greek. b) Is chiefly confined to poetry. c) Usually refers to a part of the body. d) Is used with Adjectives as well as Verbs.

Accusative of Time and Space.

181. 1. *Duration of Time* and *Extent of Space* are denoted by the Accusative; as,—

quadrÅ gintÅ annÅ s vÅ«xit, *_he lived forty years_*;

hÅ«c locus passÅ«s sescentÅ s aberat, *_this place was six hundred paces away_*;

arborÅ«s quÅ«nquÅ gintÅ pedÅ«s altae, *_trees fifty feet high_*;

abhinc septem annÅ s, *seven years ago*.

2. Emphasis is sometimes added by using the Preposition *per*; as,

per biennium labÅ rÅ vÅ«, *I toiled throughout two years*.

Accusative of Limit of Motion.

182. 1. The Accusative of Limit of Motion is used—

a) With names of *Towns*, *Small Islands*, and *Peninsulas*; as,—

RÅ mam vÅ«nÅ«, *_I came to Rome_*;

AthÅ«nÅ s proficÅ«scitur, *_he sets out for Athens_*;

DÅ«lum pervÅ«nÅ«, *I arrived at Delos*.

b) With *domum*, *domÅ s*, *rÅ«s*; as,—

domum revertitur, *_he returns home_*;

rÅ«s Ä«bÅ , *I shall go to the country*.

NOTE.—When *domus* means *house* (i.e. building), it takes a preposition; as,—

in domum veterem remigrÅ re, *to move back to an old house*.

2. Other designations of place than those above mentioned require a Preposition to denote Limit of Motion; as,—

ad Italiam venit, *he came to Italy.*

a. The Preposition is also customary with the Accusatives urbem or oppidum when they stand in apposition with the name of a town; as,—

Thalam, in oppidum magnum, *to Thala, a large town;*

Genavam ad oppidum, *to the town Geneva.*

b. The name of a town denoting limit of motion may be combined with the name of a country or other word dependent upon a preposition; as,—

Thurii in Italiam pervectus, *carried to Thurii in Italy;*

cum ad exercitum venisset, *when he had come to the army at Ace.*

3. To denote *toward, to the vicinity of, in the vicinity of,* ad is used; as,—

ad Tarentum veni, *I came to the vicinity of Tarentum;*

ad Cannas pugna facta est, *a battle was fought near Cannae.*

4. In poetry the Accusative of any noun denoting a place may be used without a preposition to express the limit of motion; as,—

Italiam venit, *he came to Italy.*

5. The *goal* notion seems to represent the original function of the Accusative Case. Traces of this primitive force are recognizable in the phrase *denegare, to deny* (lit. *to go to a denial*), and a few other similar expressions.

Accusative in Exclamations.

183. The Accusative, generally modified by an Adjective, is used in Exclamations; as,—

o miserum, *ah, wretched me!*

o fallacem spem, *oh, deceptive hope!*

Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive.

184. The Subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative; as,—

video hominem abire, *I see that the man is going away.*

Other Uses of the Accusative.

185. Here belong—

1. Some Accusatives which were originally Appositives; viz.—

id genus, *_of that kind_*; as, *hominŭs id genus, men of that kind* (originally *hominŭs, id genus hominum, _men, that kind of men_*);

virŭle secus, muliebre secus, of the male sex, _of the female sex_;

meam vicem, tuam vicem, etc., for my part, etc.;

bonam partem, magnam partem, _in large part_;

maximam partem, for the most part.

2. Some phrases of doubtful origin; as,—

id temporis, _at that time_; *quod si, _but if_*; *id aetŭtis, _at that time_*; *cŭtera, in other respects.*

* * * * *

THE DATIVE.

186. The Dative case, in general, expresses relations which are designated in English by the prepositions *to* and *for*.

Dative of Indirect Object.

187. The commonest use of the Dative is to denote the person *to whom* something is *given, said, or done*. Thus:—

I. With transitive verbs in connection with the Accusative; as,—

hanc pecŭniam mihi dat, _he gives me this money_;

haec nŭbŭs dŭxit, he said this to us.

a. Some verbs which take this construction (particularly *dŭnŭ* and *circumdŭ*) admit also the Accusative of the person along with the Ablative of the thing. Thus:—

Either Themistocles mŭnera dŭnŭ vit, he presented gifts to Themistocles, or

Themistoclem mŭneribus dŭnŭ vit, _he presented Themistocles with gifts_;

urbŭm mŭrŭs circumdat, he builds walls around the city, or

urbem mŭrŭs circumdat, he surrounds the city with walls II. With many intransitive verbs; as,—

nŭllŭs labŭrŭ cŭdit, _he yields to no labor._

a. Here belong many verbs signifying *favor*, [48] *help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry, believe, persuade*, and the like; as,—

Caesar populŭribus favet, _Caesar favors (i.e. is favorable to) the popular party_;

amÄ«cÄ«s cÄ nfÄ«dÄ , _I trust (to) my friends_;

OrgetorÄ«x HelvÄ«tiÄ«s persuÄ sit, _Orgetorix persuaded (made it acceptable to) the Helvetians_;

bonÄ«s nocet quÄ« malÄ«s parcit, _he injures (does harm to) the good, who spares the bad_.

NOTE.—It is to be borne in mind that these verbs do not take the Dative by virtue of their apparent English equivalence, but simply because they are *intransitive*, and adapted to an indirect object. Some verbs of the same apparent English equivalence are *transitive* and govern the Accusative; as, juvÄ , laedÄ , dÄ«lectÄ . Thus: audentÄ«s deus juvat, _God helps the bold_; nÄ«minem laesit *he injured no one*.

b. Verbs of this class are used in the passive only impersonally; as,—

tibi parcitur, _you are spared_;

mihi persuÄ dÄ«tur, _I am being persuaded_;

eÄ« invidÄ«tur, *he is envied*.

c. Some of the foregoing verbs admit also a Direct Object in connection with the Dative; as,—

mihi mortem minitÄ tur, *he threatens me with death* (_threatens death to me_).

III. With many verbs compounded with the prepositions: ad, ante, circum, com,[49] in, inter, ob, post, prae, præ , sub, super.

These verbs fall into two main classes,—

1. Many simple verbs which cannot take a Dative of the indirect object become capable of doing so when compounded with a preposition; as,—

afflÄ«ctÄ«s succurrit, _he helps the afflicted_;

exercituÄ« præfuit, _he was in command of the army_;

intersum cÄ nsiliÄ«s, *I share in the deliberations*.

2. Many transitive verbs which take only a direct object become capable, when compounded, of taking a dative also as indirect object; as,—

pecÄ«niae pudÄ rem antepÄ nit, _he puts honor before money_;

inicere spem amÄ«cÄ«s, _to inspire hope in one's friends_;

mÄ«nÄ«tiÄ ni LabiÄ«num præfÄ«cit, *he put Labienus in charge of the fortifications*.

Dative of Reference.

188. 1. The Dative of Reference denotes the person _to whom a statement refers, of whom it is true_, or _to whom it is of interest_; as,—

mihi ante oculÄ s versÄ ris, *you hover before my eyes* (lit. _hover before the eyes to me_);

illā« sevā«ritā s amā rem nā n dā«minuit, *in his case severity did not diminish love* (lit. _to him severity did not diminish_);

interclā«dere inimā«cā«s commeā tum, _to cut of the supplies of the enemy._

a. Note the phrase alicui interdā«cere aquā et ā«gnā«, *to interdict one from fire and water*.

NOTE.—The Dative of Reference, unlike the Dative of Indirect Object, does not modify the verb, but rather the sentence as a whole. It is often used where, according to the English idiom, we should expect a Genitive; so in the first and third of the above examples.

2. Special varieties of the Dative of Reference are—

a) Dative of the Local Standpoint. This is regularly a participle; as,—

oppidum prā«mum Thessaliae venientibus ab ā«pā«rā , *the first town of Thessaly as you come from Epirus* (lit. _to those coming from Epirus_).

b) Ethical Dative. This name is given to those Dative constructions of the personal pronouns in which the connection of the Dative with the rest of the sentence is of the very slightest sort; as,—

tā« mihi istā«us audā«ciam dā«fendis? _tell me, do you defend that man's audacity?_

quid mihi Celsus agit? _what is my Celsus doing?_

c) Dative of Person Judging; as,—

erit ille mihi semper deus, *he will always be a god to me* (i.e. in my opinion);

quae ista servitā«s tam clā«ro hominā«, *how can that be slavery to so illustrious a man* (i.e. to his mind)!

d) Dative of Separation. Some verbs of *taking away*, especially compounds of ab, dā«, ex, ad, govern a Dative of the person, less often of the thing; as,—

honā« rem dā«trā« xā«runt hominā«, _they took away the honor from the man_;

Caesar rā«gā« tetrarchiam ā«ripuit, _Caesar took the tetrarchy away from the king_;

silicā« scintillam excā«dit, *he struck a spark from the flint*.

Dative of Agency.

189. The Dative is used to denote _agency_—

1. Regularly with the Gerundive; as,—

haec nā« bā«s agenda sunt, _these things must be done by us_;

mihi eundum est, *I must go* (lit. _it must be gone by me_).

a. To avoid ambiguity, ā« with the Ablative is sometimes used with the Gerundive; as,—

hostibus \ddot{A} n \ddot{A} b \ddot{A} «s parcendum est, *the enemy must be spared by us*.

2. Much less frequently with the compound tenses of the passive voice and the perfect passive participle; as,—

disput \ddot{A} ti \ddot{A} quae mihi n \ddot{A} «per habita est, *the discussion which was recently conducted by me*.

3. Rarely with the uncompounded tenses of the passive; as,—

honesta bon \ddot{A} «s vir \ddot{A} «s quaeruntur, *noble ends are sought by good men*.

Dative of Possession.

190. The Dative of Possession occurs with the verb esse in such expressions as:—

mihi est liber, *_I have a book_*;

mihi n \ddot{A} men est M \ddot{A} rcus, *I have the name Marcus*.

1. But with n \ddot{A} men est the name is more commonly attracted into the Dative; as, mihi M \ddot{A} rc \ddot{A} n \ddot{A} men est.

Dative of Purpose or Tendency.

191. The Dative of Purpose or Tendency designates *the end toward which an action is directed or the direction in which it tends*. It is used—

1. Unaccompanied by another Dative; as,—

castr \ddot{A} «s locum d \ddot{A} “ligere, *_to choose a place for a camp_*;

legi \ddot{A} n \ddot{A} “s praesidi \ddot{A} relinquere, *to leave the legions as a guard* (lit. *_for a guard_*);

receptu \ddot{A} « canere, *to sound the signal for a retreat*.

2. Much more frequently in connection with another Dative of the person:—

a) Especially with some form of esse; as,—

fort \ddot{A} «nae tuae mihi c \ddot{A} «rae sunt, *your fortunes are a care to me* (lit. *_for a care_*);

quibus sunt odi \ddot{A} , *_to whom they are an object of hatred_*;

cui bon \ddot{A} ? *_to whom is it of advantage_?*

b) With other verbs; as,—

h \ddot{A} s tibi m \ddot{A} «ner \ddot{A} « m \ddot{A} «sit, *_he has sent these to you for a present_*;

Pausani \ddot{A} s Attic \ddot{A} «s v \ddot{A} “nit auxili \ddot{A} , *Pausanias came to the aid of the Athenians* (lit. *_to the Athenians for aid_*).

3. In connection with the Gerundive; as,—

decemvir^Ä l^Ä“gibus scr^Ä«bund^Ä«s, _decemvirs for codifying the laws_;

m^Ä“ gerend^Ä bell^Ä ducem cre^Ä v^Ä“re, *me they have made leader for carrying on the war.*

NOTE.—This construction with the gerundive is not common till Livy.

Dative with Adjectives.

192. The use of the Dative with Adjectives corresponds very closely to its use with verbs. Thus:—

1. Corresponding to the Dative of Indirect Object it occurs with adjectives signifying: *friendly, unfriendly, similar, dissimilar, equal, near, related to*, etc.; as,—

mihi inim^Ä«cus, _hostile to me_;

sunt proxim^Ä« Germ^Ä nis, _they are next to the Germans_;

noxiae poena p^Ä r est^Ä , *let the penalty be equal to the damage.*

a. For propior and proximus with the Accusative, see Â§ 141, 3.

2. Corresponding to the Dative of Purpose, the Dative occurs with adjectives signifying: *suitable, adapted, fit*; as,—

castr^Ä«s id^Ä neus locus, _a place fit for a camp_;

apta di^Ä“s sacrifici^Ä , *a day suitable for a sacrifice.*

NOTE.—Adjectives of this last class often take the Accusative with ad.

Dative of Direction.

193. In the poets the Dative is occasionally used to denote the _direction of motion_; as,—

it cl^Ä mor cael^Ä , _the shout goes heavenward_;

ciner^Ä“s r^Ä«v^Ä fluent^Ä« jace, *cast the ashes toward a flowing stream.*

1. By an extension of this construction the poets sometimes use the Dative to denote the _limit of motion_; as,—

dum Lati^Ä de^Ä s Ä«nferret, *till he should bring his gods to Latium.*

* * * * *

THE GENITIVE.

194. The Genitive is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

195. With Nouns the Genitive is *the case which defines the meaning of the limited noun more closely*. This relation is generally indicated in English by the preposition of. There are the following varieties of the Genitive with Nouns:—

Genitive of Origin, Objective Genitive, Genitive of Material, Genitive of the Whole, Genitive of Possession, Appositional Genitive, Subjective Genitive, Genitive of Quality.

196. Genitive of Origin; as,—

Marcus filius, *the son of Marcus*.

197. Genitive of Material; as,—

talentum aurum, *a talent of gold*;

acervus frumentum, *a pile of grain*.

198. Genitive of Possession or Ownership; as,—

domus Ciceronis, *Cicero's house*.

1. Here belongs the Genitive with causam and gratiam. The Genitive always precedes; as,—

hominum causa, *for the sake of men*;

meorum amicorum gratiam, *for the sake of my friends*.

2. The Possessive Genitive is often used predicatively, especially with esse and fieri; as,—

domus est regis, *the house is the king's*;

stultum est in errore manere, *it is (the part) of a fool to remain in error*;

belli iudicium imperatoris est, non militum, *the decision concerning war belongs to the general, not to the soldiers*.

a. For the difference in force between the Possessive Genitive and the Dative of Possession, see § 359, 1.

199. Subjective Genitive. This denotes *the person who makes or produces something or who has a feeling*; as,—

dicta Platonis, *the utterances of Plato*;

timoribus liberorum, *the fears of the children*.

200. Objective Genitive. This denotes *the object of an action or feeling*; as,—

metus deorum, *the fear of the gods*;

amor libertatis, *love of liberty*;

conversatio bonorum hominum, *intercourse with good men*.

1. This relation is often expressed by means of prepositions; as,—

amor ergÄ parentÄ“s, _love toward one's parents_.

201. Genitive of the Whole. This designates the *whole* of which a part is taken. It is used—

1. With Nouns, Pronouns, Comparatives, Superlatives, and Ordinal Numerals; as,—

magna pars hominum, _a great part of mankind_;

duo mÄ«lia peditum, _two thousand foot-soldiers_;

quis mortÄ lium, _who of mortals?_

major frÄ trum, _the elder of the brothers_;

gÄ“ns maxima GermÄ nÄ rum, _the largest tribe of the Germans_;

prÄ«mus omnium, *the first of all*.

a. Yet instead of the Genitive of the Whole we often find *ex* or *dÄ“* with the Ablative, regularly so with Cardinal numbers and *quÄ«dam*; as,—

fidÄ“lissimus dÄ“ servÄ«s, _the most trusty of the slaves_;

quÄ«dam ex amÄ«cÄ«s, _certain of his friends_;

Ä«nus ex mÄ«litibus, *one of the soldiers*.

b. In English we often use *of* where there is no relation of whole to part. In such cases the Latin is more exact, and does not use the Genitive; as,—

quot vÄ s estis, _how many of you are there?_

trecentÄ« conjÄ«rÄ vimus, *three hundred of us have conspired* (i.e. we, three hundred in number).

2. The Genitive of the Whole is used also with the Nominative or Accusative Singular Neuter of Pronouns, or of Adjectives used substantively; also with the Adverbs *parum*, *satis*, and *partim* when used substantively; as,—

quid cÄ nsilÄ«, _what purpose?_

tantum cibÄ«, _so much food_;

plÄ«s auctÄ ritÄ tis, _more authority_;

minus labÄ ris, _less labor_;

satis pecÄ«niae, _enough money_;

parum industriae, *too little industry*.

a. An Adjective of the second declension used substantively may be employed as a Genitive of the Whole; as, nihil bonū, *nothing good*.

b. But Adjectives of the third declension agree directly with the noun they limit; as, nihil dulcius, *nothing sweeter*.

3. Occasionally we find the Genitive of the Whole dependent upon Adverbs of place; as,—

ubi terrarum? ubi gentium? *_where in the world?_*

a. By an extension of this usage the Genitive sometimes occurs in dependence upon prædi and postrædi, but only in the phrases prædi ejus di, *_on the day before that_*; postrædi ejus di, *_on the day after that_*.

202. Appositional Genitive. The Genitive sometimes has the force of an appositive; as,—

nomen regis, *_the name of king_*;

poena mortis, *_the penalty of death_*;

ars scribendæ, *the art of writing*.

203. Genitive of Quality. The Genitive modified by an Adjective is used to denote quality. This construction presents several varieties. Thus it is used—

1. To denote some internal or permanent characteristic of a person or thing; as,—

vir magnæ virtutis, *_a man of great virtue_*;

rationes ejus modi, *considerations of that sort*.

a. Only a limited number of Adjectives occur in this construction, chiefly magnus, maximus, summus, tantus, along with ejus.

2. To denote measure (*breadth, length, etc.*); as,—

fossa quædecim pedum, *a trench fifteen feet wide (or _deep_)*;

exilium decem annorum, *an exile of ten years*.

3. Equivalent to the Genitive of Quality (though probably of different origin) are the Genitives tantus, quantus, parvus, magnus, minor, plurimus, minimus, plurimum, maximum. These are used predicatively to denote *_indefinite value_*; as,—

Nulla studia tantus sunt, *_no studies are of so much value_*;

magna opera ejus exstimata est, *his assistance was highly esteemed*.

4. By an extension of the notion of *value*, quantus, tantus, plurimus, and minor are also used with verbs of *buying* and *selling*, to denote *_indefinite price_*; as,—

Quantus aedificatus, *_at how high a price did you purchase the house?_*

5. Any of the above varieties of the Genitive of Quality may be used predicatively; as,—

tantae mālis erat Rā mā nam condere gentem, *of so great difficulty was it to found the Roman race.*

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

204. The Genitive is used with many Adjectives *to limit the extent of their application.* Thus:—

1. With adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fullness,* and their opposites; as,—

studiā sus discendā, *_desirous of learning_;*

peritū bellū, *_skilled in war_;*

ānsuātus labōris, *_unused to toil_;*

immemor mandātū, *_unmindful of your commission_;*

plāna periculūrum est vāta, *life is full of dangers.*

a. Some participles used adjectively also take the Genitive; as,—

diligēns vērītis, *_fond of truth_;*

amāns patriae, *_devoted to one's country_.*

2. Sometimes with proprius and commūnis; as,—

virū propria est fortitūdō, *bravery is characteristic of a man.*

memoria est commūnis omnium artium, *memory is common to all professions.*

a. proprius and commūnis are also construed with the Dative.

3. With similis the Genitive is the commoner construction in Cicero, when the reference is to living objects; as,—

filiū patris simillimus est, *_the son is exactly like his father_;*

meū similis, *_like me_;* vestrū similis, *like you.*

When the reference is to things, both Genitive and Dative occur; as,—

mors somnū (or somnū) similis est, *death is like sleep.*

4. In the poets and later prose writers the use of the Genitive with Adjectives is extended far beyond earlier limits; as, atrū animū, *_fierce of temper_;* incertus cōsilī, *undecided in purpose.*

GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

205. The Genitive is used with the following classes of Verbs:—

Memini, _ReminÄ«scor_, _OblÄ«vÄ«scor_.

206. 1. WHEN REFERRING TO PERSONS---

a. *meminÄ«* always takes the Genitive of personal or reflexive pronouns; as,---

meÄ« meminÄ« meminerÄ«s, remember me!

nostrÄ« meminit, he remembers us.

With other words denoting persons *meminÄ«* takes the Accusative, rarely the Genitive; as,---

Sullam meminÄ«, _I recall Sulla_;

vÄ«vÄ« rum meminÄ«, I remember the living.

b. *oblÄ«vÄ«scor* regularly takes the Genitive; as,---

EpicÄ«rÄ« nÄ« n licet oblÄ«vÄ«scÄ«, _we mustn't forget Epicurus_.

2. WHEN REFERRING TO THINGS, *meminÄ«, reminÄ«scor, oblÄ«vÄ«scor* take sometimes the Genitive, sometimes the Accusative, without difference of meaning; as,---

animus praeteritÄ« rum meminit, _the mind remembers the past_;

meministÄ«ne nÄ« mina, _do you remember the names?_

reminÄ«scere veteris incommodÄ«, _remember the former disaster_;

reminÄ«scÄ«ns acerbitÄ« tem, remembering the bitterness.

a. But neuter pronouns, and adjectives used substantively, regularly stand in the Accusative; as,---

haec meminÄ«, _I remember this_;

multa reminÄ«scor, _I remember many things_.

3. The phrase *mihi* (*tibi*, etc.) in *mentem venit*, following the analogy of *meminÄ«,* takes the Genitive; as,---

mihi patriae veniÄ«bat in mentem, _I remembered my country_.

AdmoneÄ«, _CommoneÄ«_, _CommonefaciÄ«_.

207. These verbs, in addition to an Accusative of the person, occasionally take a Genitive of the thing; as,---

tÄ« veteris amÄ«citiæ commonefaciÄ«, _I remind you of our old friendship_.

a. But more frequently (in Cicero almost invariably) these verbs take *dÄ«* with the Ablative; as,---

mÄ« admonÄ«s dÄ« sorÄ« re, _you remind me of your sister_.

b. A neuter pronoun or adjective used substantively regularly stands in the Accusative (Ä«§ 178, 1, d); as,---

tÄ“ hÄ c admoneÄ , _I give you this warning._

Verbs of Judicial Action.

208. 1. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting* take the Genitive of the _charge_; as,---

mÄ“ fÄ«rtÄ« accÄ«sat, _he accuses me of theft_;

Verrem avÄ ritiae coarguit, _he convicts Verres of avarice_;

impietÄ tis absolÄ«tus est, *he was acquitted of blasphemy.*

2. Verbs of *Condemning* take---

a. The Genitive of the _charge_; as,---

pecÄ«niae pÄ«blicaе condemnÄ tus, _condemned (on the charge) of embezzlement_ (lit. _public money_);

capitis damnÄ tus, *condemned on a capital charge* (lit. _on a charge involving his head_).

b. The Ablative of the _penalty_; as,---

capite damnÄ tus est, _he was condemned to death_;

mÄ«lle nummÄ«s damnÄ tus est, _he was condemned (to pay) a thousand sesterces_ (lit. *by a thousand sesterces*, Abl. of Means).

3. Note the phrases:---

vÄ tÄ« damnÄ tus, vÄ tÄ« reus, _having attained one's prayer_ (lit. _condemned on the score of one's vow_);

dÄ“ vÄ«, (*accused, convicted, etc.*) _of assault_;

inter sä«cÄ riÄ s, (*accused, convicted, etc.*) *of murder.*

Genitive with Impersonal Verbs.

209. 1. The Impersonals *puDET, paENITET, MISERET, taEDET, PIGET* take the Accusative of *the person affected*, along with the Genitive _of the person or thing toward whom the feeling is directed_; as,---

puDET mÄ“ tuÄ«, *I am ashamed of you* (lit. _it shames me of you_);

paENITET mÄ“ hÄ«jus factÄ«, _I repent of this act_;

eum taEDET vÄ«tae, _he is weary of life_;

pauperum tÄ“ miseret, *you pity the poor.*

a. Instead of the Genitive of the thing we often find an Infinitive or Neuter Pronoun used as subject of the verb. Thus;---

mÄ“ paenitet hÄ c fÄ“cisse, *_I repent of having done this_;*

mÄ“ hÄ c pudet, *I am ashamed of this.*

2. Misereor and miserÄ“scÄ also govern the Genitive; as,---

miserÄ“minÄ« sociÄ rum, *pity the allies.*

Interest, _RÄ“fert._

210. With interest, *it concerns*, three points enter into consideration; viz.---

a) the *_person concerned_;* b) the *thing about which* he is concerned; c) the *extent* of his concern.

211. 1. The *person concerned* is regularly denoted by the Genitive; as,---

patris interest, *it concerns the father.*

a. But instead of the Genitive of the personal pronouns, meÄ«, tuÄ«, nostrÄ«, vestrÄ«, the Latin uses the Ablative Singular Feminine of the Possessive, viz.: meÄ , tuÄ , etc.; as,---

meÄ interest, *it concerns me.*

2. The *thing about which* a person is concerned is denoted---

a) by a Neuter Pronoun as subject; as,---

hÄ c reÄ« pÄ«blica interest, *this concerns the state.*

b) by an Infinitive; as,---

omnium interest valÄ“re, *it concerns all to keep well.*

c) by an Indirect Question; as,---

meÄ interest quandÄ veniÄ s, *I am concerned as to when you are coming.*

3. The *degree of concern* is denoted---

a) by the Genitive (cf. Ä§ 203, 3): magnÄ«, parvÄ«, etc.; as,---

meÄ magnÄ« interest, *it concerns me greatly.*

b) by the Adverbs, magnopere, magis, maximÄ“, etc.; as,---

cÄ«vium minimÄ“ interest, *it concerns the citizens very little.*

c) by the Neuters, multum, plÄ«s, minus, etc.; as,---

multum vestrÄ interest, *it concerns you much.*

4. RÄ“fert follows interest in its construction, except that it rarely takes the Genitive of the person. Thus:---

meÄ rÄ“fert, _it concerns me_;

but rarely illÄ«us rÄ“fert, *it concerns him*.

Genitive with Other Verbs.

212. 1. Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* sometimes govern the Genitive; as,—

pecÄ«niae indigÄ“s, *you need money*.

a. These verbs more commonly take the Ablative (Ä§ 214, 1); indigÄ“ is the only verb which has a preference for the Genitive.

2. Potior, though usually followed by the Ablative, sometimes takes the Genitive, almost always so in Sallust; and regularly in the phrase potÄ«rÄ« rÄ“rum, *to get control of affairs*.

3. In poetry some verbs take the Genitive in imitation of the Greek; as,—

dÄ“sine querellÄ rum, _cease your complaints_;

operum solÄ«tÄ«, *freed from their tasks*.

* * * * *

THE ABLATIVE.

213. The Latin Ablative unites in itself three cases which were originally distinct both in form and in meaning; viz.—

The Ablative or from—case. The Instrumental or with—case. The Locative or where—case.

The uses of the Latin Ablative accordingly fall into Genuine Ablative uses, Instrumental uses, and Locative uses.

GENUINE ABLATIVE USES.

Ablative of Separation.

214. The Ablative of Separation is construed sometimes with, sometimes without, a preposition.

1. The following words regularly take the Ablative without a preposition:—

a) The Verbs of _freeing_: lÄ«berÄ , solvÄ , levÄ ;

b) The Verbs of _depriving_: prÄ«vÄ , spoliÄ , exuÄ , fraudÄ , nÄ«dÄ ;

c) The Verbs of _lacking_: egeÄ , careÄ , vacÄ ;

d) The corresponding Adjectives, lÄ«ber, inÄ nis, vacuus, nÄ«dus,

and some others of similar meaning.

Thus:—

cārā s lāberā tus, *freed from cares*;

Caesar hostās armās exuit, *Caesar stripped the enemy of their arms*;

caret sās commānās, *he lacks common sense*;

auxiliā eget, *he needs help*;

bonā rum vāta vacua est metā, *the life of the good is free from fear*.

NOTE 1.—Yet Adjectives and lāberā may take the preposition ab,—regularly so with the Ablative of persons; as,—

urbem ā tyrannā lāberā runt, *they freed the city from the tyrant*.

NOTE 2.—Indigē usually takes the Genitive. See § 212, 1, a.

2. Of Verbs signifying *to keep from, to remove, to withdraw*, some take the preposition, others omit it. The same Verb often admits both constructions. Examples:—

abstinēre cibā, *to abstain from food*;

hostās fānibus prohibuērunt, *they kept the enemy from their borders*;

praedā nās ab ānsulā prohibuit, *he kept the pirates from the island*.

3. Other Verbs of separation usually take the Ablative with a Preposition, particularly compounds of dis- and sās-; as,—

dissentiā ā tās, *I dissent from you*;

sācernantur ā nās bās, *let them be separated from us*.

4. The Preposition is freely omitted in poetry.

Ablative of Source.

215. The Ablative of Source is used with the participles nās tus and ortus (in poetry also with āditus, satus, and some others), to designate *parentage* or *station*; as,—

Jove nās tus, *son of Jupiter*;

summā locā nās tus, *high-born* (lit. *born from a very high place*);

nās bilās genere ortus, *born of a noble family*.

1. Pronouns regularly (nouns rarely) take ex; as,

ex mās nās tus, *sprung from me*.

2. To denote remoter descent, *ortus ab*, or *oriundus* (with or without *ab*), is used; as,—

ab Ulixē oriundus, descended from Ulysses.

Ablative of Agent.

216. The Ablative accompanied by *Ā* (*ab*) is used with passive verbs to denote the *_personal agent_*; as,—

Ā Caesare accūsātus est, he was arraigned by Caesar.

1. Collective nouns referring to persons, and abstract nouns when personified, may be construed as the personal agent. Thus:—

hostēs Ā fortū dēsēbantur, _the enemy were deserted by Fortune_;

Ā multitudine hostium mōntēs tenēbantur, the mountains were held by a multitude of the enemy.

2. Names of animals sometimes admit the same construction. Thus:—

Ā canibus laniātus est, he was torn to pieces by dogs.

Ablative of Comparison.

217. 1. The Ablative is often used with Comparatives in the sense of *_than_*; as,—

melle dulcior, _sweeter than honey_;

patria mihi vātā cārior est, my country is dearer to me than life.

2. This construction, as a rule, occurs only as a substitute for *quam* (*_than_*) with the Nominative or Accusative. In other cases *quam* must be used; as,—

tuā studiōsior sum quam illū, I am fonder of you than of him.

—*Studiōsior illū* would have meant, *I am fonder of you than he is.*

Plūsimus, minus, amplius, longius are often employed as the equivalents of *plūsimam quam, minus quam, etc.* Thus:—

amplius vāgintā urbēs incenduntur, _more than twenty cities are fired_;

minus quāque mīlia prācessit, he advanced less than five miles.

3. Note the use of *opiniōne* with Comparatives; as,—

opiniōne celerius venit, he comes more quickly than expected (lit. *_than opinion_*).

INSTRUMENTAL USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

Ablative of Means.

218. The Ablative is used to denote *means* or *_instrument_*; as,—

Alexander sagittā vulnerātus est, *Alexander was wounded by an arrow.*

There are the following special varieties of this Ablative:—

1. *Ātor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, and their compounds take the Ablative; as,—

dāvitiās ātitur, *he uses his wealth* (lit. *he benefits himself by his wealth*);

vātā fruitur, *he enjoys life* (lit. *he enjoys himself by life*);

mānere fungor, *I perform my duty* (lit. *I busy myself with duty*);

carne vescuntur, *they eat flesh* (lit. *feed themselves by means of*);

castrās potātus est, *he got possession of the camp* (lit. *made himself powerful by the camp*).

a. *Potior* sometimes governs the Genitive. See § 212, 2.

2. With *opus est* (rarely *āsus est*), *there is need*; as,—

duce nā bās opus est, *we need a leader*.

a. A Neuter Pronoun or Adjective often stands as subject with *opus* as predicate. Thus:—

hā c mihi opus est, *this is necessary for me*.

b. An ordinary substantive rarely stands as subject. Thus *dux nā bās opus est* is a rare form of expression.

c. Note the occasional use of a perfect passive participle with *opus est*; as,—

opus est properātā, *there is need of haste*.

3. With *nātor, innāxus*, and *frātus*; as,—

nātitur hastā, *he rests on a spear* (lit. *supports himself by a spear*);

frātus virtūte, *relying on virtue* (lit. *supported by virtue*).

4. With *contināre, cānsistere, cānstāre*, *consist of*; as,—

nervās et ossibus continentur, *they consist of sinews and bones* (lit. *they are held together by sinews and bones*);

mortā lā cānsistit corpore mundus, *the world consists of mortal substance* (lit. *holds together by means of, etc.*).

6. In expressions of the following type:—

quid hā c homine faciās, *what can you do with this man?*

quid meā Tulliolā fācet, *what will become of my dear Tullia?* (lit. *what will be done with my dear Tullia?*)

7. In the following special phrases at variance with the ordinary English idiom:—

proeli^o contendere, vincere, *to contend*, *conquer in battle*;

proeli^o lacerare, *to provoke to battle*;

curr^u veh^{ere}, *to ride in a chariot*;

pedibus ^{ire}, *to go on foot*;

castr^{is} s^{er}va^{re}, *to keep in camp*.

8. With Verbs of *filling* and Adjectives of *plenty*; as,—

foss^{ae} s^{er}virgult^{is} compl^{er}unt, *they filled the trenches with brush*.

a. But pl^{enus} more commonly takes the Genitive. See [§] 204, 1.

9. Under 'Means' belongs also the Ablative of the Way by Which; as,—

v^{inum} Tiber^e d^{uc}tum, *wine brought down (by) the Tiber*.

10. The means may be a person as well as a thing. Thus:—

m^{ilitibus} lac^{us} Lemann^{is} ad montem J^{ura} m^{arum} per^{dit}, *with (i.e. by means of) his troops he runs a wall from Lake Geneva to Mt. Jura*.

Ablative of Cause.

219. The Ablative is used to denote cause; as,—

multa gl^{oriae} cupidit^{ate} f^{ecit}, *he did many things on account of his love of glory*.

1. So especially with verbs denoting mental states; as, d^{ilect}, g^{audere}, laetor, gl^{orior}, f^{er}d^{ere}, c^{onfide}. Also with contentus; as,—

fort^{is} am^{ic} gaude^o, *I rejoice at the fortune of my friend (i.e. on account of it)*;

vict^{oriam} su^{am} gl^{oriantur}, *they exult over their victory*;

n^{on} t^{rustant} loc^o c^{onfide}bant, *they trusted in the character of their country (lit. were confident on account of the character)*.

a. f^{er}d^{ere} and c^{onfide} always take the Dative of the person ([§] 187, II, a); sometimes the Dative of the thing.

2. As Ablatives of Cause are to be reckoned also such Ablatives as juss^u, by order of, injuss^u, *without the order*, rog^u, etc.

Ablative of Manner.

220. The Ablative with cum is used to denote manner; as,—

cum gravitÄ te loquitur, *he speaks with dignity.*

1. The preposition may be absent when the Ablative is modified by an adjective; as,—

magnÄ gravitÄ te loquitur, *he speaks with great dignity.*

2. The preposition is regularly absent in the expressions jÄ«re, injÄ«riÄ , jocÄ , vÄ«, fraude, voluntÄ te, fÄ«rtÄ , silentiÄ .

3. A special variety of the Ablative of Manner denotes that *in accordance with which* or *in pursuance of which* anything is or is done. It is generally used without a preposition. Thus:—

meÄ sentiÄ , *according to my opinion*;

suÄ«s mä ribus, *in accordance with their custom*;

suÄ sponte, *voluntarily, of his (their) own accord*;

eÄ condiciÄ ne, *on these terms.*

Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

221. The Ablative is often used to denote an *attendant circumstance* of an action or an event; as,—

bonÄ«s auspiciÄ«s, *under good auspices*;

nÄ«lla est altercÄ tiÄ clÄ mä ribus umquam habita majÄ ribus, *no debate was ever held under circumstances of greater applause*;

extinguitur ingentÄ« lÄ«ctÄ« prä vinciae, *he dies under circumstances of great grief on the part of the province*;

longÄ intervÄ llÄ sequitur, *he follows at a great distance.*

Ablative of Accompaniment.

222. The Ablative with cum is used with verbs of motion to denote *accompaniment*; as,—

cum comitibus profectus est, *he set out with his attendants*;

cum febrÄ« domum rediit, *he returned home with a fever.*

1. In military expressions the Ablative may stand without cum when modified by any adjective except a numeral; as,—

omnibus cÄ piÄ«s, ingentÄ« exercitÄ«, magnÄ manÄ«; but usually cum exercitÄ«, cum duÄ bus legiÄ nibus.

Ablative of Association.

222A. The Ablative is often used with verbs of *joining, mixing, clinging, exchanging*; also with assuÄ«scÄ , cÄ nsuÄ«scÄ , assuÄ«faciÄ , and some others to denote *association*; as,—

improbitas scelere junctus, *badness joined with crime*;

Aër calidre admixtus, *air mixed with heat*;

assuetus laborum re, *accustomed to (lit. familiarized with) toil*;

pacem bellum permittant, *they change peace for (lit. with) war*.

Ablative of Degree of Difference.

223. The Ablative is used with comparatives and words involving comparison (as post, ante, antefrater, super) to denote the *degree of difference*; as,—

dimidius minor, *smaller by a half*;

tribus pedibus altior, *three feet higher*;

paulo post, *a little afterwards*;

quanto plurimum habemus, eo cupimus amplius, *the more we have, the more we want*.

Ablative of Quality.

224. The Ablative, modified by an adjective, is used to denote *quality*; as,—

puella eximia forma, *a girl of exceptional beauty*;

vir singulari industria, *a man of singular industry*.

1. The Ablative of Quality may also be used predicatively; as,—

est magni prudenti, *he is (a man) of great wisdom*;

boni animi sunt, *they are of good courage*.

2. In place of the Adjective we sometimes find a limiting Genitive; as,—

sunt speciei et colore tauri, *they are of the appearance and color of a bull*,

3. In poetry the Ablative of Quality sometimes denotes *material*; as,—

scopulis pendentibus antrum, *a cave of arching rocks*.

Ablative of Price.

225. With verbs of *buying* and *selling*, price is designated by the Ablative; as—

servum quinque minis emit, *he bought the slave for five minae*.

1. The Ablatives magni, plurimum, parvi, minimi (by omission of pretii) are used to denote *indefinite price*; as,—

aedÄ“s magnÄ vÄ“ndidÄ«t, *he sold the house for a high price.*

2. For the Genitive of Indefinite Price, see Â§ 203, 4.

Ablative of Specification.

226. The Ablative of Specification is used to denote that *in respect to which* something is or is done; as,—

HelvÄ“tiÄ« omnibus GallÄ«s virtÄ«te praestÄ bant, *the Helvetians surpassed all the Gauls in valor;*
pede claudus, *lame in his foot.*

1. Note the phrases:—

major nÄ tÄ«, *older* (lit. *greater as to age*);

minor nÄ tÄ«, *younger.*

2. Here belongs the use of the Ablative with dignus, *worthy*, indignus, *unworthy*, and dignor, *deem worthy of*; as,—

dignÄ« honÄ re, *worthy of honor* (i.e. *in point of honor*);

fidÄ“ indignÄ«, *unworthy of confidence*;

mÄ“ dignor honÄ re, *I deem myself worthy of honor.*

Ablative Absolute.

227. The Ablative Absolute is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. In its commonest form it consists of a noun or pronoun limited by a participle; as,—

urbe captÄ , AenÄ“Ä s fÄ«git, *when the city had been captured, Aeneas fled* (lit. *the city having been captured*).

1. Instead of a participle we often find an adjective or noun; as,—

vÄ«vÄ Caesare rÄ“s pÄ«blica salva erat, *while Caesar was alive the state was safe* (lit. *Caesar being alive*);

TarquiniÄ rÄ“ge, PythagorÄ s in Italiam vÄ“nit, *in the reign of Tarquin Pythagoras came into Italy* (lit. *Tarquin being king*);

Cn. PompejÄ , M. CrassÄ cÄ nsulibus, *in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus* (lit. *P. and C. being consuls*).

2. The Ablative Absolute is generally used in Latin where in English we employ subordinate clauses. Thus the Ablative Absolute may correspond to a clause denoting—

a) Time, as in the foregoing examples.

b) Condition; as,—

omnĀ's virtĀ«tĀ's jacent, voluptĀ te dominante, *_all virtues lie prostrate, if pleasure is master_.*

c) Opposition; as,—

perditĀ«s omnibus rĀ"bus, virtĀ«s sĀ" sustentĀ re potest, *_though everything else is lost, yet Virtue can maintain herself_.*

d) Cause; as,—

nĀ«llĀ adversante rĀ"gnum obtinuit, *_since no one opposed him, he secured the throne_.*

e) Attendant circumstance; as,—

passĀ«s palmĀ«s pĀ cem petĀ«vĀ"runt, *_with hands outstretched, they sued for peace_.*

3. An Infinitive or clause sometimes occurs in the Ablative Absolute construction, especially in Livy and later writers; as,—

audĀ«tĀ eum fĀ«gisse, *when it was heard that he had fled.*

4. A noun or pronoun stands in the Ablative Absolute construction only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the clause in which it stands. Exceptions to this principle are extremely rare.

LOCATIVE USES OF THE ABLATIVE.

Ablative of Place.

A. Place where.

228. The place where is regularly denoted by the *_Ablative with a preposition_*; as,—

in urbe habitat, he dwells in the city.

1. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; viz.—

a) Names of towns,—except Singulars of the First and Second Declensions (see Â§ 232, 1); as,—

CarthĀ ginĀ«, *_at Carthage_;*

AthĀ"nis, *_at Athens_;*

VejĀ«s, *at Veii.*

b) The general words *locĀ* , *locĀ«s*, *parte*; also many words modified by *tĀ tus* or even by other Adjectives; as,—

hĀ c locĀ , *_at this place_;*

tĀ tĀ«s castrĀ«s, *in the whole camp.*

c) The special words: *forĀ«s*, *_out of doors_;* *rĀ«rĀ«*, *in the country*, *terrĀ marĀ«que*, *on land and sea.*

d) The poets freely omit the preposition with any word denoting place; as,—

stant lÄ«tore puppÄ“s, *the sterns rest on the beach.*

B. Place from which.[50]

229. Place from which is regularly denoted by the _Ablative with a preposition_; as,—

ab ItaliÄ profectus est, _he set out from Italy_;

ex urbe rediit, *he returned from the city.*

1. But certain words stand in the Ablative without a preposition; viz.—

a) Names of towns and small islands; as,—

RÄ ma profectus est, _he set out from Rome_;

RhodÄ revertit, *he returned from Rhodes.*

b) domÄ , _from home_; rÄ«re, *from the country.*

c) Freely in poetry; as,—

ItaliÄ dÄ“cessit, *he withdrew from Italy.*

2. With names of towns, ab is used to mean *from the vicinity of*, or to denote the point _whence distance is measured;_ as,—

Ä GergoviÄ discessit, _he withdrew from the vicinity of Gergovia_;

Ä RÄ mÄ X mÄ«lia aberat, *he was ten miles distant from Rome.*

Urbe and oppidÄ , when standing in apposition with a town name, are accompanied by a preposition; as,—

Curibus ex oppidÄ SabÄ«nÄ rum, _from Cures, a town of the Sabines_

Ablative of Time.

A. Time at which.

230. The Ablative is used to denote the time _at which_; as,—

quÄ rtÄ hÄ rÄ mortuus est, _he died at the fourth hour_;

annÄ septuÄ gÄ“simÄ cÄ nsul creÄ tus, *elected consul in his seventieth year.*

1. Any word denoting a period of time may stand in this construction, particularly annus, vÄ“r, aestÄ s, hiems, diÄ“s, nox, hÄ ra, comitia (_Election Day_), lÄ«dÄ« (_the Games_), etc.

2. Words not denoting time require the preposition in, unless accompanied by a modifier. Thus:—

in p̄ce, *in peace*; in bell̄, *in war*;

but secund̄ bell̄ P̄nic̄, *in the second Punic War*.

3. Expressions like in ē tempore, in summa senect̄te, take the preposition because they denote *situation* rather than *time*.

B. Time within which.

231. Time *within which* is denoted by the Ablative either *with* or *without a preposition*; as,—

stella S̄ turn̄ tr̄gint̄ ann̄s cursum c̄nficit, *the planet Saturn completes its orbit within thirty years*;

ter in ann̄, *thrice in the course of the year*.

1. Occasionally the Ablative denotes *duration of time*; as,—

biennī pr̄ sper̄ s̄ r̄s habit, *for two years he had a prosperous administration*.

* * * * *

THE LOCATIVE.

232. The Locative case occurs chiefly in the following words:—

1. Regularly in the Singular of names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, to denote the place *in which*; as,—

R̄mae, *at Rome*; Corinth̄, *at Corinth*; Rhod̄, *at Rhodes*.

2. In the following special forms:—

dom̄, *at home*; hum̄, *on the ground*; bell̄, *in war*; m̄litiae, *in war*; vesper̄, *at evening*; her̄, *yesterday*.

3. Note the phrase pend̄re anim̄, lit. *to be in suspense in one's mind*.

4. For urbs and oppidum in apposition with a Locative, see § 169, 4.

* * * * *

CHAPTER III.

Syntax of Adjectives.

233. 1. The word with which an Adjective agrees is called its Subject.

2. Attributive and Predicate Adjectives. An Attributive Adjective is one that limits its subject directly; as,—

vir sapīns, *a wise man*.

A Predicate Adjective is one that limits its subject through the medium of a verb (usually esse); as,—

vir est sapiens, *the man is wise*;

vir videtur sapiens, *the man seemed wise*;

vir judicatus est sapiens, *the man was judged wise*;

hunc virum sapientem judicavimus, *we adjudged this man wise*.

3. Participles and Adjective Pronouns have the construction of Adjectives.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

234. Agreement with One Noun. When an Adjective limits one noun it agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case.

1. Two Adjectives in the Singular may limit a noun in the Plural, as; prima et vigesima legio, *the first and twentieth legions*.

2. A Predicate Adjective may stand in the Neuter when its Subject is Masculine or Feminine and denotes a thing; as,—

omnium rerum mors est extrema, *death is the end of all things*.

235. Agreement with Two or More Nouns.

A. AGREEMENT AS TO NUMBER.

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in number with the nearest noun; as,—

pater tuus et mater, *your father and mother*;

eadem alacritas et studium, *the same eagerness and zeal*.

2. When the Adjective is Predicative, it is regularly Plural; as,—

pax et concordia sunt pulchrae, *peace and concord are glorious*.

B. AGREEMENT AS TO GENDER.

1. When the Adjective is Attributive, it regularly agrees in gender with the nearest noun; as,—

operae multae ac laboris, *a matter of much effort and labor*.

2. When the Adjective is Predicative—

a) If the nouns are of the same gender, the Adjective agrees with them in gender; as,—

pater et filius capti sunt, *father and son were captured*.

Yet with feminine abstract nouns, the Adjective is more frequently Neuter; as,—

stultitia et timiditas fugienda sunt, *folly and cowardice must be shunned.*

b) If the nouns are of different gender; then,—

Î±) In case they denote persons, the Adjective is Masculine; as,—

pater et mater mortui sunt, *the father and mother have died.*

Î²) In case they denote things, the Adjective is Neuter; as,—

honores et victoriae fortuitae sunt, *honors and victories are accidental.*

Î³) In case they include both persons and things, the Adjective is,—

Î±Î±) Sometimes Masculine; as,—

domus, uxor, liberi inventi sunt, *home, wife, and children are secured.*

Î²Î²) Sometimes Neuter; as,—

parentes, liberi, domus vili habere, *to hold parents, children, houses cheap.*

Î³Î³) Sometimes it agrees with the nearest noun; as,—

populi provinciaeque liberatae sunt, *nations and provinces were liberated.*

c) Construction according to Sense. Sometimes an Adjective does not agree with a noun according to strict grammatical form, but according to sense; as,—

pars hominum in bestias missa est, *part (of the men) were thrown to beasts.*

ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

236. 1. PLURAL ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY. Adjectives are quite freely used as Substantives in the Plural. The Masculine denotes persons; the Neuter denotes things; as,—

docti, *scholars*; parva, *small things*; mali, *the wicked*; magna, *great things*; Graeci, *the Greeks*; utilia, *useful things*; nostri, *our men*.

2. Neuter Plural Adjectives thus used are confined mainly to the Nominative and Accusative cases. Such forms as magnorum, omnium; magnis, omnibus, would ordinarily lead to ambiguity; yet where there is no ambiguity, they sometimes occur; as,—

parva comparere magna, *to compare great things with small* Otherwise the Latin says: magnorum rorum, magnis ribus, etc.

237. SINGULAR ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY. Adjectives are less freely used as Substantives in the Singular than in the Plural.

1. Masculine Adjectives occur only occasionally in this use; as,—

probus invidet nihil, *the honest man envies nobody.*

a. Usually *vir*, *homō*, or some similar word is employed; as,—

homō doctus, _a scholar_;

vir Rōmānus, *a Roman*.

b. But when limited by a pronoun any adjective may be so used; as,—

hīc doctus, _this scholar_;

doctus quōdam, *a certain scholar*.

2. Neuters are likewise infrequent; as,—

vērūm, _truth_;

iūstūm, _justice_;

honestūm, *virtue*.

a. This substantive use of Neuter Singulars is commonest in the construction of the Genitive of the Whole, and after Prepositions; as,—

aliquid vērūm, _something true_;

nihil novūm, _nothing new_;

in mediā, *in the midst*.

238. From Adjectives which, like the above, occasionally admit the substantive use, must be carefully distinguished certain others which have become nouns; as,—

adversārius, _opponent_; *hiberna*, _winter quarters_; *aequālis*, _contemporary_; *propinquus*, _relative_;
amicus, _friend_; *socius*, _partner_; *cognātus*, _kinsman_; *sodalīs*, _comrade_; *vicinus*,
neighbor; etc.

ADJECTIVES WITH THE FORCE OF ADVERBS.

239. The Latin often uses an Adjective where the English idiom employs an Adverb or an adverbial phrase; as,—

senātus frequēns convēnit, _the senate assembled in great numbers_;

fuit assiduū cum, *he was constantly with me*.

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

240. 1. The Comparative often corresponds to the English Positive with '*rather*,' '*somewhat*,' '*_too_*'; as,—

senectās est loquācior, _old age is rather talkative._

2. So the Superlative often corresponds to the Positive with '*_very_*'; as,—

vir fortissimus, *_a very brave man._*

3. Strengthening Words. Vel and quam are often used with the Superlative as strengthening particles, vel with the force of '*very*,' and quam with the force of '*_as possible_*'; as,—

vel maximus, *_the very greatest_*;

quam maximae cÅ piae, *as great forces as possible.*

4. Phrases of the type '*_more rich than brave_*' regularly take the Comparative in both members; as,—

exercitus erat dÄ«tior quam fortior, *_the army was more rich than brave._*

OTHER PECULIARITIES.

241. 1. Certain Adjectives may be used to denote *a part of an object*, chiefly prÄ«mus, extrÄ«mus, summus, medius, Ä«nfimus, Ä«mus; as,—

summus mÄ ns, *_the top of the mountain_*;

extrÄ«mÄ hieme, *in the last part of the winter.*

2. Prior, prÄ«mus, ultimus, and postrÄ«mus are frequently equivalent to a relative clause; as,—

prÄ«mus eam vÄ«dÄ«, *_I was the first who saw her_*;

ultimus dÄ«cessit, *he was the last who withdrew.*

3. When multus and another adjective both limit the same noun et is generally used; as,—

multae et magnae cÄ gitÄ tiÄ nÄ«s, *_many (and) great thoughts_.*

* * * * *

CHAPTER IV.

—_Syntax of Pronouns._

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

242. 1. The Personal Pronouns as subjects of verbs are, as a rule, not expressed except for the purpose of *emphasis, contrast, or clearness*. Thus ordinarily:—

videÄ , *_I see_*; amat, *he loves.*

But ego tÄ« videÄ , et tÄ« mÄ« vidÄ«s, *_I see you, and you see me_.*

2. The Genitives meÄ«, tuÄ«, nostrÄ«, vestrÄ« are used only as Objective Genitives; nostrum and vestrum as Genitives of the Whole. Thus:—

memor tuÄ«, *_mindful of you_*;

dŕsŕderium vestrŕ, *_longing for you_;*

nŕmŕ vestrum, *no one of you.*

a. But nostrum and vestrum are regularly used in the place of the Possessive in the phrases omnium nostrum, omnium vestrum.

3. The First Plural is often used for the First Singular of Pronouns and Verbs. Compare the Eng. editorial 'we.'

4. When two Verbs govern the same object, the Latin does not use a pronoun with the second, as is the rule in English. Thus:—

virtŕs amŕcitiŕ s conciliat et cŕnservat, *virtue establishes friendships and maintains them* (not eŕ s cŕnservat).

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

243. 1. The Possessive Pronouns, as a rule, are not employed except for the purpose of *clearness*. Thus:—

patrem amŕ, *_I love my father_;*

dŕfŕliŕ morte flŕbŕs, *you wept for the death of your son.*

But—

dŕmorte fŕliŕ meŕ flŕbŕs, *you wept for the death of my son.*

a. When expressed merely for the sake of clearness, the possessive usually stands after its noun; but in order to indicate emphasis or contrast, it precedes; as,—

suŕmanŕlŕberŕs occŕdit, *_with his own hand he slew his children_;*

meŕquidem sentiŕ, *in my opinion at least.*

2. Sometimes the Possessive Pronouns are used with the force of an Objective Genitive; as,—

metus vester, *_fear of you_;*

dŕsŕderium tuum, *longing for you.*

3. For special emphasis, the Latin employs ipsŕus or ipsŕrum, in apposition with the Genitive idea implied in the Possessive; as,—

meŕipsŕus operŕ, *_by my own help_;*

nostrŕipsŕrum operŕ, *by our own help.*

a. So sometimes other Genitives; as,—

meŕŕnŕus operŕ, *by the assistance of me alone.*

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

244. 1. The Reflexive Pronoun *sē* and the Possessive Reflexive *suus* have a double use:—

I. They may refer to the subject of the clause (either principal or subordinate) in which they stand,—'Direct Reflexives'; as,—

sē amant, *they love themselves*;

suus amant, *he helps his own friends*;

eum rogavit, *ut servaret, I besought him to save himself.*

II. They may stand in a subordinate clause and refer to the subject of the principal clause,—'Indirect Reflexives'; as,—

me rogavit ut *se* defenderem, *he besought me to defend him* (lit. *that I defend himself*);

me rogavit ut fortunarum suarum defensio susciperem, *they besought me to undertake the defense of their fortunes.*

a. The Indirect Reflexive is mainly restricted to those clauses which express the thought, not of the author, but of the subject of the principal clause.

2. The Genitive *suus* is regularly employed, like *meus* and *tuus*, as an Objective Genitive, *e.g.* *obliviscens* *suus*, *forgetful of himself*; but it occasionally occurs—particularly in post-Augustan writers—in place of the Possessive *suus*; as, *fruitur* *suus*, *he enjoys his own fame.*

3. *Sē* and *suus* are sometimes used in the sense, *one's self*, *one's own*, where the reference is not to any particular person; as,—

sē amare, *to love one's self*;

suum genium propitiare, *to propitiate one's own genius*.

4. *Suus* sometimes occurs in the meaning *his own*, *their own*, etc., referring not to the subject but to an oblique case; as,—

Hannibalem *sui* *comprobat*, *his own fellow-citizens drove out Hannibal.*

a. This usage is particularly frequent in combination with *quisque*; as,—

suus *quemque* error vexat, *his own error troubles each.*

5. The Reflexives for the first and second persons are supplied by the oblique cases of *ego* and *tū* (§ 85); as,—

vos defenditis, *you defend yourselves.*

RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS.

245. 1. The Latin has no special reciprocal pronoun ('each other'), but expresses the reciprocal notion by the phrases: *inter* *nos*, *inter* *vos*, *inter* *se*; as,—

Belgae obsidēs inter sēs dedērunt, *the Belgae gave each other hostages* (lit. *among themselves*);

amāmus inter nōs, *we love each other*;

Gallī inter sēs cohortātī sunt, *the Gauls exhorted each other*.

a. Note that the Object is not expressed in sentences of this type.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Hic, Ille, Iste.

246. 1. Where hic and ille are used in contrast, hic usually refers to the latter of two objects, and ille to the former.

2. Hic and ille are often used in the sense of 'the following'; as,—

Themistocles hic verba epistulam misit, *Themistocles sent a letter (couched) in the following words*;

illud intellego, omnium ora in me conversa esse, *I understand this, that the faces of all are turned toward me*.

3. Ille often means *the famous*; as, Solon ille, *the famous Solon*.

4. Iste frequently involves contempt; as, iste homo, *that fellow!*

5. The above pronouns, along with is, are usually attracted to the gender of a predicate noun; as, hic est honor, meminisse officium suum, *this is an honor, to be mindful of one's duty*.

Is.

247. 1. Is often serves as the antecedent of the relative quod. Thus:—

Maximum, eum quod Tarentum recēpit, diligētia, *I loved Maximus, the man who retook Tarentum*.

a. Closely akin to this usage is is in the sense of *such* (= talis); as,—

nō sum is qui terreat, *I am not such a person as to be frightened*.

b. Note the phrase id quod, where id stands in apposition with an entire clause; as,—

nō suspicatur (id quod nunc sentiet) satis multos testes reliquos esse, *he did not suspect (a thing which he will now perceive) that we had witnesses enough left*.

Yet quod alone, without preceding id, sometimes occurs in this use.

2. Is also in all cases serves as the personal pronoun of the third person, 'he,' 'she,' 'it,' 'they,' 'them.'

3. When the English uses 'that of,' 'those of,' to avoid repetition of the noun, the Latin omits the pronoun: as,—

in exercitū Sullae et postea in Crassi fuerat, *he had been in the army of Sulla and afterward in that of Crassus*;

Nullae mihi fabulae dulciae lectant nisi Plauti, *no plays delight me except those of Plautus*.

4. Note the phrases et is, et ea, etc., in the sense: *and that too*; as,—

vincula, et ea sempiterna, *imprisonment, and that too permanently*.

Adem.

248. 1. Adem in apposition with the subject or object often has the force of *also, likewise*; as,—

quod idem mihi contigit, *which likewise happened to me* (lit. *which, the same thing*);

bonus vir, quem eundem sapientem appellamus, *a good man, whom we call also wise*.

For Adem atque (ac), *the same as*, see § 341, 1. c.

Iipse.

249. 1. Iipse, literally *self*, acquires its special force from the context; as,—

eius ipsius die, *on that very day*;

ad ipsam ripam, *close to the bank*;

ipsa terrore, *by mere fright*;

valvae ipsae aperuerunt, *the doors opened of their own accord*;

ipse aderat, *he was present in person*.

2. The reflexive pronouns are often emphasized by the addition of ipse, but ipse in such cases, instead of standing in apposition with the reflexive, more commonly agrees with the subject; as,—

sibi cum ipsis loquuntur, *they talk with themselves*;

sibi ipse continere non potest, *he cannot contain himself*.³ Iipse is also used as an Indirect Reflexive for the purpose of *marking a contrast or avoiding an ambiguity*; as,—

Persae pertimuerunt ne Alcibiades ab ipsis discederet et cum suis in gratiam rediret, *the Persians feared that Alcibiades would break with them and become reconciled with his countrymen*;

ea molestissimum ferre debent hominibus quae ipsorum culpa contracta sunt, *men ought to chafe most over those things which have been brought about by their own fault* (as opposed to the fault of others).

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

250. Agreement. 1. The Relative Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands; as,—

mulier quam vidimus, *the woman whom we saw*;

bona quibus fruimur, *the blessings which we enjoy*.

2. Where the antecedent is compound, the same principles for number and gender prevail as in case of predicate adjectives under similar conditions (see § 235, B, 2). Thus:—

pater et filius, qui capti sunt, *the father and son who were captured*;

stultitia et timiditas quae fugienda sunt, *folly and cowardice which must be shunned*;

honores et victoriae quae sunt fortuitae, *honors and victories, which are accidental*.

3. The Relative regularly agrees with a predicate noun (either Nominative or Accusative) instead of its antecedent; as,—

carcer, quae lautumiae vocantur, *the prison, which is called Lautumiae*;

Belgae, quae est tertia pars, *the Belgians, who are the third part*.

4. Sometimes the Relative takes its gender and number from the meaning of its antecedent; as,—

pars quae beati objecti sunt, *a part (of the men) who were thrown to beasts*.

5. Occasionally the Relative is attracted into the case of its antecedent; as,—

natus eam patre dicitur, *born of the father that I said*.

251. Antecedent. 1. The antecedent of the Relative is sometimes omitted; as,—

qui naturam sequitur sapiens est, *he who follows Nature is wise*.

2. The antecedent may be implied in a possessive pronoun (or rarely an adjective); as,—

nostra qui remansimus caedes, *the slaughter of us who remained*;

servorum tumultus, qui servos ac disciplina sublevant, *at the uprising of the slaves, whom experience and discipline assisted* (servorum = servorum).

3. Sometimes the antecedent is repeated with the Relative; as,—

erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus, *there were two routes, by which (routes)*.

4. Incorporation of Antecedent in Relative Clause. The antecedent is often incorporated in the relative clause. Thus:—

a) When the relative clause stands first; as,—

quam quisque novit artem, in hac scilicet exerceat, *let each one practice the branch which he knows*.

b) When the antecedent is an appositive; as,—

nā n longā“ Ä Tolā sÄ tium fÄ«nibus absunt, quae cÄ«vitÄ s est in prÄ vinciÄ , _they are not far from the borders of the Tolosates, a state which is in our province._

c) When the logical antecedent is a superlative; as,—

ThemistoclÄ“s dÄ“ servÄ«s suÄ«s, quem habuit fidÄ“lissimum, mÄ«sit, *Themistocles sent the most trusty slave he had.*

d) In expressions of the following type—

quÄ es prÄ«dentiÄ ; quae tua est prÄ«dentiÄ , *such is your prudence* (lit. _of which prudence you are; which is your prudence_).

5. The Relative is never omitted in Latin as it is in English. Thus *the boy I saw* must be *puer quem vÄ«dÄ«.*

6. The Relative is used freely in Latin, particularly at the beginning of a sentence, where in English we employ a demonstrative; as,—

quÄ factum est, _by this it happened_;

quae cum ita sint, _since this is so_;

quibus rÄ“bus cognitÄ«s, *when these things became known.*

7. The Relative introducing a subordinate clause may belong grammatically to a clause which is subordinate to the one it introduces; as,—

numquam dignÄ“ satis laudÄ rÄ« philosophia poterit, cui quÄ« pÄ reat, omne tempus aetÄ tis sine molestiÄ possit dÄ“gere, _philosophy can never be praised enough, since he who obeys her can pass every period of life without annoyance_ (lit. _he who obeys which, etc._).

Here *cui* introduces the subordinate clause *possit* and connects it with *philosophia*; but *cui* is governed by *pÄ reat*, which is subordinate to *possit*.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

252. 1. *Quis*, *any one*, is the weakest of the Indefinites, and stands usually in combination with *sÄ«*, *nisi*, *nÄ“*, *num*; as,—

sÄ« quis putat, *if any one thinks.*

2. *Aliquis* (adj. *aliquÄ«*) is more definite than *quis*, and corresponds usually to the English *some one*, *somebody*, _some_ ; as,—

nunc aliquis dÄ«cat miÄ«, _now let somebody tell me_;

utinam modo agÄ tur aliquid, *oh that something may be done.*

3. *QuÄ«dam*, *a certain one*, is still more definite than *aliquis*; as,—

homÄ quÄ«dam, *a certain man* (i.e., _one whom I have in mind_).

a. Quādam (with or without quasi, _as if_) is sometimes used in the sense: *a sort of, _kind of;_ as,---*
cognātia quaedam, *_a sort of relationship_;*

mors est quasi quaedam migrātia, *death is a kind of transfer as it were.*

4. Quisquam, *any one, any one whoever* (more general than quis), and its corresponding adjective ōllus, *any*, occur mostly in negative and conditional sentences, in interrogative sentences implying a negative, and in clauses of comparison; as,---

īustitia numquam nocet cuiquam, *_justice never harms anybody_;*

siquis sapiens fuit, *_if anybody was ever wise, Cato was_;*

potestne quisquam sine perturbātia ne animus scire, *_can anybody be angry without excitement?_*

siquis illud poterit, *_if it can be done in any way_;*

taetrius tyrannus fuit quam quisquam superiorum, *he was a viler tyrant than any of his predecessors.*

5. Quisque, *each one*, is used especially under the following circumstances:---

a) In connection with suus. See § 244, 4, a.

b) In connection with a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun; as,---

quod cuique obtigit, id teneat, *_what falls to each, that let him hold_.*

c) In connection with superlatives; as,---

optimus quisque, *all the best* (lit. *_each best one_*).

d) With ordinal numerals; as,---

quatuor quaeque annis, *every four years* (lit. *_each fifth year_*).

6. Nemo, *no one*, in addition to its other uses, stands regularly with adjectives used substantively; as,---

nemo mortalis, *_no mortal_;*

nemo Romanus, *no Roman.*

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

253. 1. Alius, *another*, and alter, *the other*, are often used correlatively; as,---

aliud loquitur, aliud sentit, *_he says one thing, he thinks another_;*

alii resistunt, alii fugiunt, *_some resist, others flee_;*

alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit, *_one ruined the army, the other sold it_;*

alterÄ« sÄ« in montem recÄ«pÄ«runt, alterÄ« ad impedÄ«menta sÄ« contulÄ«runt, _the one party retreated to the mountain, the others betook themselves to the baggage_.

2. Where the English says _one does one thing, another another_, the Latin uses a more condensed form of statement; as,—

alius aliud amat, _one likes one thing, another another_;

aliud aliÄ«s placet, _one thing pleases some, another others_.

a. So sometimes with adverbs; as,—

aliÄ« aliÄ« fugiunt, _some flee in one direction, others in another_.

3. The Latin also expresses the notion ' _each other_ ' by means of alius repeated; as,—

GallÄ« alius alium cohortÄ« tÄ« sunt, *the Gauls encouraged each other.*

4. CÄ«terÄ« means *the rest*, _all the others_ ; as,—

cÄ«terÄ«s praestÄ« re, *to be superior to all the others.*

5. ReliquÄ« means *the others* in the sense of *the rest, those remaining*,—hence is the regular word with numerals; as,—

reliquÄ« sex, *the six others.*

6. Nescio quis forms a compound indefinite pronoun with the force of _some one or other_ ; as,—

causidicus nescio quis, _some pettifogger or other_ ;

mÄ«sit nescio quem, _he sent some one or other_ ;

nescio quÄ« pactÄ« , *somehow or other.*

* * * * *

CHAPTER V.

—_Syntax of Verbs._

AGREEMENT.

With One Subject.

254. 1. Agreement in Number and Person. A Finite Verb agrees with its subject in Number and Person; as,—

vÄ« s vidÄ«tis, _you see_ ;

pater fÄ«liÄ«s Ä«nstituit, *the father trains his sons.*

2. Agreement in Gender. In the compound forms of the verb the participle regularly agrees with its subject in gender; as,—

sÄ“ditiÄ repressa est, *the mutiny was checked.*

3. But when a predicate noun is of different gender or number from its subject, the verb usually agrees with its nearest substantive; as,—

TarquiniÄ« mä terna patria erat, *_Tarquinius was his native country on his mother's side_;*

nÄ n omnis error stultitia est dÄ«cenda, *not every error is to be called folly.*

a. Less frequently the verb agrees with an appositive; as,—

CoriolÄ«, oppidum VolscÄ rum, captum est, *_Corioli, a town of the Volsci, was captured_.*

4. Construction according to Sense. Sometimes the verb agrees with its subject according to sense instead of strict grammatical form. Thus:—

a) In Number; as,—

multitÄ«dÄ hominum convÄ“nerant, *a crowd of men had gathered.*

b) In Gender; as,—

duo mä«lia crucibus adfÄ«xÄ« sunt, *_two thousand (men) were crucified_.*

With Two or More Subjects.

255. 1. Agreement in Number. With two or more subjects the verb is regularly plural; as,—

pater et fÄ«lius mortuÄ« sunt, *the father and son died.*

2. But sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest subject; viz.,—

a) When the verb precedes both subjects or stands between them; as,—

mortuus est pater et fÄ«lius;

pater mortuus est et fÄ«lius.

b) When the subjects are connected by aut; aut ... aut; vel ... vel; neque ... neque; as,—

neque pater neque fÄ«lius mortuus est, *neither father nor son died.*

3. When the different subjects are felt together as constituting a whole, the singular is used; as,—

temeritÄ s ignÄ rÄ tiÄ que vitiÄ sa est, *rashness and ignorance are bad.*

a. This is regularly the case in senÄ tus populusque RÄ mä nus.

4. Agreement in Person. With compound subjects of different persons the verb always takes the *first* person

rather than the *second*, and the *second* rather than the *third*; as,—

sÄ« tÄ« et Tullia valÄ“tis, ego et CicerÄ valÄ“mus, *if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well*.

5. Agreement in Gender. With subjects of different genders the participle in the compound tenses follows the same principles as laid down for predicate adjectives. See Å§ 235, B, 2.

VOICES.

256. 1. The Passive Voice sometimes retains traces of its original middle or reflexive meaning; as,—

ego nÄ n patiar eum dÄ“fendÄ«, *I shall not allow him to defend himself*.

2. In imitation of Greek usage many perfect passive participles are used by the poets as indirect middles, i.e. the subject is viewed as acting not upon itself, but as doing something *in his own interest*; as,—

vÄ“lÄ tus tempora, *having veiled his temples*.

a. Occasionally finite forms of the verb are thus used; as,—

tunicÄ indÄ«citur artÄ«s, *he covers his limbs with a tunic*.

3. Intransitive Verbs may be used impersonally in the passive; as,—

curritur, *people run* (lit. *it is run*);

ventum est, *he (they, etc.) came* (lit. *it was come*).

TENSES.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

257. 1. The Latin tenses express two distinct notions:—

a) The *period of time* to which the action belongs: Present, Past, or Future.

b) The *kind of action*: Undefined, Going on, or Completed.

The Latin with its six tenses is able to express each of the three kinds of action for each of the three periods of time (making practically nine tenses). It does this by employing certain tenses in more than one way, as may be seen by the following table:—

KIND OF PERIOD OF TIME. ACTION. PRESENT. PAST. FUTURE. UNDEFINED Present: Historical Future: scrÄ«bÄ , *I write*. Perfect: scrÄ«bam, *I shall scrÄ«psÄ«, I write*. wrote_. GOING ON. Present: Imperfect: Future: scrÄ«bÄ , *I am scrÄ«bÄ“bam, I was scrÄ«bam, I shall writing*. writing_. be writing_. COMPLETED. Present Pluperfect: Future Perfect: Perfect: scrÄ«pseram, *I had scrÄ«pserÄ , I scrÄ«psÄ«, I have written*. shall have written_. written_.

2. It will be seen that the Present may express Undefined action or action Going on; so also the Future. The Perfect likewise has a double use, according as it denotes action Completed in present time (Present Perfect) or Undefined action belonging to past time (Historical Perfect).

Principal and Historical Tenses.

258. Tenses which denote Present or Future time are called Principal (or Primary) Tenses, those which denote Past time are called Historical (or Secondary).

The Principal Tenses of the Indicative are: Present, Future, Present Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Historical Tenses are: Imperfect, Historical Perfect, Pluperfect.

Present Indicative.

259. Besides the two uses indicated in the table, the Present Indicative presents the following peculiarities:—

1. It is used to denote *a general truth*, i.e. something true not merely in the present but at all times ('Gnomic Present'); as,—

virtus conciliat amicitias et conservat, *virtue establishes ties of friendship and maintains them* (i.e. always does so).

2. It is used of an attempted action ('Conative Present'); as,—

dum vitia, in contraria currunt, *while they try to avoid vices, they rush into opposite ones*.

3. In lively narration the Present is often used of a past action ('Historical Present'); as,—

Caesar imperat magnum numerum obsidum, *Caesar demanded a large number of hostages* (lit. *demands*).

4. In combination with jam, jam diu, jam pridem, and similar words, the Present is frequently used of an action originating in the past and continuing in the present; as,—

jam pridem cupi te visere, *I have long been desiring to visit you* (i.e. I desire and have long desired).

Imperfect Indicative.

260. 1. The Imperfect primarily denotes action *going on in past time*; as,—

librum legebam, *I was reading a book*.

a. This force makes the Imperfect especially adapted to serve as the tense of *description* (as opposed to mere *narration*).

2. From the notion of action *going on*, there easily develops the notion of *repeated* or *customary* action; as,—

interrogabat, *he kept asking the envoys*;

C. Duilius vidit puer, *as a boy I often used to see Gaius Duilius*.

3. The Imperfect often denotes an attempted action ('Conative Imperfect') or an action as beginning ('Inceptive Imperfect'); as,—

hostis nostris in mare nostrum praegrediebant, *the enemy tried to prevent*

(prohibÄ“bant) *our men from advancing within the fortifications* ('Conative');

ad proelium sÄ“ expediÄ“bant, *they were beginning to get ready for battle* ('Inceptive').

4. The Imperfect, with jam, jam diÄ«, jam dÄ«dum, etc., is sometimes used of an action which had been continuing some time; as,—

domicilium RÄ mae multÄ s jam annÄ s habÄ“bat, *he had had his residence at Rome for many years* (i.e. he had it at this time and had long had it).

Future Indicative.

261. 1. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future than is the English. We say: '_If he comes, I shall be glad_', where we really mean: '*If he shall come,*' etc. In such cases the Latin rarely admits the Present, but generally employs the Future.

2. Sometimes the Future has Imperative force; as, dÄ«cÄ“s, *_say!_*

Perfect Indicative.

262. A. PRESENT PERFECT. Several Present Perfects denote the *state resulting from a completed act*, and so seem equivalent to the Present; as,—

nÄ vÄ«, cognÄ vÄ«, *I know* (lit. *_I have become acquainted with_*);

cÄ nsuÄ“vÄ«, *I am wont* (lit. *_I have become accustomed_*).

B. HISTORICAL PERFECT. The Historical Perfect is the tense of *narration* (as opposed to the Imperfect, the tense of *_description_*); as,—

RÄ“gulus in senÄ tum vÄ“nit, mandÄ ta exposuit, reddÄ« captivÄ s negÄ vit esse Ä«tile, *_Regulus came into the Senate, set forth his commission, said it was useless for captives to be returned_*.

1. Occasionally the Historical Perfect is used of a general truth ('Gnomic Perfect').

Pluperfect Indicative.

263. The Latin Pluperfect, like the English Past Perfect, denotes an act *_completed in the past_*; as,—

Caesar RhÄ“num trÄ nsÄ«re dÄ“crÄ“verat, sed nÄ vÄ“s deerant, *_Caesar had decided to cross the Rhine, but had no boats_*.

a. In those verbs whose Perfect has Present force (Ä§ 262, A), the Pluperfect has the force of an Imperfect; as,—

nÄ veram, *I knew*.

Future Perfect Indicative.

264. The Future Perfect denotes an action *completed in future time*. Thus:—

scrÄ«bam epistulam, cum redieris, *I will write the letter when you have returned* (lit. *_when you shall have*

returned_).

a. The Latin is much more exact in the use of the Future Perfect than the English, which commonly employs the Present Perfect instead of the Future Perfect.

b. In those verbs whose Perfect has Present force (Â§ 262, A) the Future Perfect has the force of a Future; as,—

nÅ verÅ , *I shall know.*

Epistolary Tenses.

265. In letters the writer often uses tenses which are not appropriate at the time of writing, but which will be so at the time when his letter is received; he thus employs the Imperfect and the Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Present Perfect; as,—

nihil habÄ“bam quod scrÄ«berem, neque enim novÄ« quidquam audieram et ad tuÄ s omnÄ“s epistulÄ s jam rescrÄ«pseram, _I have nothing to write, for I have heard no news and have already answered all your letters_.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

266. A. In Independent sentences. See Â§ 272–280.

B. In Dependent Sentences. In dependent sentences the tenses of the subjunctive usually conform to the so-called

Sequence of Tenses.

267. 1. In the Subjunctive the Present and Perfect are Principal tenses, the Imperfect and Pluperfect, Historical.

2. By the Sequence of Tenses Principal tenses are followed by Principal, Historical by Historical. Thus:—

PRINCIPAL SEQUENCE,—

videÅ quid faciÄ s, *I see what you are doing.*

vidÄ“bÅ quid faciÄ s, *I shall see what you are doing.*

vÄ«derÅ quid faciÄ s, *I shall have seen what you are doing.*

videÅ quid fÄ“cerÄ«s, *I see what you have done.*

vidÄ“bÅ quid fÄ“cerÄ«s, *I shall see what you have done.*

vÄ«derÅ quid fÄ“cerÄ«s, *I shall have seen what you have done.*

HISTORICAL SEQUENCE,—

vidÄ“bam quid facerÄ“s, *I saw what you were doing.*

vÄ«dÄ« quid facerÄ«s, *I saw what you were doing.*

vÄ«deram quid facerÄ«s, *I had seen what you were doing.*

vidÄ«bam quid fÄ«cissÄ«s, *I saw what you had done.*

vÄ«dÄ« quid fÄ«cissÄ«s, *I saw what you had done.*

vÄ«deram quid fÄ«cissÄ«s, *I had seen what you had done.*

3. The Present and Imperfect Subjunctive denote incomplete action, the Perfect and Pluperfect completed action, exactly as in the Indicative.

Peculiarities of Sequence.

268. 1. The Perfect Indicative is usually an historical tense (even when translated in English as a Present Perfect), and so is followed by the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; as,—

dÄ«mÄ nstrÄ vÄ« quÄ rÄ« ad causam accÄ«derem, *I have shown why I took the case* (lit. *I showed why*, etc.).

2. A dependent Perfect Infinitive is treated as an historical tense wherever, if resolved into an equivalent Indicative, it would be historical; as,—

videor ostendisse quÄ lÄ«s deÄ« essent, *I seem to have shown of what nature the gods are* (ostendisse here corresponds to an Indicative, ostendÄ«, *_I showed_*).

3. The Historical Present is sometimes regarded as a principal tense, sometimes as historical. Thus:—

Sulla suÄ s hortÄ tur ut fortÄ« animÄ sint, *_Sulla exhorts his soldiers to be stout-hearted_;*

GallÄ s hortÄ tur ut arma caperent, *he exhorted the Gauls to take arms.*

4. Conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type are not affected by the principles for the Sequence of Tenses; as,—

honestum tÄ le est ut, vel sÄ« ignÄ rÄ rent id hominÄ«s, suÄ tamen pulchritÄ«dine laudabÄ«le esset, *_virtue is such a thing that even if men were ignorant of it, it would still be worthy of praise for its own loveliness_.*

5. In conditional sentences of the 'contrary-to-fact' type the Imperfect Subjunctive is usually treated as an Historical tense; as,—

sÄ« sÄ lÄ s eÄ s dÄ«cerÄ«s miserÄ s, quibus moriendum esset, nÄ«minem tÄ« quidem eÄ rum quÄ« vÄ«verent exciperÄ«s, *_if you called only those wretched who must die, you would except no one of those who live_.*

6. In clauses of Result and some others, the Perfect Subjunctive is sometimes used as an historical tense. Thus:—

rÄ«x tantum mä tus est, ut Tissaphernem hostem jÄ«dicÄ rit, *the king was so much moved that he adjudged Tissaphernes an enemy.*

This construction is rare in Cicero, but frequent in Nepos and subsequent historians. The Perfect Subjunctive in this use represents a result simply *as a fact without reference to the continuance of the act*, and therefore corresponds to an Historical Perfect Indicative of direct statement. Thus, *jūdicā rit* in the above example corresponds to *adjūdicā vit*, *he adjudged*. To denote a result as *something continuous*, all writers use the Imperfect Subjunctive after historical tenses.

7. Sometimes perspicuity demands that the ordinary principles of Sequence be abandoned altogether. Thus:

a) We may have the Present or Perfect Subjunctive after an historical tense; as,—

Verrēs Siciliam ita perdidit ut ea restituā nō n possit, *Verres so ruined Sicily that it cannot be restored* (Direct statement: *nō n potest restitui*);

Ardebat Hortēnsius dē cendā cupiditē te scē, ut in nōllā flagrantius studium vēderim, *Hortensius burned so with eagerness to speak that I have seen in no one a greater desire* (Direct statement: *in nōllā vēdā*, *_I have seen in no one_*).

NOTE.—This usage is different from that cited under 6. Here, by neglect of Sequence, the Perfect is used, though a principal tense; there the Perfect was used as an historical tense.

b) We may have a principal tense followed by the Perfect Subjunctive used historically; as,—

nesciō quid causae fuerit cūr nōllā s ad mē litterā s darēs, *I do not know what reason there was why you did not send me a letter*.

Here *fuerit* is historical, as is shown by the following Imperfect Subjunctive.

Method of Expressing Future Time in the Subjunctive.

269. The Future and Future Perfect, which are lacking to the Latin Subjunctive, are supplied in subordinate clauses as follows:—

1. a) The Future is supplied by the Present after principal tenses, by the Imperfect after historical tenses.

b) The Future Perfect is supplied by the Perfect after principal tenses, by the Pluperfect after historical tenses.

This is especially frequent when the context clearly shows, by the presence of a future tense in the main clause, that the reference is to future time. Thus:—

Gallā pollicentur scē factūrā s, quae Caesar imperet, *_the Gauls promise they will do what Caesar shall order_*;

Gallā pollicēbantur scē factūrā s, quae Caesar imperā ret, *_the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should order_*;

Gallā pollicentur scē factūrā s quae Caesar imperā verit, *_the Gauls promise they will do what Caesar shall have ordered_*;

Gallā pollicēbantur scē factūrā s quae Caesar imperā visset, *_the Gauls promised they would do what Caesar should have ordered_*.

2. Even where the context does not contain a Future tense in the main clause, Future time is often expressed in

the subordinate clauses by the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive. Thus:—

timeŃ nŃ“ veniat, _I am afraid he will come_;

Caesar exspectŃ bat quid cŃ nsilŃ« hostŃ“s caperent, *Caesar was waiting to see what plan the enemy would adopt.*

3. Where greater definiteness is necessary, the periphrastic forms in –Ń«rus sim and –Ń«rus essem are employed, especially in clauses of Result, Indirect Questions, and after nŃ n dubitŃ quŃ«n; as,—

nŃ n dubitŃ quŃ«n pater ventŃ«rus sit, _I do not doubt that my father will come_;

nŃ n dubitŃ bam quŃ«n pater ventŃ«rus esset, *I did not doubt that my father would come.*

4. Where the verb has no Future Active Participle, or where it stands in the passive voice, its Future character may be indicated by the use of the particles mox, brevŃ«, statim, etc., in connection with the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive; as,—

nŃ n dubitŃ quŃ«n tŃ“ mox hŃ«jus reŃ« paeniteat, _I do not doubt that you will soon repent of this thing;_

nŃ n dubitŃ bam quŃ«n haec rŃ“s brevŃ« cŃ nŃficerŃ“tur, _I did not doubt that this thing would soon be finished._

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

270. 1. The tenses of the Infinitive denote time not absolutely, but _with reference to the verb on which they depend._ Thus:—

a) The Present Infinitive represents an act as *contemporaneous with* the time of the verb on which it depends; as,—

vidŃ“tur honŃ rŃ“s adsequŃ«, _he seems to be gaining honors_;

vidŃ“bŃ tur honŃ rŃ“s adsequŃ«, *he seemed to be gaining honors.*

b) The Perfect Infinitive represents an act as *prior to* the time of the verb on which it depends; as,—

vidŃ“tur honŃ rŃ“s adsecŃ«tus esse, _he seems to have gained honors_;

vŃ«sus est honŃ rŃ“s adsecŃ«tus esse, *he seemed to have gained honors.*

c) The Future Infinitive represents an act as *subsequent to* that of the verb on which it depends; as,—

vidŃ“tur honŃ rŃ“s adsecŃ«tŃ«rus esse, _he seems to be about to gain honors_;

vŃ«sus est honŃ rŃ“s adsecŃ«tŃ«rus esse, *he seemed to be about to gain honors.*

2. Where the English says '*ought to have done,*' '*might have done,*' etc., the Latin uses dŃ“buŃ«, oportuit, potuŃ« (dŃ“bŃ“bam, oportŃ“bat, poteram), with the Present Infinitive; as,—

dŃ“buit dŃ«cere, *he ought to have said* (lit. _owed it to say_);

opÅ rtuit venÄ«re, *_he ought to have come_;*

potuit vidÄ«re, *he might have seen.*

a. Oportuit, volÄ , nÄ lÄ (and in poetry some other verbs), may take a Perfect Infinitive instead of the Present; as,---

hÄ c jam prÄ«dem factum esse oportuit, *this ought long ago to have been done.*

3. PERIPHRASTIC FUTURE INFINITIVE. Verbs that have no Participial Stem, express the Future Infinitive Active and Passive by fore ut or futÄ«rum esse ut, with the Subjunctive; as,---

spÄ«rÄ fore ut tÄ« paeniteat levitÄ tis, *I hope you will repent of your fickleness* (lit. *_hope it will happen that you repent_;*)

spÄ«rÄ futÄ«rum esse ut hostÄ«s arceantur, *I hope that the enemy will be kept off.*

a. The Periphrastic Future Infinitive is often used, especially in the Passive, even in case of verbs which have the Participial Stem; as,---

spÄ«rÄ fore ut hostÄ«s vincantur, *I hope the enemy will be conquered.*

4. Passives and Deponents sometimes form a Future Perfect Infinitive with fore; as,---

spÄ«rÄ epistolam scrÄ«ptam fore, *_I hope the letter will have been written_;*

dÄ«cÄ mä« satis adeptum fore, *I say that I shall have gained enough.*

THE MOODS.

MOODS IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

The Indicative in Independent Sentences.

271. The Indicative is used for the *statement of facts*, *the supposition of facts*, or *inquiry after facts*.

1. Note the following idiomatic uses:---

a) With possum; as,---

possum multa dÄ«cere, *_I might say much_;*

poteram multa dÄ«cere, *I might have said much* (Ä§ 270, 2).

b) In such expressions as longum est, aequum est, melius est, difficile est, Ä«tilius est, and some others; as,---

longum est ea dÄ«cere, *_it would be tedious to tell that_;*

difficile est omnia persequÄ«, *it would be difficult to enumerate everything.*

The Subjunctive in Independent Sentences.

272. The Subjunctive is used in Independent Sentences to express something—

1. As willed—Volitive Subjunctive; 2. As desired—Optative Subjunctive; 3. Conceived of as possible—Potential Subjunctive.

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

273. The Volitive Subjunctive represents the action *as willed*. It always implies authority on the part of the speaker, and has the following varieties:—

A. HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

274. The Hortatory Subjunctive expresses *an exhortation*. This use is confined to the first person plural of the Present. The negative is *nÄ“*. Thus:—

eÄ“ mus, *_let us go_*;

amÄ“ mus patriam, *_let us love our country_*;

nÄ“ dÄ“ spÄ“ rÄ“ mus, *let us not despair*.

B. JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

275. The Jussive Subjunctive expresses a *command*. The Jussive stands regularly in the Present Tense, and is used—

1. Most frequently in the third singular and the third plural; as,—

dÄ“cat, *_let him tell_*;

dÄ“cant, *_let them tell_*;

quÄ“ rÄ“ sÄ“ cÄ“ dant improbÄ“, *_wherefore let the wicked depart!_*

2. Less frequently in the second person, often with indefinite force; as,—

istÄ“ bonÄ“ Ä“tÄ“ re, *_use that advantage_*;

modestÄ“ vÄ“vÄ“ s, *live temperately*.

C. PROHIBITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

276. The Subjunctive is used in the second and third persons singular and plural, with *nÄ“*, to express *a prohibition*. Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning; as,—

nÄ“ repugnÄ“tis, *_do not resist!_*

tÄ“ vÄ“ rÄ“ istam nÄ“ relÄ“ querÄ“ s, *_don't leave her!_*

impiÄ“ nÄ“ plÄ“ cÄ“ re audeant deÄ“ s, *_let not the impious dare to appease the gods!_*

a. Neither of these constructions is frequent in classical prose.

b. A commoner method of expressing a prohibition in the second person is by the use of *nā lā«* (*nā lā«te*) with a following infinitive, or by *cavā“* or *cavā“ nā“* with the Subjunctive; as,—

nā lā« hā c facere, _don't do this_ (lit. _be unwilling to do_)!

nā lā«te mentā«rā«, _do not lie!_

cavā“ ignā scā s, cavā“ tā“ misereat, _do not forgive, do not pity!_

cavā“ nā“ haec faciā s, *do not do this* (lit. _take care lest you do_)!

D. DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

277. The Deliberative Subjunctive is used _in questions and exclamations implying doubt, indignation, the impossibility of an act, obligation, or propriety_. The Present is used referring to present time, the Imperfect referring to past. The negative is *nā n*. Thus:—

quid faciam, _what shall I do?_

ego redeam, _I go back!_

huic cā“dā mus! hā«jus condiciā nā“s audiā mus! _are we to bow to him! are we to listen to his terms!_

quid facerem, _what was I to do?_

hunc ego nā n dā«ligam, _should I not cherish this man?_

a. These Deliberative Questions are usually purely Rhetorical in character, and do not expect an answer.

E. CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

278. The Subjunctive is used to indicate something *as granted or conceded for the sake of argument*. The Present is used for present time, the Perfect regularly for past. The negative is *nā“*. Thus:—

sit hā c vā“rum, *I grant that this is true* (lit. _let this be true_);

nā“ sint in senectā«te vā«rā“s, *I grant there is not strength in old age*;

fuerit malus cā«vis aliā«s; tibi quandā esse coepit, *I grant that he was a bad citizen to others; when did he begin to be so toward you?*

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

279. The Optative Subjunctive occurs in expressions of *wishing*. The negative is regularly *nā“*.

1. The Present Tense, often accompanied by *utinam*, is used where the wish is conceived of *as possible*.

dā« istaec prohibeant, _may the gods prevent that!_

falsus utinam vā tā“s sim, _oh that I may be a false prophet!_

nā“ veniant, _may they not come!_

2. The Imperfect expresses, in the form of a wish, the *regret that something is not so now*; the Pluperfect that something *was not so in the past*. The Imperfect and Pluperfect are regularly accompanied by *utinam*; as,—

utinam istud ex animo diceretis, would that you were saying that in earnest (i.e. I regret that you are not saying it in earnest);

Patro dicitur utinam evasisset Apollinis arcum, would that Achilles had escaped the bow of Apollo;
utinam non natus essem, would that I had not been born.

POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

280. The Potential Subjunctive expresses *a possibility*. The negative is *non*. The following uses are to be noted:—

1. The 'May' Potential.—The Potential Subjunctive may designate *a mere possibility* (English auxiliary *may*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. Thus:—

dicitur aliquis, some one may say;

dixerit aliquis, some one may say.

a. This construction is by no means frequent, and is confined mainly to a few phrases like those given as examples.

2. 'Should'-'Would' Potential.—The Potential Subjunctive may represent something as *depending upon a condition expressed or understood* (English auxiliary *should, would*). Both Present and Perfect occur, and without appreciable difference of meaning. Thus:—

fortius citius reperire quam retinere, one would more quickly find Fortune than keep it (i.e. if one should make the trial);

crediderim, I should believe.

a. Here belongs the use of *velim, malletim, nolim*, as softened forms of statement for *volam, malleam, nolem*. Thus:—

velim mihi ignoscere, I wish you would forgive me;

nolim putare te jocari, I don't want you to think I'm joking.

b. When the condition is expressed, we get one of the regular types of Conditional Sentences (see § 303); as,—

diu dicitur fieri, scilicet cum numero re causis, time would fail if I should attempt to enumerate the reasons.

3. 'Can'-'Could' Potential.—In the Present and Imperfect the Potential occurs in the second person singular (with *indefinite* force; § 356, 3) of a few verbs of *perceiving, seeing, thinking*, and the like; as,—

videat, cernat, one can see, one can perceive;

crÄ“derÄ“s, _one could believe_;

vidÄ“rÄ“s, cernerÄ“s, *one could see*, _perceive_;

putÄ“rÄ“s, *one could imagine*.

4. The Imperfect and Pluperfect in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of the contrary-to-fact type (see Â§ 304) are also Potential in character. By omission of the Protasis, such an Apodosis sometimes stands alone, particularly vellem, nÄ llem, mÄ llem; as,—

vellem id quidem, *I should wish that* (i.e. were I bold enough).

The Imperative.

281. The Imperative is used in *commands*, *admonitions* and *entreaties* (negative nÄ“), as,—

Ä“grederere ex urbe, _depart from the city_;

mihi ignÄ sce, _pardon me_;

valÄ“, *farewell*.

1. The Present is the tense of the Imperative most commonly used, but the Future is employed—

a) Where there is a distinct reference to future time, especially in the apodosis of conditional sentences; as,—

rem vÄ bÄ«s prÄ pÄ nam; vÄ s eam penditÄ te, _I will lay the matter before you; do you (then) consider it_;

sÄ« bene disputÄ bit, tribuitÄ litterÄ«s Graecis, _if he shall speak well, attribute it to Greek literature._

b) In laws, treaties, wills, maxims, etc.; as,—

cÄ nsulÄ“s summum jÄ«s habentÄ , _the consuls shall have supreme power_;

hominem mortuom in urbe nÄ“ sepelÄ«tÄ , _no one shall bury a dead body in the city_;

amÄ«citia rÄ“gÄ« AntiochÄ cum populÄ RÄ mÄ nÄ hÄ«s legibus et condiciÄ nibus estÄ , _let there be friendship between Antiochus and the Roman people on the following terms and conditions_;

quÄ rtae estÄ partis MÄ rcus hÄ“rÄ“s, _let Marcus be heir to a fourth (of the property)_;

ignÄ scitÄ saepe alterÄ«, numquam tibi, _forgive your neighbor often, yourself never_.

2. Except with the Future Imperative the negative is not used in classical prose. Prohibitions are regularly expressed in other ways. See Â§ 276, b.

3. Questions in the Indicative introduced by quÄ«n (_why not?_) are often equivalent to an Imperative or to the Hortatory Subjunctive; as,—

quÄ«n abÄ«s, _go away!_ (lit. _why don't you go away?_);

quā«n vā cem continētis, *_keep still!_* (lit. *_why don't you stop your voices?_*);

quā«n equā s cā nscendimus, *let us mount our horses* (lit. *_why do we not mount our horses?_*)

MOODS IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Clauses of Purpose.

282. 1. Clauses of Purpose are introduced most commonly by *ut* (*ut*«), *quā* (*that, _in order that_*), *nā*« (*_in order that not, lest_*), and stand in the Subjunctive, as,—

edimus ut vā«vā mus, _we eat that we may live;_

adjā«tā mā« quā hā c fā«at facilius, _help me, in order that this may be done more easily;_

portā s clausit, nā« quam oppidā nā« injā«riam acciperent, _he closed the gates, lest the townspeople should receive any injury._

a. *Quā* , as a rule, is employed only when the purpose clause contains a comparative or a comparative idea. Occasional exceptions occur; as,—

haec faciunt quā Chremā«tem absterreant, _they are doing this in order to frighten Chremes._

b. *Ut nā*« is sometimes found instead of *nā*«. Thus:—

ut nā« quid neglegenter agā mus, in order that we may not do anything carelessly.

c. *Ut nā* n (not *nā*«) is used where the negation belongs to some single word, instead of to the purpose clause as a whole. Thus:—

ut nā n ā«jectus ad aliā«nā s, sed invā«tā tus ad tuā s videā re, _that you may seem not driven out among strangers, but invited to your own friends._

d. To say '*_and that not_*' or '*or that not,*' the Latin regularly uses *nā*«ve (*neu*); as,—

ut eā rum rā«rum vā«s minuerā«tur, neu pontā« nocā«rent, _that the violence of these things might be lessened, and that they might not harm the bridge;_

profā«git, nā« caperā«tur nā«ve interficerā«tur, _he fled, that he might not be captured or killed._

e. But *neque* (for *nā*«ve) is sometimes used in a second Purpose Clause when *ut* stands in the first, and, after the Augustan era, even when the first clause is introduced by *nā*«.

f. Purpose Clauses sometimes stand in apposition with a preceding noun or pronoun: as,—

hā c causā , ut pā cem habā«rent, _on this account, that they might have peace._

2. A Relative Pronoun (*quā*«) or Adverb (*ubi, unde, quā*) is frequently used to introduce a Purpose Clause; as,—

Helvā«tiā« lā«gā tā s mittunt, quā« dā«cerent, the Helvetii sent envoys to say (lit. *_who should say_*);

haec habuÄ«_Ä, dÄ« senectÄ«te quae dÄ«cerem, _I had these things to say about old age_;

nÄ« n habÄ«bant quÄ« sÄ« recipere, *they had no place to which to flee* (lit. _whither they might flee_).

a. QuÄ« in such clauses is equivalent to ut is, ut ego, etc.; ubi to ut ibi; unde to ut inde; quÄ« to ut eÄ«.

3. Relative Clauses of purpose follow dignus, indignus, and idÄ« neus; as,---

idÄ« neus fuit nÄ«mÄ« quem imitÄ« rÄ«re, *there was no one suitable for you to imitate* (cf. nÄ«mÄ« fuit quem imitÄ« rÄ«re, _there was no one for you to imitate_);

dignus est quÄ« aliquandÄ« imperet, *he is worthy to rule sometime*.

4. Purpose Clauses often depend upon something to be supplied from the context instead of upon the principal verb of their own sentences; as,---

ut haec omnia omittam, abiimus, _to pass over all this, _ (_I will say that_) we departed.

Clauses of Characteristic.

283. 1. A relative clause used *to express a quality or characteristic of a general or indefinite antecedent* is called a Clause of Characteristic, and usually stands in the Subjunctive; as,---

multa sunt, quae mentem acuant, _there are many things which sharpen the wits._

Clauses of Characteristic are opposed to those relative clauses which are used merely to state some fact about a definite antecedent, and which therefore take the Indicative; as,---

CatÄ« , senex jÄ«cundus, quÄ« SapiÄ«ns appellÄ«tus est, _Cato, a delightful old man, who was called 'The Wise.'_

The Clause of Characteristic implies '*a person of the sort that does something*'; the Indicative relative clause implies '*a particular person who does something*.'

2. Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such expressions as, est quÄ«; sunt quÄ«; nÄ«mÄ« est quÄ«; nÄ«llus est quÄ«; Ä«nus est quÄ«; sÄ«lus est quÄ«; quis est quÄ«; is quÄ«; etc. Thus:---

sunt quÄ« dÄ«cant, _there are (some) who say_;

nÄ«mÄ« est quÄ« nesciat, _there is nobody who is ignorant_;

sapientia est Ä«na quae maestitiam pellat, _philosophy is the only thing that drives away sorrow_;

quae cÄ«vitÄ«s est quae nÄ« n Ä«vertÄ« possit, _what state is there that cannot be overthrown?_

nÄ« n is sum quÄ« improbÄ«s laudem, _I am not the sort of man that praises the wicked._

a. Sometimes (very rarely in Cicero and Caesar) the clause of characteristic is used after comparatives; as,---

nÄ« n longius hostÄ«s aberant quam quÄ« tÄ«lum adigÄ« posset, *the enemy were not too far off for a dart to reach them* (lit. _further off than [a point] to which a dart could be cast_).

3. The Clause of Characteristic often conveys an accessory notion of cause (_since_) or opposition (_although_). Thus:—

a) Cause. The relative is then frequently accompanied by *ut, quæ* «*ppe, utpote; as,*—

Å fortÅ«nÅ te adulÅ“scÅ“ns, quÅ« tuæ virtÅ«tis HomÅ“rum præcÅ nem invÅ“nerÅ«s, _O fortunate man, since you have found a Homer as the herald of your valor_;

ut quÅ« optimÅ jÅ«re eam præ vinciam obtinuerit, since he held that province by excellent right.

b) Opposition:—

egomet quÅ« sÅ“rÅ GraecÅ s litterÅ s attigissem, tamen complÅ«rÅ“s diÅ“s AthÅ“nÅ«s commorÅ tus sum, _I, although I had taken up Greek literature late in life, nevertheless tarried several days at Athens_.

4. Clauses of Characteristic may also be introduced by *quæ* «*n = quæ* « (quæ, quod) *nÅ n; as,*—

nÅ“mÅ est quÅ«n saepe audierit, _there is no one who has not often heard_;

nÅ“mÅ fuit mÅ«litum quÅ«n vulnerÅ rÅ“tur, there was no one of the soldiers who was not wounded.

5. Related to Clauses of Characteristic are also phrases of the type:

quod sciam, _so far as I know_; *quem (quam, quod), audierim, so far as I have heard.*

Clauses of Result.

284. 1. Clauses of Result are usually introduced by *ut* (*that, _so that_*), negative *ut nÅ n* (*_so that not_*), and take the Subjunctive. The main clause often contains *tantus, tÅ lis, tot, is (= tÅ lis), tam, ita, sÅ«c, adeÅ* , or some similar word. Thus:—

quis tam dÅ“mÅ“ns est ut suÅ voluntÅ te maereat, _who is so senseless as to mourn of his own volition?_

Siciliam ita vÅ stÅ vit ut restituÅ« in antÅ«quum statum nÅ n possit, _he so ravaged Sicily that it cannot be restored to its former condition_;

mÅ ns altissimus impendÅ“bat, ut facile perpaucÅ« prohibÅ“re possent, _a very high mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily stop them_;

nÅ n is es ut tÅ“ pudor umquam Å turpitÅ«dine Å vocÅ rit, you are not so constituted that shame ever called you back from baseness.

2. A Result Clause is often introduced by a Relative Pronoun or Adverb, *quæ* « (= *ut is*), *quÅ* (= *ut eÅ*), etc.; *as,*—

nÅ“mÅ est tam senex quÅ« sÅ“ annum nÅ n putet posse vÅ«vere, _nobody is so old as not to think he can live a year_;

habÅ“tis eum cÅ nsulem quÅ« pÅ rÅ“re vestrÅ«s dÅ“crÅ“tÅ«s nÅ n dubitet, you have a consul such as does not hesitate to obey your decrees.

a. These Relative Clauses of Result are closely related to the Clause of Characteristic, and sometimes it is

difficult to distinguish the two constructions. It is best to class the relative clause as one of Characteristic, unless the result idea is clear and unmistakable.

3. Result clauses may also be introduced by *quærendum = ut nescias*; as,—

nihil tam difficile est quærendum quaerendum invenit quærendum possit, _nothing is so difficult that it cannot be discovered by searching_;

nemo tam fortis quærendum reus novit te perturbatur, *no one is so steadfast as not to be thrown into confusion by a strange occurrence.*

4. Note the use of *quam ut* (sometimes *quam* alone) to denote Result after comparatives; as,—

urbs erat multo tior quam ut primo impetu caperetur posset, *the city was too strongly fortified to be taken at the first attack* (lit. *more strongly fortified than [so] that it could be taken, etc.*).

Causal Clauses.

285. Causal clauses are introduced chiefly by the following particles:—

1. *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*. 2. *Cum*. 3. *Quandô*.

286. The use of moods is as follows:—

1. *Quod*, *quia*, *quoniam* take the Indicative when the reason is _that of the writer or speaker;_ they take the Subjunctive when the reason is viewed _as that of another._ Thus:—

Parthos timeo quod diffido ceteris nostris, *I fear the Parthians, because I distrust our troops.*

Themistocles, quia non tutus erat, Corcyram dimigravit, *Themistocles, since he was not safe, moved to Corcyra.*

neque me vixisse paenitet, quoniam bene vixi, *I do not regret having lived, since I have lived well.*

Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpere juvenem, *Socrates was arraigned on the ground that he was corrupting the young.* (Here the reason is not that of the writer but of the accuser. Hence the Subjunctive.)

Haedi Caesaris gratias agunt quod salvati sunt per eum, *the Haedi thanked Caesar because he had delivered them from danger.* (The reason of the Haedi.)

quoniam Miltiades dicere non posset, verba pro eo fecit Tisagoras, *since Miltiades could not speak, Tisagoras spoke for him.* (The reason of Tisagoras.)

nocturno ambulabat Themistocles, quod somnum capere non posset, *Themistocles used to walk at night because (as he said) he couldn't sleep.*

a. Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* often stand in the Subjunctive in causal clauses as though the act of thinking or saying, and not the contents of the thought or language, constituted the reason. Thus:—

Bellovacum suum numerum non complerent quod suum bellum gererent, *the Bellovaci did not furnish their complement, because they said they were going to wage war with the Romans on their own account.*

b. *Nā n quod, nā n quā* (by attraction for *nā n eā quod*), *nā n quia*, *not that*, *_not because_*; and *nā n quod nā n, nā n quā nā n, nā n quā n*, *_not that ... not_*; *_not because ... not_*; *not but that*, are usually employed merely to introduce a hypothetical reason, and hence take the Subjunctive; as,—

id fā cā, *nā n quod vā s hanc dā fā nsiā nem dā sā derā re arbitrā rer, sed ut omnā s intellegent*, *_this I did, not because I thought you needed this defense, but that all might perceive_*;

Crassā commendā tiā nem nā n sum pollicitus, nā n quā n eam valitā ram apud tā arbitrā rer, sed egā re mihi commendā tiā ne nā n vidā bā tur, *_I did not promise a recommendation to Crassus, not that I did not think it would have weight with you, but because he did not seem to me to need recommendation_*.

c. But clauses introduced by *nā n quod, nā n quā* take the Indicative *if they state a fact*, even though that fact is denied to be the reason for something; as,—

hā c ita sentiā, *nā n quia sum ipse augur, sed quia sā c exā stimā re nā s est necesse*, *_this I think, not because I am myself an augur (which I really am), but because it is necessary for us to think so_*.

2. *Cum* causal regularly takes the Subjunctive; as,—

quae cum ā ta sint, *_since this is so_*;

cum sā s mortā lis, quae mortā lia sunt, cā rā, *_since you are mortal, care for what is mortal_*.

a. Note the phrase *cum praesertim* (*praesertim cum*), *_especially since_*; as,—

Haeduā s accā sat, praesertim cum eā rum precibus adductus bellum suscā perit, *_he blamed the Haedui, especially since he had undertaken the war at their entreaties_*.

3. *Quandā* (less frequent than the other causal particles) governs the Indicative; as,—

id omittā, *quandā vā bā s ita placet*, *_I pass over that, since you so wish_*.

Temporal Clauses introduced by *Postquam, Ut, Ubi, Simul ac*, etc.

287. 1. *Postquam* (*posteā quam*), *_after_*; *ut, ubi*, *_when_*; *cum prā mum, simul, simul ac* (*simul atque*), *as soon as*, when used to refer to a single past act regularly take the Perfect Indicative; as,—

Epamā nā ndā s postquam audā vit vā cisse Boeā tiā s, 'Satis' inquit 'vā xā, *_Epaminondas, after he heard that the Boeotians had conquered, said, 'I have lived enough;'_*

id ut audā vit, Corcyram dā migrā vit, *_when he heard this, he moved to Corcyra_*;

Caesar cum prā mum potuit, ad exercitum contendit, *_Caesar, as soon as he could, hurried to the army_*;

ubi dā Caesaris adventā certiā rā s factā sunt, lā gā tā s ad eum mittunt, *_when they were informed of Caesar's arrival, they sent envoys to him_*.

a. The Historical Present may take the place of the Perfect in this construction.

2. To denote *the repeated occurrence* of an act, *ut, ubi, simul atque, as often as*, when following an historical tense, take the Pluperfect Indicative (compare §§ 288, 3; 302, 3); as,—

ut quisque Verris animum offenderat, in lautumiis statim coniciatur, _whenever anybody had offended Verres's feelings, he was forthwith put in the stone-quarry_;

hostis, ubi aliquis egressus conspexerant, adoriuntur, _whenever the enemy had seen any men disembarking, they attacked them_.

a. In Livy and succeeding historians the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used to denote this repeated occurrence of an act ('Indefinite Frequency'); as,—

id ubi dixisset hastam mittat, _whenever he had said that, he hurled a spear_.

3. Occasionally the above conjunctions are followed by the Pluperfect Indicative of a single occurrence. This is regularly the case with postquam in expressions denoting a definite interval of time (days, months, years, etc.), such as post tertium annum quam, triennio postquam. Thus:—

quaque post diebus quam Lucius discesserat, ad Sardiniam venit _five days after he had departed from Luca he came to Sardinia_;

postquam occupatae Syracusae erant, profectus est Carthaginem, _after Syracuse had been seized, he set out for Carthage_.

4. The Imperfect Indicative also sometimes occurs, to denote _a continued state;_ as,—

postquam Romanus adventavit, senatus consultus est, _after they were on the march toward Rome, the Senate was consulted_;

postquam stratum utrimque stavit, *after they had been drawn up on both sides and were in position.*

5. Rarely postquam, postquam, following the analogy of cum, take the Subjunctive, but only in the historical tenses; as,—

postquam quam sumpta fieri funera coepissent, laetae sunt, _after funerals had begun to be elaborate, they were done away with by law_.

Temporal Clauses introduced by *Cum*.

A. *Cum* REFERRING TO THE PAST.

288. 1. *Cum*, when referring to the past, takes,—

A. The Indicative (Imperfect, Historical Perfect, or Pluperfect) to denote *the point of time at which* something occurs.

B. The Subjunctive (Imperfect or Pluperfect) to denote *the situation or circumstances under which* something occurs.

Examples:—

INDICATIVE.

an tum eras consul, cum in Palatio mea domus ardebat, _or were you consul at the time when my house burned up on the Palatine?_

crÄ“dÄ tum cum Sicilia flÄ rÄ“bat opibus et cÄ piÄ«s magna artificia fuisse in eÄ Ä«nsulÄ , _I believe that at the time when Sicily was powerful in riches and resources there were great crafts in that island_;

eÄ tempore pÄ ruit cum pÄ rÄ“re necesse erat, _he obeyed at the time when it was necessary to obey_;

illÄ diÄ“, cum est lÄ ta lÄ“x dÄ“ mÄ“, *on that day when the law concerning me was passed.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Lysander cum vellet LycÄ«rgÄ« lÄ“gÄ“s commÄ«tÄ re, prohibitus est, _when Lysander desired to change the laws of Lycurgus, he was prevented_;

PythagorÄ s cum in geÄ metriÄ quiddam novÄ« invÄ“nisset, MÄ«sÄ«s bovem immolÄ sse dÄ«citur, _when Pythagoras had discovered something new in geometry, he is said to have sacrificed an ox to the Muses_.

a. Note that the Indicative is much less frequent in such clauses than the Subjunctive, and is regularly confined to those cases where the main clause has tum, eÄ diÄ“, eÄ annÄ , eÄ tempore or some similar correlative of the cum. Sometimes it depends entirely upon the point of view of the writer whether he shall employ the Indicative or Subjunctive.

2. Cum Inversum. When the logical order of the clauses is inverted, we find cum with the Perfect Indicative or Historical Present, in the sense of *when, when suddenly*. The main clause in such cases often has jam, vix, aegrÄ“, nÄ ndum; as,—

jam GallÄ« ex oppidÄ fugere apparÄ bant, cum mÄ trÄ“s familiae repente prÄ currÄ“runt, _the Gauls were already preparing to flee, when suddenly the matrons rushed forth_ (logically, _the matrons rushed forth as the Gauls were preparing to flee_);

TrÄ“virÄ« LabiÄ“num adorÄ«rÄ« parÄ bant, cum duÄ s legiÄ nÄ“s vÄ“nisse cognÄ scunt, _the Treviri were preparing to attack, when (suddenly) they learned that two legions had arrived_.

3. To denote a *recurring action* in the past, cum is followed by the Indicative, particularly of the Pluperfect (compare Ä§Ä§ 287, 2; 302, 3); as,—

cum Ä d aliquod oppidum vÄ“nerat, eÄ dem lectÄ«cÄ ad cubiculum dÄ“ferÄ“bÄ tur, _whenever he had arrived at some town, he was (always) carried in the same litter to his room_;

cum equitÄ tus noster sÄ“ in agrÄ s Ä“jÄ“cerat, essedÄ riÄ s ex silvÄ«s Ä“mittÄ“bat, _whenever our cavalry had advanced into the fields, he would send his charioteers out from the woods_.

a. Sometimes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is thus used; as,—

saepe cum aliquem vidÄ“ret minus bene vestÄ«tum, suum amiculum dedit, _often, wherever he saw some one more poorly clothed, he gave him his own mantle_;

cum prÄ cucurrissent, Numidae effugiÄ“bant, _as often as they had advanced, the Numidians ran away_.

This construction is frequent in Livy and subsequent historians.

B. Cum REFERRING TO THE PRESENT OR FUTURE.

289. When *cum* refers to the Present or Future it regularly takes the Indicative; as,—

tum tua rã“s agitur, pariã“s cum proximus Ä rdet, _your own interests are at stake when your neighbor's house is burning_;

cum vidã“bis, tum sciã“s, _when you see, then you will know._

a. The Indicative of the Present or Future may denote also a _recurring action;_ as,—

stabilitã s amã«citiae cã nfirmã rã« potest, cum hominã“s cupã«dinibus imperã bunt, _firm friendship can be established whenever men shall control their desires._

C. OTHER USES OF *Cum*.

290. 1. *Cum* Explicative. *Cum*, with the Indicative, is sometimes used to indicate the identity of one act with another; as,—

cum tacent clã mant, their silence is a shout (lit. _when they are silent, they shout_).

2. *Cum ... tum*. When *cum ... tum* mean _both ... and_, the *cum*-clause is in the Indicative; but when *cum* has the force of *while, though*, it may take the Subjunctive; as,—

cum tã“ semper dã«lã“xerim, tum tuã«s factã«s incã“nsus sum, _while I have always loved you, at the same time I am stirred by your conduct_.

Clauses introduced by *Antequam* and *Priusquam*.

A. WITH THE INDICATIVE.

291. *Antequam* and *priusquam* (often written *ante ... quam, prius ... quam*) take the Indicative to denote an *actual fact*.

1. Sometimes the Present or Future Perfect; as,—

prius respondã“s quam rogã , _you answer before I ask_;

nihil contrã disputã bã priusquam dã«xerit, _I will say nothing in opposition, before he speaks_.

2. Sometimes the Perfect, especially after negative clauses; as,—

nã n prius jugulandã« fã«nis fuit, quam Sulla omnã“s suã s dã«vitiã«s explã“vit, there was no end of murder until Sulla satisfied all his henchmen with wealth.

B. WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

292. *Antequam* and *priusquam* take the Subjunctive to denote an act as *anticipated*.

1. Thus the Subjunctive may denote—

a) An act in preparation for which the main act takes place; as,—

priusquam dã«micã rent, foedus Ä«ctum est, _i.e. in anticipation of the fight, a treaty was struck._

By an extension of this usage, the Subjunctive is sometimes used of *general truths*, where the anticipatory notion has faded out; as,—

tempestÄ s minÄ tur antequam surgat, *the tempest threatens before it rises.*

b) An act anticipated and forestalled; as,—

priusquam tÄ“lum adicÄ« posset, omnis aciÄ“s terga vertit, *before a spear could be hurled, the whole army fled.*

c) An act anticipated and deprecated; as,—

animum omittunt priusquam locÄ dÄ“migrent, *they die rather than quit their post.*

2. After historical tenses the Imperfect Subjunctive is used, especially by some writers, where the notion of anticipation has practically vanished; as,—

sÄ l antequam sÄ“ abderet fugientem vÄ«dit AntÄ nium, *the sun before it set saw Antony fleeing.*

Clauses introduced by *Dum*, *dÄ nec*, *Quoad*.

293. 1. *Dum*, *while*, regularly takes the Indicative of the Historical Present; as,—

Alexander, dum inter prÄ«mÄ rÄ“s pugnat, sagittÄ ictus est, *Alexander, while he was fighting in the van, was struck by an arrow;*

dum haec geruntur, in fÄ«nÄ“s VenellÄ rum pervÄ“nit, *while these things were being done, he arrived in the territory of the Venelli.*

II. *Dum*, *dÄ nec*, and *quoad*, *as long as*, take the Indicative; as,—

dum anima est, spÄ“s est, *as long as there is life, there is hope;*

LacedaemoniÄ rum gÄ“ns fortis fuit, dum LycÄ«rgÄ« lÄ“gÄ“s vigÄ“bant, *the race of the Lacedaemonians was powerful, as long as the laws of Lycurgus were in force;*

CatÄ , quoad vÄ«xit, virtÄ«tum laude crÄ“vit, *Cato, at long as he lived, increased in the fame of his virtues.*

III. *Dum*, *dÄ nec*, and *quoad*, *until*, take:—

1. The Indicative, to denote *an actual event*; as,—

dÄ nec rediit, fuit silentium, *there was silence till he came;*

ferrum in corpore retinuit, quoad renÄ«ntiÄ tum est BoeÄ tiÄ s vÄ«cisse, *he kept the iron in his body until word was brought that the Boeotians had conquered.*

a. In Livy and subsequent historians *dum* and *dÄ nec* in this sense often take the Subjunctive instead of the Indicative; as,—

trepidÄ tiÄ nis aliquantum Ä“dÄ“bant dÄ nec timor quiÄ“tem fÄ“cisset, *they showed some trepidation,*

until fear produced quiet_.

2. The Subjunctive, to denote *anticipation* or *_expectancy_*; as,—

exspectÄ vit Caesar dum nÄ vÄ“s convenÄ«rent, *_Caesar waited for the ships to assemble_*;

dum litterae veniant, morÄ bor, *I shall wait for the letter to come.*

Substantive Clauses.

294. A Substantive Clause is one which as a whole serves as the Subject or Object of a verb, or stands in some other case relation.

A. Substantive Clauses developed from the Volitive.

295. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive are used with the following classes of verbs:—

1. With verbs signifying *to admonish, request, command, urge, persuade, induce*, [51] etc. (conjunctions *ut, nÄ“*, or *ut nÄ“*); as,—

postulÄ ut fÄ«at, *I demand that it be done* (dependent form of the Jussive *fÄ«at*, *_let it be done!_*);

Ä rat, nÄ“ abeÄ s, *_he begs that you will not go away_*;

mÄ«litÄ“s cohortÄ tus est ut hostium impetum sustinÄ“rent, *_he exhorted his soldiers to withstand the attack of the enemy_*;

HelvÄ“tiÄ«s persuÄ sit ut exÄ«rent, *he persuaded the Helvetii to march forth.*

a. JubeÄ , *command, order*, regularly takes the Infinitive.

2. With verbs signifying *to grant, concede, permit, allow*, [52] etc. (conjunction *ut*); as,—

huic concÄ“dÄ ut ea praetereat, *I allow him to pass that by* (dependent form of the Jussive *ea praetereat*, *_let him pass that by!_*);

cÄ nsulÄ« permissum est ut duÄ s legiÄ nÄ“s scrÄ«beret, *the consul was permitted to enroll two legions.*

3. With verbs of *hindering, preventing*, [53] etc. (conjunctions *nÄ“*, *quÄ minus*, *quÄ«n*); as,—

nÄ“ lÄ«strum perficeret, mors prohibuit, *death prevented him from finishing the lustrum* (dependent form after past tense of *nÄ“ lÄ«strum perficiat*, *let him not finish*, etc.);

prohibuit quÄ minus in Ä«num coÄ«rent, *_he prevented them from coming together_*;

nec quÄ«n Ä“rumperet, prohibÄ“rÄ« poterat, *nor could he be prevented from rushing forth.*

a. *QuÄ«n* is used only when the verb of *hindering* is accompanied by a negative, or stands in a question implying a negative; it is not *necessarily* used even then.

4. With verbs of *deciding, resolving*, [54] etc. (conjunctions *ut, nÄ“*, or *ut nÄ“*); as,—

cā nstitueram ut prā«diā“ Ä^adÄ«s Aquā«nÄ« manÄ“rem, _I had decided to remain at Aquinum on the 12th_;

dÄ“crÄ“vit senÄ tus ut OpÄ«mius vidÄ“ret, _the Senate decreed that Opimius should see to it_;

convÄ“nit ut Ä«nÄ«s castrÄ«s miscÄ“rentur, *it was agreed that they should be united in one camp.*

5. With verbs of *striving*, [55] etc. (conjunctions ut, nÄ“, or ut nÄ“); as,—

fac ut eum exÄ rÄ“s, _see to it that you prevail upon him!_

cÄ«rÄ ut vir sÄ«s, _see to it that you are a man!_

labÄ rÄ bat ut reliquÄ s cÄ«vitÄ tÄ“s adjungeret, *he was striving to join the remaining states to him.*

a. CÄ nor, *try*, always takes the Infinitive.

NOTE.—Verbs of all the above classes also admit the Infinitive, especially in poetry.

6. With a few other expressions, such as *necesse est*, *reliquus est*, *sequitur*, *licet*, *oportet*; as,—

sequitur ut doceam, _it remains for me to show_;

licet redeÄ s, _you may return_;

oportet loquÄ mur, *we must speak.*

On the absence of *ut* with *licet* and *oportet*, see paragraph 8.

7. Here also belong phrases of the type: nÄ«lla causa est cÄ«r, quÄ«n; nÄ n est cÄ«r, etc.; nihil est cÄ«r, etc.; as,—

nÄ«lla causa est cÄ«r timeam, *there is no reason why I should fear* (originally Deliberative: _why should I fear? There's no reason_);

nihil est quÄ«n dÄ«cam, *there is no reason why I should not say.*

8. Many of the above classes of verbs at times take the simple Subjunctive without *ut*. In such cases we must not recognize any omission of *ut*, but simply an earlier form of expression which existed before the *ut*-clause arose. This is regularly the case with *necesse est*, *licet*, and *oportet*; see 6. Other examples are:—

eÄ s moneÄ dÄ“sinant, _I warn them to stop_;

huic imperat adeat cÄ«vitÄ tÄ“s, *he orders him to visit the states.*

B. Substantive Clauses developed from the Optative.

296. Substantive Clauses Developed from the Optative occur:—

1. With verbs of *wishing*, *desiring*, especially *cupiÄ*, *optÄ*, *volÄ*, *mÄ lä* (conjunctions ut, nÄ“, ut nÄ“); as,—

optÅ ut in hÅ c jÅ«diciÅ nÅ“mÅ improbus reperiÅ tur, *I hope that in this court no bad man may be found* (here ut reperiÅ tur represents a simple optative of direct statement, viz. reperiÅ tur, *may no bad man be found!*);

cupiÅ nÅ“ veniat, *I desire that he may not come.*

a. The simple Subjunctive (without ut) sometimes occurs with verbs of this class. (See Å§ 295, 8.) Examples are: velim scrÅ«bÅ s, *I wish you would write*; vellem scrÅ«psisset, *I wish he had written.*

2. With expressions of *fearing* (timeÅ , metuÅ , vereor, etc.). Here nÅ“ means *that, lest*, and ut means *that not*; as,—

timeÅ nÅ“ veniat, *I fear that he will come* (originally: *may he not come! I'm afraid* [*he will*]);

timeÅ ut veniat, *I fear that he will not come* (originally: *may he come! I'm afraid* [*he won't*]).

a. NÅ“ nÅ n sometimes occurs instead of ut, especially where the verb of *fearing* has a negative, or where the writer desires to emphasize some particular word in the dependent clause; as,—

nÅ n vereor ne hÅ c nÅ n fÅ«at, *I am not afraid that this will not happen*;

vereor nÅ“ exercitum fÅ«mum habÅ“re nÅ n possit, *I fear that he is unable (nÅ n possit) to have a strong army.*

C. Substantive Clauses of Result.

297. Substantive Clauses of Result (introduced by ut, ut nÅ n) are a development of pure Result clauses, and occur with the following classes of words:—

1. As object clauses after verbs of *doing, accomplishing* (especially faciÅ , efficiÅ , cÅ nficiÅ). Thus:—

gravitÅ s morbÅ« facit ut medicÅ«nÅ egeÅ mus, *the severity of disease makes us need medicine.*

2. As the subject of several impersonal verbs, particularly fit, efficitur, accidit, Å“venit, contingit, accÅ“dit, fierÅ« potest, fore, sequitur, relinquitur. Thus:—

ex quÅ efficitur, ut voluptÅ s nÅ n sit summum bonum, *from which it follows that pleasure is not the greatest good*;

ita fit, ut nÅ“mÅ esse possit beÅ tus, *thus it happens that no one can be happy*;

accÅ“dÅ“bat ut nÅ vÅ“s deessent, *another thing was the lack of ships* (lit. *it was added that ships were lacking*).

3. As predicate or appositive after expressions like jÅ«s est, mÅ s est, cÅ nsuÅ“tÅ«dÅ est; also after neuter pronouns, hÅ c, illud, etc. Thus:—

est mÅ s hominum ut nÅ lint eundem plÅ«ribus rÅ“bus excellere, *it is the way of men not to wish the same person to excel in many things.*

D. Substantive Clauses introduced by QuÅ«n.

298. Substantive Clauses introduced by *quod* (used sometimes as subject, sometimes as object) occur after negative and interrogative expressions of *doubt*, *omission*, and the like, particularly after *nō dubitō*, *I do not doubt*; *quis dubitat*, *who doubts?*; *nō dubium est*, *there is no doubt*. The mood is the Subjunctive. Examples:—

quis dubitat quod in virtute divitiae sint, *who doubts that in virtue there are riches?*

nō dubium erat quod venturus esset, *there was no doubt that he was about to come.*

a. In Nepos, Livy, and post-Augustan writers an Infinitive sometimes takes the place of the *quod*-clause after *nō dubitō*; as,—

nō dubitamus inventos esse, *we do not doubt that men were found* b. *Nō dubitō*, *I do not hesitate*, is regularly followed by the Infinitive, though sometimes by a *quod*-clause.

E. Substantive Clauses Introduced by *Quod*.

299. 1. *Quod*, *the fact that*, *that*, introduces Substantive Clauses in the Indicative. This construction occurs especially—

a) In apposition with a preceding demonstrative, as *hic*, *id*, *illud*, *illa*, *ex ea*, *inde*, etc. Thus:—

illud est admirabile ne dignum, quod captivos retinendos censuit, *this is especially worthy of admiration, that he thought the prisoners ought to be kept*;

hic cōnspicimus vel maximam feram, quod colloquimur inter nos, *in this one respect we are especially superior to the beasts, that we talk with each other*.

b) After *bene fit*, *bene accidit*, *male fit*, *bene facere*, *maior*, etc.; as,—

bene mihi venit, quod mittor ad mortem, *it is well for me that I am sent to death*;

bene fecistis, quod mansistis, *you did well in remaining*.

2. *Quod* at the beginning of the sentence sometimes has the force of *as regards the fact that*. Thus:—

quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traheo, id me moneo faciendum causam facio, *as regards the fact that I am transporting a multitude of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the sake of strengthening myself*;

quod Agamemnona aemulor putas, falleris, *as regards your thinking that I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken*.

F. Indirect Questions.

300. 1. Indirect Questions are Substantive Clauses used after verbs of *asking*, *inquiring*, *telling*, and the like. They take their verb in the Subjunctive[56]. Like Direct Questions (see § 162) they may be introduced—

a) By Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs; as,—

dic mihi ubi fueris, quid feceris, *tell me where you were, what you did*;

oculā«s jā«dicā rā« nā n potest in utram partem fluat Arar, _it cannot be determined by the eye in which direction the Arar flows_;

bis bā«na quot essent, nesciā“bat, *he did not know how many two times two were.*

NOTE.—Care should be taken to distinguish Indirect Questions from Relative Clauses. The difference between the two appears clearly in the following:—

effugere nā“mā id potest quod futā«rum est, _no one can escape what is destined to come to pass;_ but saepe autem ne ā«tile quidem est scā«re quid futā«rum sit, _but often it is not even useful to know what is coming to pass._

b) By num or –ne, without distinction of meaning; as,—

Epamā«nā ndā s quaesā«vit num salvus esset clipeus, or salvusne esset clipeus, _Epaminondas asked whether his shield was safe_;

disputā tur num interā«re virtā«s in homine possit, _the question is raised whether virtue can die in a man_;

ex Sā crate quaesā«tum est nā nne Archelā um beā tum putā ret, *the question was asked of Socrates whether he did not think Archelaus happy.*

NOTE.—Nā nne in Indirect Questions occurs only after quaerā , as in the last example above.

2. Often the Indirect Question represents a Deliberative Subjunctive of the direct discourse; as,—

nesciā quid faciam, _I do not know what to do._ (Direct: quid faciam, _what shall I do!_)

3. After verbs of *expectation* and *endeavor* (expectā , cā nor, experior, temptā) we sometimes find an Indirect Question introduced by sā«; as,—

cā nantur sā« perrumpere possint, _they try whether they can break through._

a. Sometimes the governing verb is omitted; as,—

pergit ad proximam spā“luncam sā« forte eā vā“stā«gia ferrent, _he proceeded to the nearest cave (to see) if the tracks led thither._

4. Indirect Double Questions are introduced in the main by the same particles as direct double questions (Â§ 162, 4); viz.;—

utrum ... an; –ne ... an; ----- ... an; ----- ... ne.

Examples:—

quaerā utrum vā“rum an falsum sit, } quaerā vā“rumne an falsum sit, } *I ask whether it quaerā*
vā“rum an falsum sit, } _is true or false?_ quaerā vā“rum falsumne sit, }

a. _'Or not'_ in the second member of the double question is ordinarily expressed by necne, less frequently by an nā n; as,—

dā« utrum sint necne, quaeritur, _it is asked whether there are gods or not._

5. *Haud sciã an, nesciã an*, by omission of the first member of the double question, occur with the Subjunctive in the sense: *_I am inclined to think, probably, perhaps;_ as,—*

haud sciã an ita sit, *_I am inclined to think this is so._*

6. In early Latin and in poetry the Indicative is sometimes used in indirect Questions.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

301. Conditional Sentences are compound sentences (Â§ 164) consisting of two parts, the Protasis (or *_condition_*), usually introduced by *sã«*, *nisi*, or *sã«n*, and the Apodosis (or *_conclusion_*). There are the following types of Conditional Sentences:—

First Type.—Nothing Implied as to the Reality of the Supposed Case.

302. 1. Here we regularly have the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis. Any tense may be used; *as,—*

sã« hã c crã“dis, errã s, *_if you believe this, you are mistaken_;*

nã tã«ram sã« sequã“mur, numquam aberrã bimus, *_if we follow Nature, we shall never go astray_;*

sã« hã c dã«xistã«, errã stã«, *_if you said this, you were in error_.*

2. Sometimes the Protasis takes the Indefinite Second Person Singular (Â§ 356, 3) of the Present or Perfect Subjunctive, with the force of the Indicative; *as,—*

memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceã s, *memory is impaired unless you exercise it.*

3. Here belong also those conditional sentences in which the Protasis denotes a repeated action (compare Â§ 287, 2; 288, 3); *as,—*

sã« quis equitum dã“ciderat, peditã“s circumsistã“bant, *_if any one of the horsemen fell, the foot-soldiers gathered about him_.*

a. Instead of the Indicative, Livy and subsequent writers employ the Subjunctive of the Historical tenses in the Protasis to denote repeated action; *as,—*

sã« dã«cendã quis diem eximeret, *_if (ever) anybody consumed a day in pleading_;* *sã« quandã adsidã“ret*, *if ever he sat by.*

4. Where the sense demands it, the Apodosis in conditional sentences of the First Type may be an Imperative or one of the Independent Subjunctives (Hortatory, Deliberative, etc.); *as,—*

sã« hã c crã“ditis, tacã“te, *_if you believe this, be silent_;*

sã« hã c crã“dimus, taceã mus, *_if we believe this, let us keep silent_.*

Second Type.—'Should'—'Would' Conditions.

303. Here we regularly have the Subjunctive (of the Present or Perfect tense) in both Protasis and Apodosis; *as,—*

sÄ« hÄ c dÄ«cÄ s, errÄ“s, or sÄ« hÄ c dÄ«xerÄ«s, errÄ verÄ«s, _if you should say this, you would be mistaken_;

sÄ« velim Hannibalis proelia omnia dÄ“scrÄ«bere, diÄ“s mä“ dÄ“ficiat, _if I should wish to describe all the battles of Hannibal, time would fail me_;

mentiar, sÄ« negem, _I should lie, if I should deny it_;

haec sÄ« tÄ“cum patria loquÄ tur, nÄ nne impetrÄ re dÄ“beat, _if your country should plead thus with you, would she not deserve to obtain her request?_

a. The Subjunctive in the Apodosis of conditional sentences of this type is of the Potential variety.

b. Sometimes we find the Indicative in the Apodosis of sentences of the Second Type, where the writer wishes to assert the accomplishment of a result more positively; as,—

aliter sÄ« faciat, nÄ«llam habet auctÄ ritÄ tem, _if he should do otherwise, he has no authority_.

Third Type.—Supposed Case Represented as Contrary to Fact.

304. 1. Here we regularly have the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to *present time*, and the Pluperfect referring to *past*; as,—

sÄ« amÄ«cÄ« meÄ« adessent, opis nÄ n indigÄ“rem, _if my friends were here, I should not lack assistance_;

sÄ« hÄ c dÄ«xissÄ“s, errÄ ssÄ“s, _if you had said this, you would have erred_;

sapientia nÄ n expeterÄ“tur, sÄ« nihil efficeret, _philosophy would not be desired, if it accomplished nothing_;

cÄ nsilium, ratiÄ , sententia nisi essent in senibus, nÄ n summum cÄ nsilium majÄ rÄ“s nostrÄ« appellÄ ssent senÄ tum, _unless deliberation, reason, and wisdom existed in old men, our ancestors would not have called their highest deliberative body a senate_.

2. Sometimes the Imperfect Subjunctive is found referring to the past, especially to denote *a continued act*, or *a state of things still existing*; as,—

Laelius, FÄ«rius, CatÄ sÄ« nihil litterÄ«s adjuvÄ rentur, numquam sÄ“ ad eÄ rum studium contulissent, _Laelius, Furius, and Cato would never have devoted themselves to the study of letters, unless they had been (constantly) helped by them_;

num igitur sÄ« ad centÄ“simum annum vÄ«xisset, senectÄ«tis eum suae paenitÄ“ret, _if he had lived to his hundredth year, would he have regretted (and now be regretting) his old age?_

3. The Apodosis in conditional sentences of this type sometimes stands in the Indicative (Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect), viz.—

a) Frequently in expressions of *ability*, *obligation*, or *necessity*; as,—

nisi fÄ“lä«citÄ s in sÄ cordiam vertisset, exuere jugum potuÄ“runt, _unless their prosperity had turned to folly, they could have thrown off the yoke_;

NOTE.—In sentences of this type, however, it is not the *possibility* that is represented as—contrary—to—fact, but something to be supplied in thought from the context. Thus in the foregoing sentence the logical apodosis is *et exuissent* understood (_and they would have shaken it off_). When the *possibility* itself is conditioned, the Subjunctive is used.

eum patris locū colere dēbēbās, sēcū illa in tā pietas esset, _you ought to revere him as a father, if you had any sense of devotion_.

b) With both the Periphrastic Conjugations; as,—

sēcū Sēstius occisus esset, fuistisne ad arma iturū, _if Sestius had been slain, would you have proceeded to arms?_

sēcū nūm diem morā tē essētis, moriendum omnibus fuit, _if you had delayed one day, you would all have had to die_.

Protasis expressed without _Sēcū_.

305. 1. The Protasis is not always expressed by a clause with *sēcū*, but may be implied in a word, a phrase, or merely by the context; as,—

aliā quā haec nō scriberentur, *otherwise* (i.e. if matters were otherwise) _these things would not be written_;

nō potestis, voluptate omnia dirigētis, retinēre virtutem, _you cannot retain virtue, if you direct everything with reference to pleasure_.

2. Sometimes an Imperative, or a Jussive Subjunctive, serves as Protasis. Thus:—

crās petitā, dabitur, _if you ask to-morrow, it shall be given you_ (lit. _ask to-morrow_, etc.);

haec reputent, vidēbunt, _if they consider this, they will see_ (lit. *let them consider*, etc.);

rogās Zenōnem, respondeat, _if you should ask Zeno, he would answer_.

Use of *Nisi*, _Sēcū nō_, _Sēcū n_.

306. 1. *Nisi*, *unless*, negatives the entire protasis; *sēcū nō* negatives a single word; as,—

ferreus essem, nisi tā amem, _I should be hard-hearted unless I loved you_; but—

ferreus essem, sēcū tā nō amem, _I should be hard-hearted if I did NOT love you_.

In the first example, it is the notion of *loving you* that is negated, in the second, the notion of *loving*.

2. *Sēcū nō* (*sēcū minus*) is regularly employed:—

a) When an apodosis with *at*, *tamen*, *certā* follows; as,—

dolam sēcū nō potueram frangere, tamen occultabam, _if I cannot crush my sorrow, yet I will hide it_.

b) When an affirmative protasis is repeated in negative form; as,—

sÄ« fÄ«ceris, magnam habÄ«bÄ« grÄ« tiam; sÄ« nÄ« n fÄ«ceris, ignÄ« scam, _if you do it, I shall be deeply grateful; if you do not do it, I shall pardon you_.

a. But if the verb is omitted in the repetition, only si minus or sin minus is admissible; as,—

hÄ« c sÄ« assecÄ«tus sum, gaudeÄ« ; sÄ« minus, mÄ« cÄ« nsÄ« lor, _if I have attained this, I am glad; if not, I console myself_.

3. SÄ«n. Where one protasis is followed by another opposed in meaning, but affirmative in form, the second is introduced by sÄ«n; as,—

hunc mihi timÄ« rem Ä«ripe; sÄ« vÄ«rus est, nÄ« opprimar, sÄ«n falsus, ut timÄ«re dÄ«sinam, _relieve me of this fear; if it is well founded, that I may not be destroyed; but if it is groundless, that I may cease to fear_.

4. Nisi has a fondness for combining with negatives (nÄ« n, nÄ«mÄ« , nihil); as,—

nihil cÄ« gitÄ« vit nisi caedem, *he had no thought but murder.*

a. NÄ« n and nisi are always separated in the best Latinity.

5. Nisi forte, nisi vÄ«rÄ« , nisi sÄ«, _unless perchance, unless indeed_ (often with ironical force), take the Indicative; as,—

nisi vÄ«rÄ« , quia perfecta rÄ«s nÄ« n est, nÄ« n vidÄ«tur pÄ«nienda, _unless indeed, because an act is not consummated, it does not seem to merit punishment_.

Conditional Clauses of Comparison.

307. 1. Conditional Clauses of Comparison are introduced by the particles, ac sÄ«, ut sÄ«, quasi, quam sÄ«, tamquam sÄ«, velut sÄ«, or simply by velut or tamquam. They stand in the Subjunctive mood and regularly involve an ellipsis (see Ä§ 374, 1), as indicated in the following examples:—

tantus patrÄ«s metus cÄ«pit, velat sÄ« jam ad portÄ«s hostis esset, _as great fear seized the senators as (would have seized them) if the enemy were already at the gates_;

sed quid ego hÄ«s testibus Ä«tor quasi rÄ«s dubia aut obscÄ«ra sit, _but why do I use these witnesses, as (I should do) if the matter were doubtful or obscure_;

serviam tibi tam quasi Ä«merÄ«s mÄ« argentÄ« , *I will serve you as though you had bought me for money.*

2. Note that in sentences of this kind the Latin observes the regular principles for the Sequence of Tenses. Thus after principal tenses the Latin uses the Present and Perfect (as in the second and third examples), where the English uses the Past and Past Perfect.

Concessive Clauses.

308. The term 'Concessive' is best restricted to those clauses developed from the Jussive Subjunctive which have the force of *granted that*, etc.; (see Ä§ 278) as,—

sit fÄ«r, sit sacrilegus, at est bonus imperÄ«tor, _granted that he is a thief and a robber, yet he is a good

commander_;

haec sint falsa, _granted that this is false_;

nÄ“ sit summum malum dolor, malum certÄ“ est, _granted that pain is not the greatest evil, yet it is certainly an evil_.

Adversative Clauses with _QuamvÄ«s_, *Quamquam*, etc.

309. Clauses introduced by *quamvÄ«s*, *quamquam*, *etsÄ«*, *tametsÄ«*, *cum*, *although*, while often classed as 'Concessive,' are yet essentially different from genuine Concessive clauses. As a rule, they do not *grant* or *concede* anything, but rather state that something is true *in spite of something else*. They accordingly emphasize the adversative idea, and are properly Subordinate Adversative Clauses. The different particles used to introduce these clauses have different meanings and take different constructions, as follows:—

1. *QuamvÄ«s*, *however much*, *although*, does not introduce a statement of fact, but represents an act merely as conceived. It is followed by the Subjunctive, usually of the present tense; as,—

hominÄ“s quamvÄ«s in turbidÄ«s rÄ“bus sint, tamen interdum animÄ«s relaxantur, _in however stirring events men may engage, yet at times they relax their energies;_

nÄ n est potestÄ s opitulandÄ« reÄ« pÄ«blica quamvÄ«s ea premÄ tur perÄ«culÄ«s, _there is no opportunity to succor the state, though it be beset by dangers._

2. *Quamquam*, *etsÄ«*, *tametsÄ«*, *although*, introduce a statement of fact, and are followed by the Indicative (of any tense); as,—

quamquam omnis virtÄ«s nÄ s allicit, tamen jÄ«stitia id maximÄ“ efficit, _although all virtue attracts us, yet justice does so especially;_

Caesar, etsÄ« nÄ ndum cÄ nsilium hostium cognÄ verat, tamen id quod accidit suspicÄ bÄ tur, _Caesar, though he did not yet know the plans of the enemy, yet was suspecting what actually occurred_.

a. *EtsÄ«*, *although*, must be distinguished from *etsÄ«*, *even if*. The latter is a conditional particle and takes any of the constructions admissible for *sÄ«*. (See Ä§ 302–304.)

3. *Cum*, *although*, is followed by the Subjunctive; as,—

Atticus honÄ rÄ“s nÄ n petiit, cum eÄ« patÄ“rent, _Atticus did not seek honors, though they were open to him_.

4. *Licet* sometimes loses its verbal force (see Ä§ 295, 6) and sinks to the level of a conjunction with the force of *although*. It takes the Subjunctive, Present or Perfect; as,—

licet omnÄ“s terrÄ rÄ“s impendeant, succurram, _though all terrors hang over me, (yet) I will lend aid_.

5. *Quamquam*, with the force *and yet*, is often used to introduce principal clauses; as,—

quamquam quid loquor, _and yet why do I speak?_

6. In post-Augustan writers *quamquam* is freely construed with the Subjunctive, while *quamvÄ«s* is often used to introduce statements of fact, and takes either the Indicative or the Subjunctive. Thus:—

quamquam movĀ“rĀ“tur hĀ«s vĀ cibus, _although he was moved by these words_;

quamvĀ«s multĀ« opĀ«nĀ rentur, _though many thought_;

quamvĀ«s Ā«nfĀ“stĀ animĀ pervĀ“nerĀ s, *though you had come with hostile intent.*

Clauses with *Dum, Modo, Dummodo*, denoting a Wish or a Proviso.

310. These particles are followed by the Subjunctive (negative nĀ““) and have two distinct uses:—

I. They are used to introduce clauses *embodying a wish* entertained by the subject of the leading verb; as,—

multĀ« honesta neglegunt dummodo potentiam cĀ nsequantur, *many neglect honor in their desire to obtain power* (_if only they may attain_);

omnia postposuĀ«, dum praeceptĀ«s patris pĀ rĀ“rem, _I made everything else secondary, in my desire to obey the injunctions of my father_;

nĀ«l obstat tibi, dum nĀ“ sit dĀ«tior alter, *nothing hinders you in your desire that your neighbor may not be richer than you.*

II. They are used to express a *proviso* ('_provided that_'); as,—

Ā derint, dum metuant, _let them hate, provided they fear_;

manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium et industria, _old men retain their faculties, provided only they retain their interest and vigor_;

nĀ«bant, dum nĀ“ dĀ s fiat comes, _let them marry, provided no dowry goes with it_.

Relative Clauses.

311. Relative Clauses are introduced by Relative Pronouns, Adjectives, or Adverbs.

312. 1. Relative clauses usually stand in the Indicative Mood, especially clauses introduced by those General Relatives which are doubled or have the suffix *-oumque*; as,—

quidquid id est, timeĀ DanaĀ s et dĀ na ferentĀ“s, _whatever it is, I fear the Greeks even when they offer gifts_;

quidquid oritur, quĀ lecumque est, causam Ā nĀ tĀ«rĀ habet, _whatever comes into being, of whatever sort it is, has its primal cause in Nature._

2. Any simple Relative may introduce a conditional sentence of any of the three types mentioned in Ā§Ā§ 302–304; as,—

quĀ« hĀ c dĀ«cit, errat, *he who says this is mistaken* (First Type);

quĀ« hĀ c dĀ«cat, erret, *he would be mistaken who should say this* (Second Type);

quĀ« hĀ c dĀ«xisset, errĀ sset, _the man who had said this would have been mistaken._

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (_ÄŒERÄ€TIÄŒ OBLÄªQUA_).

313. When the language or thought of any person is reproduced without change, that is called Direct Discourse (_ÄŒerÄ tiÄ Recta_); as, _Caesar said, 'The die is cast.'_ When, on the other hand, one's language or thought is made to depend upon a verb of *saying, thinking*, etc., that is called Indirect Discourse (_ÄŒerÄ tiÄ OblÄªqua_); as, _Caesar said that the die was cast; Caesar thought that his troops were victorious._

a. For the verbs most frequently employed to introduce Indirect Discourse, see Ä§ 331.

MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Declarative Sentences.

314. 1. Declarative Sentences upon becoming Indirect change their main clause to the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, while all subordinate clauses take the Subjunctive; as,—

RÄªgulus dÄªxit quam diÄª jÄªre jÄªrandÄª hostium tenÄªrÄªtur nÄª n esse sÄª senÄª tÄª rem,
Regulus said that as long as he was held by his pledge to the enemy he was not a senator. (Direct: quam diÄª teneor nÄª n sum senÄª tor.)

2. The verb of *saying, thinking*, etc., is sometimes to be inferred from the context; as,—

tum RÄª mulus IÄªgÄª tÄª s circÄª vÄªcÄªnÄª s gentÄªs mÄªsit quÄª societÄª tem cÄª nÄªbiumque peterent: urbÄªs quoque, ut cÄªtera, ex ÄªnfimÄª nÄª scÄª, _then Romulus sent envoys around among the neighboring tribes, to ask for alliance and the right of intermarriage, (saying that) cities, like everything else, start from a modest beginning_.

3. Subordinate clauses which contain an explanatory statement of the writer and so are not properly a part of the Indirect Discourse, or which emphasize the fact stated, take the Indicative; as,—

nÄªntiÄª tum est Ariovistum ad occupandum VesontiiÄª nem, quod est oppidum maximum SÄªquanÄª rum contendere, _it was reported that Ariovistus was hastening to seize Vesontio, which is the largest town of the Sequani_.

4. Sometimes a subordinate clause is such only in its external form, and in sense is principal. It then takes the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. This occurs especially in case of relative clauses, where quÄª is equivalent to et hÄªc, nam hÄªc, etc.; as,—

dÄªxit urbem AthÄªniÄªnsium prÄª pugnÄª culum oppositum esse barbarÄªs, apud quam jam bis classÄªs rÄªgiÄª s fÄªcisse naufragium, _he said the city of the Athenians had been set against the barbarians like a bulwark, near which (= and near it) the fleets of the King had twice met disaster_.

5. The Subject Accusative of the Infinitive is sometimes omitted when it refers to the same person as the subject of the leading verb, or can easily be supplied from the context; as,—

cum id nescÄªre MÄª gÄª dÄªceret, *when Mago said he did not know this* (for sÄª nescÄªre).

Interrogative Sentences.

315. 1. Real questions of the Direct Discourse, upon becoming indirect, are regularly put in the Subjunctive; as,—

Ariovistus Caesar^o respondit: s^o prius in Galliam v^onisse quam populum R^o m^o num. Quid sibi vellet? C^o in su^o s possessi^o n^os ven^oret, _Ariovistus replied to Caesar that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people. What did he (Caesar) mean? Why did he come into his domain?_ (Direct: quid tibi v^os? c^o in me^o s possessi^o n^os ven^os?)

2. Rhetorical questions, on the other hand, being asked merely for effect, and being equivalent in force to emphatic statements, regularly stand in the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse. Thus :--

quid est levius (lit. *what is more trivial*, = nothing is more trivial) of the Direct Discourse becomes quid esse levius in the Indirect.

3. Deliberative Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse remain unchanged in mood in the Indirect: as,--

quid faceret, _what was he to do?_ (Direct: quid faciat?)

Imperative Sentences.

316. All Imperatives or Jussive Subjunctives of the Direct Discourse appear as Subjunctives in the Indirect; as,--

m^olit^os certi^o r^os f^ocit paulisper intermitterent proelium, *he told the soldiers to stop the battle for a little*. (Direct: intermittite.)

a. The negative in such sentences is n^o; as,--

n^o suae virt^ot^o tribueret, _let him not attribute it to his own valor!_

TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

A. Tenses of the Infinitive.

317. These are used in accordance with the regular principles for the use of the Infinitive as given in Â§ 270.

a. The Perfect Infinitive may represent any past tense of the Indicative of Direct Discourse. Thus:--

sci^o t^o haec ^ogisse may mean--

I know you were doing this. (Direct: haec ag^ob^o s.)

I know you did this. (Direct: haec ^ogist^o.)

I know you had done this. (Direct: haec ^oger^o s.)

B. Tenses of the Subjunctive.

318. These follow the regular principle for the Sequence of Tenses, being Principal if the verb of *saying* is Principal; Historical if it is Historical. Yet for the sake of vividness, we often find the Present Subjunctive used after an historical tense (_Repraesent^o ti^o _); as,--

Caesar respondit, s^o obsid^os dentur, s^os^o p^o cem esse fact^orum, _Caesar replied that, if hostages be given, he would make peace._

a. For the sequence after the Perfect Infinitive, see § 268, 2.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

Conditional Sentences of the First Type.

319. A. THE APODOSIS. Any tense of the Indicative is changed to the corresponding tense of the Infinitive (§§ 270; 317, a).

B. THE PROTASIS. The protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive which are required by the Sequence of Tenses.

Examples:—

DIRECT. INDIRECT. *sā« hā c crā“dis, errā s, dā«cā , sā« hā c crā“dā s, tā“ errā re; dā«xā«, sā« hā c crā“derā“s, tā“ errā re. sā« hā c crā“dā“s, errā bis, dā«cā , sā« hā c crā“dā s, tā“ errā tā«rum esse; dā«xā«, sā« hā c crā“derā“s, tā“ errā tā«rum esse. sā« hā c crā“dideris, errā bis, dā«cā , sā« hā c crā“derā«s, tā“ errā tā«rum esse; dā«xā«, sā« hā c crā“didissā“s, tā“ errā tā«rum esse. sā« hā c crā“dā“bā s, errā vistā«, dā«cā , sā« hā c crā“derā“s, tā“ errā visse; dā«xā«, sā« hā c crā“derā“s, tā“ errā visse.*

a. Note that a Future Perfect Indicative of the Direct Discourse regularly appears in the Indirect as a Perfect Subjunctive after a principal tense, and as a Pluperfect Subjunctive after an historical tense.

Conditional Sentences of the Second Type.

320. A. THE APODOSIS. The Present Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse regularly becomes the Future Infinitive of the Indirect.

B. THE PROTASIS. The Protasis takes those tenses of the Subjunctive demanded by the sequence of tenses.

Examples:—

sā« hā c crā“dā s, errā“s, dā«cā , sā« hā c crā“dā s, tā“ errā tā«rum esse; dā«xā«, sā« hā c crā“derā“s, tā“ errā tā«rum esse;

Conditional Sentences of the Third Type.

321. A. THE APODOSIS.

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes the Future Infinitive.

a. But this construction is rare, being represented in the classical Latinity by a single example (Caesar, V. 29. 2). Some scholars question the correctness of this passage.

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Direct Discourse becomes:—

a) In the Active Voice the Infinitive in *-ā«rus fuisse*.

b) In the Passive Voice it takes the form *futā«rum fuisse ut* with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

B. THE PROTASIS. The protasis in Conditional Sentences of this type always remains unchanged.

Examples:—

sÄ« hÅ c crÄ“derÄ“s, errÄ rÄ“s, dÄ«cÄ (dÄ«xÄ«), sÄ« hÅ c crÄ“derÄ“s, tÄ“ errÄ tÄ«rum esse; sÄ« hÅ c crÄ“didissÄ“s, dÄ«cÄ (dÄ«xÄ«), sÄ« hÅ c crÄ“didissÄ“s, tÄ“ errÄ vissÄ“s, errÄ tÄ«rum fuisse; sÄ« hÅ c dÄ«xissÄ“s, pÄ«nÄ«tus dÄ«cÄ (dÄ«xÄ«), sÄ« hÅ c dÄ«xissÄ“s, futÄ«rum essÄ“s. fuisse ut pÄ«nÄ«rÄ“ris.

322. When an apodosis of a conditional sentence of the Third Type referring to the past is at the same time a Result clause or a quÄ«n-clause (after nÄ n dubitÄ , etc.), it stands in the Perfect Subjunctive in the form -Ä«rus fuerim; as,—

ita territÄ« sunt, ut arma trÄ ditÄ«rÄ« fuerint,[57] nisi Caesar subitÄ advÄ“nisset, _they were so frightened that they would have given up their arms, had not Caesar suddenly arrived_;

nÄ n dubitÄ quÄ«n, sÄ« hÅ c dÄ«xissÄ“s, errÄ tÄ«rus fuerÄ«s,[57] _I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have made a mistake_.

a. This peculiarity is confined to the Active Voice. In the Passive, such sentences, when they become dependent, remain unchanged; as,—

nÄ n dubitÄ quÄ«n, sÄ« hÅ c dÄ«xissÄ“s, vituperÄ tus essÄ“s, _I do not doubt that, if you had said this, you would have been blamed_.

b. When an Indirect Question becomes an apodosis in a conditional sentence of the Third Type, -Ä«rus fuerim (rarely -Ä«rus fuisssem) is used; as,—

quaerÄ , num, sÄ« hÅ c dÄ«xissÄ“s, errÄ tÄ«rus fuerÄ«s (or fuissÄ“s).

c. PotuÄ«, when it becomes a dependent apodosis in sentences of this Type, usually changes to the Perfect Subjunctive; as,—

conkursÄ« tÄ tÄ«us civitÄ tis dÄ“fÄ“nsÄ« sunt, ut frÄ«gidissimÄ s quoque Ä rÄ tÄ rÄ“s populÄ« studia excitÄ re potuerint, _they were defended before a gathering of all the citizens, so that the interest of the people would have been enough to excite even the most apathetic orators_.

IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

323. The Subjunctive is often used in subordinate clauses whose indirect character is _merely implied by the context_ ; as,—

dÄ“mÄ nstrÄ bantur mihi praetereÄ , quae SÄ cratÄ“s dÄ“ immortalÄ litÄ te animÄ rum disseruisset, _there were explained to me besides, the arguments which Socrates had set forth concerning the immortality of the soul_ (i.e. the arguments which, it was said, Socrates had set forth);

Paetus omnÄ“s librÄ s quÄ s pater suus relÄ«quisset mihi dÄ nÄ vit, _Paetus gave me all the books which (as he said) his father had left_.

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

324. 1. Subordinate clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive are frequently attracted into the same mood especially when they do not express a fact, but constitute _an essential part of one complex idea_ ; as,—

nā“mā avā rus adhāc inventus est, cui, quod habāret, esset satis, _no miser has yet been found who was satisfied with what he had_;

cum dāversā s causā s afferrent, dum fā rram suā« quisque et animā« et ingeniā« redderent, _as they brought forward different arguments, while each mirrored his own individual type of mind and natural bent_;

quod ego fatear, pudeat? _should I be ashamed of a thing which I admit?_

2. Similarly a subordinate clause dependent upon an Infinitive is put in the Subjunctive when the two form one closely united whole; as,---

mā s est Athā“nā«s quotannā«s in cā ntiā ne laudā rā« eā s quā« sint in proeliā«s interfectā«, *it is the custom at Athens every year for those to be publicly eulogized who have been killed in battle.* (Here the notion of 'praising those who fell in battle' forms an inseparable whole.)

NOUN AND ADJECTIVE FORMS OF THE VERB.

325. These are the Infinitive, Participle, Gerund, and Supine. All of these partake of the nature of the Verb, on the one hand, and of the Noun or Adjective, on the other. Thus:---

As Verbs,---

a) They may be limited by adverbs; b) They admit an object; c) They have the properties of voice and tense.

As Nouns or Adjectives,---

a) They are declined; b) They take Noun or Adjective constructions.

THE INFINITIVE.

Infinitive without Subject Accusative.

326. This is used chiefly as Subject or Object but also as Predicate or Appositive.

NOTE.---The Infinitive was originally a Dative, and traces of this are still to be seen in the poetical use of the Infinitive to express _purpose_; as, nec dulcā“s occurrent ā scula nā tā« praeripere, *and no sweet children will run to snatch kisses.*

A. As Subject.

327. 1. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Subject of esse and various impersonal verbs, particularly opus est, necesse est, oportet, juvat, dā“lectat, placet, libet, licet, praestat, decet, pudet, interest, etc.; as,---

dulce et decā rum est prā patriā morā«, _it is sweet and noble to die for one's country_;

virā rum est fortium toleranter dolā rem patā«, _it is the part of brave men to endure pain with patience_;

senā tuā« placuit lā“gā tā s mittere, *the Senate decided* (lit. _it pleased the Senate_) *to send envoys.*

2. Even though the Infinitive itself appears without Subject, it may take a Predicate Noun or Adjective in the Accusative; as,---

aliud est Ä«rÄ cundum esse, aliud Ä«rÄ tum, _it is one thing to be irascible, another to be angry_;

impÄ«ne quaelibet facere, id est rÄ«gem esse, _to do whatever you please with impunity, that is to be a king_.

a. But when licet is followed by a Dative of the person, a Predicate Noun or Adjective with esse is attracted into the same case; as, licuit esse Ä tiÄ sÄ Themistoclä««, lit. *it was permitted to Themistocles to be at leisure*. So sometimes with other Impersonals.

B. As Object.

328. 1. The Infinitive without Subject Accusative is used as the Object of many verbs, to denote another action of the same subject, particularly after—

volÄ , cupiÄ , mä lÄ , nÄ lÄ , dÄ«beo, cÄ gitÄ , meditor, *purpose*, _ought_ ; _intend_ ; statuÄ , cÄ nstituÄ , _decide_ ; neglegÄ , _neglect_ ; audeÄ , _dare_ ; vereor, timeÄ , _fear_ ; studeÄ , contendÄ , _strive_ ; mä tÄ«rÄ , festÄ«nÄ , properÄ , contendÄ , parÄ , *prepare* (so parÄ tus) ; _hasten_ ; incipiÄ , coepÄ« , Ä«nstituÄ , assuÄ«scÄ , cÄ nsuÄ«scÄ , _accustom_ _begin_ ; myself_ (so assuÄ«tus, Ä«nsuÄ«tus, pergÄ , _continue_ ; assuÄ«factus) ; dÄ«sinÄ , dÄ«sistÄ , _cease_ ; discÄ , _learn_ ; possum, _can_ ; sciÄ , _know how_ ; cÄ nor, _try_ ; soleÄ , _am wont_ ;

as,—

tÄ« hÄ s intuÄ«rÄ« audÄ«s, _do you dare to look on these men_ ?

DÄ«mosthenÄ«s ad flÄ«ctÄ«s maris dÄ«clÄ mä re solÄ«bat, *Demosthenes used to declaim by the waves of the sea*.

2. A Predicate Noun or Adjective with these Infinitives is attracted into the Nominative; as,—

beÄ tus esse sine virtÄ«te nÄ«mä potest, _no one can be happy without virtue_ ;

CatÄ esse quam vidÄ«rÄ« bonus mä lÄ«bat, *Cato preferred to be good rather than to seem so*.

Infinitive with Subject Accusative.

329. This is used chiefly as Subject or Object but also as Predicate or Appositive.

A. As Subject.

330. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative (like the simple Infinitive) is used as Subject with esse and Impersonal verbs, particularly with aequum est, Ä«tile est, turpe est, fÄ«ma est, spÄ«s est, fÄ«s est, nefÄ«s est, opus est, necesse est, oportet, cÄ nstat, praestat, licet, etc.; as,—

nihil in bellÄ oportet contemnÄ««, _nothing ought to be despised in war_ ;

apertum est sibi quemque nÄ tÄ«rÄ esse cÄ rum, *it is manifest that by nature everybody is dear to himself*.

B. As Object.

331. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is used as Object after the following classes of verbs:

1. Most frequently after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like (*_Verba Sentiendi et DÄ“clÄ“randÄ“_*). This is the regular construction of Principal Clauses of Indirect Discourse. Verbs that take this construction are, among others, the following: *sentiÄ“ , audiÄ“ , videÄ“ , cognÄ“ scÄ“ ; putÄ“ , jÄ“dicÄ“ , spÄ“rÄ“ , cÄ“ nfÄ“dÄ“ ; sciÄ“ , meminÄ“« ; dicÄ“ , affÄ“rmÄ“ , negÄ“ (_say that ... not_)*, *trÄ“ dÄ“ , nÄ“ rrÄ“ , fateor, respondeÄ“ , scrÄ“bÄ“ , prÄ“ mittÄ“ , glÄ“ rior*. Also the phrases: *certiÄ“ rem faciÄ“ (_inform_)*, *memoriÄ“ teneÄ“ (_remember_)*, etc.

Examples:—

EpicÄ“rÄ“Ä“ putant cum corporibus simul animÄ“ s interÄ“re, _the Epicureans think that the soul perishes with the body_;

ThalÄ“s dÄ“«xit aquam esse initium rÄ““rum, _Thales said that water was the first principle of the universe_;

DÄ“mocritus negat quicquid esse sempiternum, _Democritus says nothing is everlasting_;

spÄ“rÄ“ eum ventÄ“rum esse, I hope that he will come.

II. With *jubeÄ“ , order*, and *vetÄ“ , _forbid_*; as,—

Caesar mä“litÄ“s pontem facere jussit, Caesar ordered the soldiers to make a bridge.

a. When the name of the person who is ordered or forbidden to do something is omitted, the Infinitive with *jubeÄ“* and *vetÄ“* is put in the Passive; as, *Caesar pontem fierÄ“« jussit.*

III. With *patior* and *sinÄ“ , permit, _allow_*; as,—

nÄ“llÄ“ sÄ“ implicÄ“ rÄ“« negÄ“ tiÄ“ passus est, he did not permit himself to be involved in any difficulty.

IV. With *volÄ“ , nÄ“ lÄ“ , mä“ lÄ“ , cupiÄ“* , when the Subject of the Infinitive is different from that of the governing verb; as,—

nec mihi hunc errÄ“ rem extorquÄ“rÄ“« volÄ“ , _nor do I wish this error to be wrested from me_;

eÄ“ s rÄ“s jactÄ“ rÄ“« nÄ“ lÄ“bat, _he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed_;

tÄ“ tuÄ“ fruÄ“« virtÄ“«te cupimus, we desire that you enjoy your worth.

a. When the Subject of both verbs is the same, the simple Infinitive is regularly used in accordance with Â§ 328, 1. But exceptions occur, especially in case of *esse* and Passive Infinitives as,—

cupiÄ“ mä“ esse clÄ“mentem, _I desire to be lenient_;

TÄ“moleÄ“ n mä“ luit sÄ“ diligÄ“« quam metuÄ“«, Timoleon preferred to be loved rather than feared.

b. *VolÄ“* also admits the Subjunctive, with or without *ut*; *nÄ“ lÄ“* the Subjunctive alone. (See Â§ 296, 1, a.)

V. With Verbs of *emotion (joy, sorrow, regret, etc.)*, especially *gaudeÄ“ , laetor, doleÄ“ ; aegrÄ“ ferÄ“ , molestÄ“ ferÄ“ , graviter ferÄ“ , am annoyed, _distressed_*; *mÄ“«ror, queror, indignor*; as,—

gaudeÄ“ tÄ“ salvum advenÄ“re, _I rejoice that you arrive safely_;

nĀ n molestĀ“ ferunt sĀ“ libĀ«dinum vinculĀ«s laxĀ tĀ s Ā“sse, _they are not troubled at being released from the bonds of passion_;

mĀ«ror tĀ“ ad mĀ“ nihil scrĀ«bere, *I wonder that you write me nothing.*

a. Instead of an Infinitive these verbs also sometimes admit a quod– clause as Object. (See Â§ 299.) Thus:—

mĀ«ror quod nĀ n loqueris, *I wonder that you do not speak.*

VI. Some verbs which take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing (Â§ 178, 1), may substitute an Infinitive for the second Accusative; as,—

cĀ gĀ tĀ“ hĀ c facere, *I compel you to do this* (_cf._ tĀ“ hĀ c cĀ gĀ);

docuĀ« tĀ“ contentum esse, *I taught you to be content* (_cf._ tĀ“ modestiam docuĀ«, _I taught you temperance_).

Passive Construction of the Foregoing Verbs.

332. Those verbs which in the Active are followed by the Infinitive with Subject Accusative, usually admit the personal construction of the Passive. This is true of the following and of some others:—

a) jubeor, vetor, sinor; as,—

mĀ«litĀ“s pontem facere jussĀ« sunt, _the soldiers were ordered to build a bridge_;

pĀ ns fierĀ« jussus est, _a bridge was ordered built_;

mĀ«litĀ“s castrĀ«s exĀ«re vetitĀ« sunt, _the troops were forbidden to go out of the camp_;

SĀ“stius ClĀ dium accĀ«sĀ re nĀ n est situs, *Sestius was not allowed to accuse Clodius.*

b) videor, *I am seen*, _I seem_ ; as,—

vidĀ“tur comperisse, *he seems to have discovered.*

c) dĀ«cor, putor, exĀ«stimor, jĀ«dicor (in all persons); as,—

dĀ«citur in Italiam vĀ“nisse, _he is said to have come into Italy_;

RĀ mulus prĀ«mus rĀ“x RĀ mĀ nĀ rum fuisse putĀ tur, *Romulus is thought to have been the first king of the Romans.*

d) fertur, feruntur, trĀ ditur, trĀ duntur (only in the third person); as,—

fertur HomĀ“rus caecus fuisse, _Homer is said to have been blind_;

carmina ArchilochĀ« contumĀ“liĀ«s referta esse trĀ duntur, _Archilochus's poems are reported to have been full of abuse_.

NOTE.—In compound tenses and periphrastic forms, the last two classes of verbs, c), d), more commonly take the impersonal construction; as—

trā ditum est Homā“rum caecum fuisse, *the story goes that Homer was blind.*

Infinitive with Adjectives.

333. The Infinitive with Adjectives (except parā tus, assuā“tus, etc.; see Â§ 328, 1) occurs only in poetry and post-Augustan prose writers; as,—

contentus dā“mā nstrā sse, *contented to have proved*;

audā x omnia perpetā«*, bold for enduring everything.*

Infinitive in Exclamations.

334. The Infinitive is used in Exclamations implying *scorn, indignation, or regret*. An intensive -ne is often attached to some word in the clause. Examples:—

huncine sā lem tam nigrum surrā“xe mihi, *to think that to-day's sun rose with such evil omen for me!*

sedā“re tā tā s diā“s in vā«llā , *to stay whole days at the villa.*

Historical Infinitive.

335. The Infinitive is often used in historical narrative instead of the Imperfect Indicative. The Subject stands in the Nominative; as,—

interim cottā«diā“ Caesar Haeduā s frā«mentum flā gitā re, *meanwhile Caesar was daily demanding grain of the Haedui.*

PARTICIPLES.

Tenses of the Participle.

336. 1. The tenses of the Participle, like those of the infinitive (see Â§ 270), express time not absolutely, but with reference to the verb upon which the Participle depends.

2. The Present Participle denotes action *contemporary with* that of the verb. Thus:—

audiā tā“ loquentem = *you ARE* speaking and I hear you;

audiā“bam tā“ loquentem = *you WERE* speaking and I heard you;

audiam tā“ loquentem = *you WILL BE* speaking and I shall hear you.

a. The Present Participle is sometimes employed with Conative force; as,—

assurgentem rā“gem resupā«nat, *as the king was trying to rise, he threw him down.*

3. The Perfect Passive Participle denotes action *prior to* that of the verb. Thus:—

locā«tus taceā = *I HAVE* spoken and am silent;

locā«tus tacui = *I HAD* spoken and then was silent;

locutus taciturnus = I SHALL speak and then shall be silent.

4. The absolute time of the action of a participle, therefore, is determined entirely by the finite verb with which it is connected.

5. Certain Perfect Passive Participles of Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs are used as Presents; viz. arbitrus, ausus, ratus, gressus, solitus, catus, diffusus, secutus, veritus.

Use of Participles.

337. As an Adjective the Participle may be used either as an attributive or predicate modifier of a Substantive.

1. Attributive Use. This presents no special peculiarities. Examples are:—

gloria est consensus laus bonorum, glory is the unanimous praise of the good;

Conon muros Lysandra destructos reficit, Conon restored the walls destroyed by Lysander.

2. Predicate Use. Here the Participle is often equivalent to a subordinate clause. Thus the Participle may denote:—

a) Time; as,—

omne malum nascitur facile opprimitur, every evil is easily crushed at birth.

b) A Condition; as,—

mente tunc non possumus cibum et potum ne complere, if gorged with food and drink, we cannot use our intellects.

c) Manner; as,—

Solon senescere dicitur multa in diebus addiscentem, Solon said he grew old learning many new things daily.

d) Means; as,—

Sol oriens diem conficit, the sun, by its rising, makes the day.

e) Opposition ('though'); as,—

mentem non hominem verum quidem dicentem credimus, we do not believe a liar, though he speaks the truth.

f) Cause; as,—

perfidiam veritus ad suos recessit, since he feared treachery, he returned to his own troops.

3. Vide and audi, besides the Infinitive, take the Present Participle in the Predicate use; as,—

vide te fugientem, I see you fleeing.

a. So frequently *faci* , *fi* , *ind* , etc.; as,—

e «s *Cat* *nem respondentem facimus*, _we represent Cato replying to them_;

Hom «rus *La* «rtem *colentem agrum facit*, _Homer represents La «rtes tilling the field._

4. The Future Active Participle (except *fut* «rus) is regularly confined to its use in the Periphrastic Conjugation, but in poets and later writers it is used independently, especially to denote _purpose_; as,—

v «n «runt *castra oppugn* «t «r «, _they came to assault the camp._

5. The Perfect Passive Participle is often equivalent to a *co* «rdinate clause; as,—

urbem captam d «ruit, *he captured and destroyed the city* (lit. _he destroyed the city captured_).

6. The Perfect Passive Participle in combination with a noun is sometimes equivalent to an abstract noun with a dependent Genitive; as,—

post urbem conditam, _after the founding of the city_;

Qu «nctius *d* «f «nsus, _the defense of Quinctius_;

quibus animus occup «tus, _the preoccupation of the mind with which._

7. *Habe* « sometimes takes a Perfect Passive Participle in the Predicate construction with a force not far removed from that of the Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative; as,—

equit «tus *quem co* «ctum *hab* «bat, _the cavalry which he had collected._

8. The Gerundive denotes *obligation, necessity*, etc. Like other Participles it may be used either as Attributive or Predicate.

a) Less frequently as Attributive. Thus:—

liber legendus, _a book worth reading_;

l «g «s *observandae*, *laws deserving of observance*.

b) More frequently as Predicate.

1) In the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation (*amandus est*, etc.). In this use Intransitive Verbs can be used only impersonally, but admit their ordinary case—construction (Gen., Dat., Abl.); as,—

veniendum est, _it is necessary to come_;

obl «v «scendum *est off* «ns «rum, _one must forget injuries_;

numquam pr «dit «r « cr «dendum *est*, _you must never trust a traitor_;

su « cuique «tendum *est j* «dici «, *every man must use his own judgment*.

2) After *c* «r «, _provide for_; *d* «, *tr* « d «, _give over_; *relinqu* «, _leave_; *conc* «d «, *hand over*,

and some other verbs, instead of an object clause, or to denote purpose; as,—

Caesar pontem in Ararē faciendum curavit, *Caesar provided for the construction of a bridge over the Arar*;

imperator urbem militibus dedit, *the general handed over the city to the soldiers to plunder*.

9. For the Gerundive as the equivalent of the Gerund, see § 339, 1.

THE GERUND.

338. As a verbal noun the Gerund admits noun constructions as follows:—

1. Genitive. The Genitive of the Gerund is used—

a) With Nouns, as objective or Appositional Genitive (see § 200, 202); as,—

cupiditas dominandae, *desire of ruling*;

ars scribendae, *the art of writing*.

b) With Adjectives; as,—

cupidus audiendae, *desirous of hearing*.

c) With causae, gratiae; as,—

discendae causae, *for the sake of learning*.

2. Dative. The Dative of the Gerund is used—

a) With Adjectives; as,—

aqua utilis est bibendae, *water is useful for drinking*.

b) With Verbs (rarely); as,—

adfui scribendae, *I was present at the writing*.

3. Accusative. The Accusative of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions, chiefly ad and in to denote purpose; as,—

homo ad agendum natus est, *man is born for action*.

4. Ablative. The Ablative of the Gerund is used—

a) Without a Preposition, as an Ablative of Means, Cause, etc. (see § 218, 219); as,—

mens discenda alitur et cogitanda, *the mind is nourished by learning and reflection*.

Themistocles maria praedicta circumnavigavit, *Themistocles made the sea*

safe by following up the pirates.

b) After the prepositions *Ä*, *dÄ“*, *ex*, *in*; *as*,--

summa voluptÄ s ex discendÄ capitur, *_the keenest pleasure is derived from learning_;*

multa dÄ“ bene beÄ tÄ“que vÄ«vendÄ Ä PlatÄ ne disputÄ ta sunt, *there was much discussion by Plato on the subject of living well and happily.*

5. As a rule, only the Genitive of the Gerund and the Ablative (without a preposition) admit a Direct Object.

Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund.

339. 1. Instead of the Genitive or Ablative of the Gerund with a Direct Object, another construction *_may be, and very often is, used_*. This consists in putting the Direct Object in the case of the Gerund (Gen. or Abl.) and using the Gerundive in agreement with it. This is called the Gerundive Construction. Thus:--

GERUND CONSTRUCTION. GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION. *cupidus urbem videndÄ«*, *_desirous of cupidus urbis videndae; seeing the city_*. *dÄ“lector Ä rÄ tÄ rÄ“s legendÄ*, *_I am dÄ“lector Ä rÄ tÄ ribus legendÄ«s charmed with reading the orators_*.

2. The Gerundive Construction *must be used* to avoid a Direct Object with the Dative of the Gerund, or with a case dependent upon a Preposition; *as*,--

locus castrÄ«s mä«niendÄ«s aptus, *_a place adapted to fortifying a camp_;*

ad pä cem petendam vÄ“nä“runt, *_they came to ask peace_;*

multum temporis cÄ nsÄ«mä in legendÄ«s poÄ“tÄ«s, *I spend much time in reading the poets.*

3. In order to avoid ambiguity (see Ä§ 236, 2), the Gerundive Construction must not be employed in case of Neuter Adjectives used substantively. Thus regularly--

philosophÄ« cupidÄ« sunt vÄ“rum invÄ“stÄ«gandÄ«, *philosophers are eager for discovering truth* (rarely *vÄ“rÄ« invÄ“stÄ«gandÄ«*);

studium plÄ«ra cognÄ scendÄ«, *a desire of knowing more* (not *plÄ«rium cognÄ scendÄ rum*).

4. From the nature of the case only Transitive Verbs can be used in the Gerundive construction; but *Ä«tor*, *fruur*, *fungor*, *potior* (originally transitive) regularly admit it; *as*,--

hostÄ“s in spem potiundÄ rum castrÄ rum vÄ“nerant, *the enemy had conceived the hope of gaining possession of the camp.*

5. The Genitives *meÄ«*, *tuÄ«*, *suÄ«*, *nostrÄ«*, *vestrÄ«*, when used in the Gerundive Construction, are regularly employed without reference to Gender or Number, since they were originally Neuter Singular Adjectives used substantively. Thus:--

mulier suÄ« servandÄ« causÄ aufÄ«git, *_the woman fled for the sake of saving herself_;*

lÄ“gÄ tÄ« in castra vÄ“nä“runt suÄ« pÄ«rgandÄ« causÄ, *the envoys came into camp for the purpose of clearing themselves.*

So nostrā servandā causā, *for the sake of saving ourselves.*

6. Occasionally the Genitive of the Gerundive Construction is used to denote *_purpose_*; as,—

quae ille cāpit lāgum ac lābertis subvertundae, *which he undertook for the purpose of overthrowing the laws and liberty.*

7. The Dative of the Gerundive Construction occurs in some expressions which have the character of formulas; as,—

decemvirā lāgibus scrābundās, *_decemvirs for codifying the laws_*;

quāndecimvirā sacrās faciundās, *quindecimvirs for performing the sacrifices.*

THE SUPINE.

340. 1. The Supine in *-um* is used after Verbs of motion to express *_purpose_*; as,—

lāgātā ad Caesarem grātū convānunt, *envoys came to Caesar to congratulate him.*

a. The Supine in *-um* may take an Object; as,—

pācē petūtū rātā s Rām mittunt, *they send envoys to Rome to ask for peace.*

b. Note the phrase:—

dā (collocā) fāliam nāptum, *I give my daughter in marriage.*

2. The Supine in *-ā* is used as an Ablative of Specification with *facilis*, *difficilis*, *incrēdibilis*, *jācundus*, *optimus*, etc.; also with *fās est*, *nefās est*, *opus est*; as,—

haec rās est facilis cognitā, *_this thing is easy to learn_*;

hāc est optimum factā, *this is best to do.*

a. Only a few Supines in *-ā* are in common use, chiefly *audētā*, *cognitā*, *dictā*, *factā*, *vāsā*.

b. The Supine in *-ā* never takes an Object.

* * * * *

CHAPTER VI.

—_Particles._

COORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

341. Copulative Conjunctions. These *join* one word, phrase, or clause to another.

1. a) *et* simply connects.

b) –que joins more closely than et, and is used especially where the two members have an internal connection with each other; as,—

parentÄ“s lÄ«berÄ«que, *_parents and children_*;

cum hominÄ“s aestÄ« febrÄ«que jactantur, *when people are tossed about with heat and fever.*

c) atque (ac) usually emphasizes the second of the two things connected,—_and also, and indeed, and in fact_. After words of *likeness* and *difference*, atque (ac) has the force of *as, than*. Thus:—

ego idem sentiÄ« ac tÄ«, *_I think the same as you_*;

haud aliter ac, *not otherwise than.*

d) neque (nec) means *and not, neither, nor*.

2. a) –que is an enclitic, and is appended always to the second of two words connected. Where it connects phrases or clauses, it is appended to the first word of the second clause; but when the first word of the second clause is a Preposition, –que is regularly appended to the next following word; as,—

ob eamque rem, *and on account of that thing.*

b) atque is used before vowels and consonants; ac never before vowels, and seldom before c, g, qu.

c) et nÄ« n is used for neque when the emphasis of the negative rests upon a special word; as,—

vetus et nÄ« n ignÄ« bilis Ä« rÄ« tor, *an old and not ignoble orator.*

d) For *and nowhere, and never, and none*, the Latin regularly said nec Ä« squam, nec umquam, nec Ä« llus, etc.

3. Correlatives. Copulative Conjunctions are frequently used correlatively; as,—

et ... et, *_both ... and_*;

neque (nec) ... neque (nec), *_neither ... nor_*;

cum ... tum, *_while ... at the same time_*;

tum ... tum, *_not only ... but also_*.

Less frequently:—

et ... neque; neque ... et.

a. Note that the Latin, with its tendency to emphasize antithetical relations, often uses correlatives, especially et ... et, et ... neque, neque ... et, where the English employs but a single connective.

4. In enumerations—

a) The different members of a series may follow one another without connectives (Asyndeton; see Ä« § 346). Thus:—

ex cupiditĀ tibus odia, discidia, discordiae, sĀ“ditiĀ nĀ“s, bella nĀ scuntur, _from covetous desires spring up hatred, dissension, discord, sedition, wars_.

b) The different members may severally be connected by et (Polysyndeton). Thus:—

hĀ rae cĀ“dunt et diĀ“s et mĀ“nsĀ“s et annĀ«, *hours and days and months and years pass away.*

c) The connective may be omitted between the former members, while the last two are connected by –que (rarely et); as,—

Caesar in CarnutĀ“s, AndĀ“s TuronĀ“sque legiĀ nĀ“s dĀ“dĀ«cit, _Caesar leads his legions into the territory of the Carnutes, Andes, and Turones_.

342. Disjunctive Conjunctions indicate an *alternative*.

1. a) aut must be used when the alternatives are mutually exclusive; as,—

cita mors venit aut victĀ ria laeta, _(either) swift death or glad victory comes_.

b) vel, –ve (enclitic) imply a choice between the alternatives; as,—

quĀ« aethĀ“r vel caelum nĀ minĀ tur, *which is called aether or heaven.*

2. Correlatives. Disjunctive Conjunctions are often used correlatively; as,—

aut ... aut, _either ... or_;

vel ... vel, _either ... or_;

sĀ«ve ... sĀ«ve, _if ... or if_.

343. Adversative Conjunctions. These denote *opposition*.

1. a) sed, *but*, merely denotes opposition.

b) vĀ“rum, *but*, is stronger than sed, but is less frequently used.

c) autem, *but on the other hand, however*, marks a transition. It is always post–positive.

DEFINITION. A post–positive word is one that cannot begin a sentence, but is placed after one or more words.

d) at, *but*, is used especially in disputation, to introduce an opposing argument.

e) atquĀ« means *but yet*.

f) tamen, *yet*, usually stands after the emphatic word, but not always.

g) vĀ“rĀ , *however, indeed, in truth*, is always post–positive.

2. Note the correlative expressions:—

nā n sĀ lum (nā n modo) ... sed etiam, _not only ... but also_;

nā n modo nā n ... sed nĀ“ ... quidem, _not only not, but not even_ ; as,--

nā n modo tibi nā n Ä«rÄ scor, sed nĀ“ reprehendĀ quidem factum tuum, _I not only am not angry with you, but I do not even blame your action_.

a. But when the sentence has but one verb, and this stands with the second member, nā n modo may be used for nā n modo nā n; as,--

adsentĀ tiĀ nā n modo amÄ«cĀ , sed nĀ“ lÄ«berĀ quidem digne est, _flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man._

344. Illative Conjunctions. These represent the statement which they introduce as *following from* or as *in conformity with* what has preceded.

1. a) itaque = *and so, accordingly*.

b) ergĀ = *therefore, accordingly*.

c) igitur (regularly post-positive[58]) = *therefore, accordingly*.

2. Igitur is never combined with et, atque, -que, or neque.

345. Causal Conjunctions. These denote *cause*, or *give an explanation*. They are nam, namque, enim (post-positive), etenim, *for*.

346. Asyndeton. The conjunction is sometimes omitted between coordinate members, particularly in lively or impassioned narration. Thus:--

a) A copulative Conjunction is omitted; as,--

avÄ ritia Ä«nfÄ«nÄ«ta, Ä«nsatiÄ bilis est, _avarice is boundless (and) insatiable_;

Cn. PompejĀ , M. CrassĀ cĀ nsulibus, _in the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey (and) Marcus Crassus_.

The conjunction is regularly omitted between the names of consuls when the praenomen (_MÄ rcus_, *Gaius*, etc.) is expressed.

b) An Adversative Conjunction may be omitted; as,--

ratiĀ nĀ“s dÄ“fuÄ“runt, Ä«bertÄ s Ä rÄ tiĀ nis nā n dÄ“fuit, _arguments were lacking, (but) abundance of words was not_.

ADVERBS.

347. 1. The following particles, sometimes classed as Conjunctions, are more properly Adverbs:--

etiam, *also, even*.

quoque (always post-positive), *also*.

quidem (always post-positive) lays stress upon the preceding word. It is sometimes equivalent to the English *indeed, in fact*, but more frequently cannot be rendered, except by vocal emphasis.

nā“ ... quidem means *not even*; the emphatic word or phrase always stands between; as, nā“ ille quidem, *not even he*.

tamen and vā“rā , in addition to their use as Conjunctions, are often employed as Adverbs.

2. Negatives. Two negatives are regularly equivalent to an affirmative as in English, as nā n nā«llā«, *some*; but when nā n, nā“mā , nihil, numquam, etc., are accompanied by neque ... neque, nā n ... nā n, nā n modo, or nā“ ... quidem, the latter particles simply take up the negation and emphasize it; as,—

habē hā«c nā“minem neque amā«cum neque cognā tum, *I have here no one, neither friend nor relative*.

nā n enim praetereundum est nā“ id quidem, *for not even that must be passed by*.

a. Haud in Cicero and Caesar occurs almost exclusively as a modifier of Adjectives and Adverbs, and in the phrase *haud sciā an*. Later writers use it freely with verbs.

* * * * *

CHAPTER VII.

—_Word-order and Sentence-Structure._

A. WORD-ORDER.

348. In the normal arrangement of the Latin sentence the Subject stands at the beginning of the sentence, the Predicate at the end; as,—

Dā rā«us classem quā«ngentā rum nā vium comparā vit, *Darius got ready a fleet of five hundred ships*.

349. But for the sake of emphasis the normal arrangement is often abandoned, and the emphatic word is put at the beginning, less frequently at the end of the sentence; as,—

magnus in hā c bellā Themistoclē“s fuit, *GREAT was Themistocles in this war*;

aliud iter habā“mus nā«llum, *other course we have NONE*.

SPECIAL PRINCIPLES.

350. 1. Nouns. A Genitive or other oblique case regularly follows the word upon which it depends. Thus:—

a) Depending upon a Noun:—

tribā«nus plā“bis, *tribune of the plebs*;

fā«lius rā“gis, *son of the king*;

vir magnā« animā«, *a man of noble spirit*.

Yet always *senatus consultum, plerumque*.

b) Depending upon an Adjective:—

ignarus rerum, _ignorant of affairs_;

dignus amicitiae, _worthy of friendship_;

plurimum aequum, _more than (what is) fair_.

2. Appositives. An Appositive regularly follows its Subject; as,—

Philippus, rex Macedonum, _Philip, king of the Macedonians_;

adsententia, vitiorum adiutor, _flattery, promoter of evils_.

Yet *flumen Rhenus*, _the River Rhine_; and always in good prose *urbs Roma*, *the city Rome*.

3. The Vocative usually follows one or more words; as,—

audet, Caesar, _hear, Caesar!_

4. Adjectives. No general law can be laid down for the position of Adjectives. On the whole they precede the noun oftener than they follow it.

a. Adjectives of *quantity* (including _numerals_) regularly precede their noun; as,—

omnes homines, _all men_;

septingentae navis, *seven hundred vessels*.

b. Note the force of position in the following:—

media urbs, _the middle of the city_;

urbs media, *the middle city*,

extrimum bellum, _the end of the war_;

bellum extrimum, *the last war*.

c. *Romanus* and *Latinus* regularly follow; as,—

senatus populusque Romanus, _the Roman Senate and People_;

ludaei Romani, _the Roman games_;

feriae Latinae, *the Latin holidays*.

d. When a Noun is modified both by an Adjective and by a Genitive, a favorite order is: Adjective, Genitive, Noun; as,—

summa omnium rÄ“rum abundantia, *the greatest abundance of all things.*

5. Pronouns.

a. The Demonstrative, Relative, and Interrogative Pronouns regularly precede the Noun; as,—

hÄ“c homÄ“ , *_this man_;*

ille homÄ“ , *_that man_;*

erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus, etc., *_there were two routes, by which_, etc.*

quÄ“ homÄ“ ? *_what sort of man_?*

b. But ille in the sense of '*that well known,*' '*that famous,*' usually stands after its Noun; as,—

testula illa, *_that well-known custom of ostracism_;*

MÄ“dÄ“a illa, *that famous Medea.*

c. Possessive and Indefinite Pronouns usually follow their Noun; as,—

pater meus, *_my father_;*

homÄ“ quÄ“dam, *_a certain man_;*

mulier aliqua, *some woman.*

But for purposes of contrast the Possessive often precedes its Noun; as,—

meus pater, *MY father* (i.e. as opposed to *yours, his,* etc.).

d. Where two or more Pronouns occur in the same sentence, the Latin is fond of putting them in close proximity; as,—

nisi forte ego vÄ“ bÄ“s cessÄ“ re videor, *unless perchance I seem to you to be doing nothing.*

6. Adverbs and Adverbial phrases regularly precede the word they modify; as,—

valdÄ“ dÄ“ligÄ“ns, *_extremely diligent_;*

saepe dÄ“xÄ“, *_I have often said_;*

tÄ“ jam diÄ“ hortÄ“ mur, *_we have long been urging you_;*

paulÄ“ post, *a little after.*

7. Prepositions regularly precede the words they govern.

a. But limiting words often intervene between the Preposition and its case; as,—

dÄ“ commÄ“nÄ“ hominum memoriÄ“ , *_concerning the common memory of men_;*

ad beatam vitam vendam, *for living happily.*

b. When a noun is modified by an Adjective, the Adjective is often placed before the preposition; as,--

magna in dolore, *in great grief*;

summam cum laude, *with the highest credit*;

quam de causa, *for which cause*;

hanc ob rem, *on account of this thing.*

c. For Anastrophe, by which a Preposition is put after its case, see § 144, 3.

8. Conjunctions. Autem, enim, and igitur regularly stand in the second place in the sentence, but when combined with est or sunt they often stand third; as,--

ita est enim, *for so it is.*

9. Words or Phrases referring to the preceding sentence or to some part of it, regularly stand first; as,--

id ut audivit, Corcyram migravit, *when he heard that (referring to the contents of the preceding sentence), he moved to Corcyra*;

et cum Caesar venisset, timentis confirmat, *when Caesar had come thither (i.e. to the place just mentioned), he encouraged the timid.*

10. The Latin has a fondness for putting side by side words which are etymologically related; as,--

ut ad senem senex de senectute, scripsit ad amicum cum amicissimus amicitiam, *as I, an old man, wrote to an old man, on old age, so in this book, as a fond friend, I have written to a friend, concerning friendship.*

11. Special rhetorical devices for indicating emphasis are the following:--

a) Hypocorism, which consists in the separation of words that regularly stand together; as,--

septimus mihi Originum liber est in manibus, *the seventh book of my 'Origines' is under way*;

receptus Caesar proficiscitur, *having recovered Oricus, Caesar set out.*

b) Anaphora, which consists in the repetition of the same word or the same word-order in successive phrases; as,--

sed plene omnes sunt libri, plene sapientium voces, plena exemplarum vetustas, *but all books are full of it, the voices of sages are full of it, antiquity is full of examples of it.*

c) Chiasmus,[59] which consists in changing the relative order of words in two antithetical phrases; as,--

multas defendi, laesum minem, *many have I defended, I have injured no one*;

horribilem illum diem aliis, nobis faustum, *that day dreadful to others, for us fortunate.*

d) Synchrony, or the interlocked arrangement. This is mostly confined to poetry, yet occurs in rhetorical prose, especially that of the Imperial Period; as,—

simul tam Pompejā nārum grā tiam partium, *pretended interest in the Pompeian party.*

12. Metrical Close. At the end of a sentence certain cadences were avoided; others were much employed. Thus:—

a) Cadences avoided.

_ v v _ v or _ ; as, esse videtur (close of hexameter).

_ v v v or _ ; as, esse potest (close of pentameter).

b) Cadences frequently employed.

_ v _ ; as, auxerant.

_ v _ v ; as, comprobavit.

_ v v v _ v ; as, esse videtur.

v _ _ v _ ; as, rogatus.

B. SENTENCE-STRUCTURE.

351. 1. Unity of Subject.—In complex sentences the Latin regularly holds to unity of Subject in the different members; as,—

Caesar primum suū, deinde omnium ex conspectu remanserunt equos, ut aequa periculum spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit, *Caesar having first removed his own horse from sight, then the horses of all, in order, by making the danger equal, to take away hope of flight, encouraged his men and joined battle.*

2. A word serving as the common Subject or Object of the main clause and a subordinate one, stands before both; as,—

Haedui cum sese defendere non possent, legati ad Caesarem mittunt, *since the Haedui could not defend themselves, they sent envoys to Caesar;*

ille etsi flagrabat bellandae cupiditate, tamen pacem servandum putavit, *although he was burning with a desire to fight, yet he thought he ought to aim at peace.*

a. The same is true also

1) When the Subject of the main clause is Object (Direct or Indirect) of a subordinate clause; as,—

Caesar, cum hoc nuntiatum esset, statim ab urbe profectus, *when this had been reported to Caesar he hastened to set out from the city.*

2) When the Subject of a subordinate clause is at the same time the Object (Direct or Indirect) of the main clause; as,—

L. Manlius, cum dictator fuisset, M. Pomponius tribunus plebis bis diem dixit, _M. Pomponius, tribune of the people, instituted proceedings against Lucius Manlius, though he had been dictator_.

3. Of subordinate clauses, temporal, conditional, and adversative clauses more commonly precede the main clause; indirect questions and clauses of purpose or result more commonly follow; as,—

postquam haec dixit, profectus est, _after he said this, he set out_;

sic quis ita agat, imprudens sit, _if any one should act so, he would be devoid of foresight_;

accidit ut una nocte omnes Hermae cicerentur, *it happened that in a single night all the Hermae were thrown down.*

4. Sometimes in Latin the main verb is placed within the subordinate clause; as,—

sic quid est in me ingenium, quod sentiam quam sit exiguum, _if there is any talent in me, and I know how little it is_.

5. The Latin Period. The term Period, when strictly used, designates a compound sentence in which the subordinate clauses are inserted within the main clause; as,—

Caesar etsi intellegat quae causa ea dicerentur, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris cerneret, Indutiomarus ad se venire iussit, _though Caesar perceived why this was said, yet, lest he should be forced to spend the summer among the Treveri, he ordered Indutiomarus to come to him_.

In the Periodic structure the thought is suspended until the end of the sentence is reached. Many Roman writers were extremely fond of this sentence-structure, and it was well adapted to the inflectional character of their language; in English we generally avoid it.

6. When there are several subordinate clauses in one Period, the Latin so arranges them as to avoid a succession of verbs. Thus:—

At hostes cum mississent, quae in castris gererentur, cognoscere, ubi se deceperat, intellexerunt, omnibus praesens subsequenter ad flumen contendunt, _but the enemy when they had sent men to learn what was going on in camp, after discovering that they had been outwitted, followed with all their forces and hurried to the river_.

* * * * *

CHAPTER VIII.

—Hints on Latin Style.—

352. In this chapter brief consideration is given to a few features of Latin diction which belong rather to style than to formal grammar.

NOUNS.

353. 1. Where a distinct reference to several persons or things is involved, the Latin is frequently *much more exact in the use of the Plural* than is the English; as,—

domŏ s eunt, _they go home (i.e. to their homes_);

Germŏ nŏ« corpora cŏ«rant, _the Germans care for the body_;

animŏ s mŏ«litum recreat, _he renews the courage of the soldiers_;

diŏ«s noctŏ«sque timŏ«re, *to be in a state of fear day and night.*

2. In case of Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, the Latin often employs the Plural where the English uses the Singular; as,—

omnia sunt perdŏ«ta, _everything is lost_;

quae cum ita sint, _since this is so_;

haec omnibus pervulgŏ ta sunt, *this is very well known to all.*

3. The Latin is usually *more concrete* than the English, and especially *less bold in the personification* of abstract qualities. Thus:—

ŏ puerŏ , ŏ puerŏ«s, _from boyhood_;

Sullŏ dictŏ tŏ re, _in Sulla's dictatorship_;

mŏ« duce, _under my leadership_;

Rŏ mŏ nŏ« cum Carthŏ giniŏ«nsibus pŏ cem fŏ«cŏ«runt = _Rome made peace with Carthage_;

liber doctŏ«nae plŏ«nus = _a learned book_;

prŏ«dentiŏ Themistoclŏ«s Graecia servŏ ta est = _Themistocles's foresight saved Greece_.

4. The Nouns of Agency in –tor and –sor (see Ő§ 147, 1) denote a *permanent* or *characteristic activity*_; as,—

accŏ«sŏ tŏ rŏ«s, _(professional) accusers_;

ŏ rŏ tŏ rŏ«s, _pleaders_;

cantŏ rŏ«s, _singers_;

Arminius, Germŏ niae lŏ«berŏ tor, _Arminius, liberator of Germany_.

a. To denote single instances of an action, other expressions are commonly employed; as,—

Numa, quŏ« Rŏ mulŏ successit, _Numa, successor of Romulus_;

quŏ« mea legunt, _my readers_;

quŏ« mŏ« audiunt, *my auditors.*

5. The Latin avoids the use of prepositional phrases as modifiers of a Noun. In English we say: ' _The war

against Carthage_'; '_a journey through Gaul_'; '_cities on the sea_'; '_the book in my hands_'; '_the fight at Salamis_'; etc. The Latin in such cases usually employs another mode of expression. Thus:—

a) A Genitive; as,—

dolor injuriarum, *resentment at injuries.*

b) An Adjective; as,—

urbes maritimae, *cities on the sea*;

pugna Salaminia, *the fight at Salamis.*

c) A Participle; as,—

pugna ad Cannas facta, *the battle at Cannae.*

d) A Relative clause; as,—

liber qui in meis manibus est, *the book in my hands.*

NOTE.—Yet within certain limits the Latin does employ Prepositional phrases as Noun modifiers. This is particularly frequent when the governing noun is derived from a verb. The following are typical examples:—

transitus in Britanniam, *the passage to Britain*;

excessus vitae, *departure from life*;

odium erga Romanos, *hatred of the Romans*;

liber de senectute, *the book on old age*;

amor in patriam, *love for one's country*.

ADJECTIVES.

354. 1. Special Latin Equivalents for English Adjectives are—

a) A Genitive; as,—

virtutes animarum = *moral virtues*;

dolor corporis = *bodily ills.*

b) An Abstract Noun; as,—

novitas rei = *the strange circumstance*;

asperitas viarum = *rough roads.*

c) Hendiadys (see § 374, 4); as,—

ratio et ratio = *systematic order*;

Ratio et impetus = *eager onset*.

d) Sometimes an Adverb; as,—

omnium circum populis, *all the surrounding tribes*;

suis semper hostibus, *their perpetual foes*.

2. Often a Latin Noun is equivalent to an English Noun modified by an Adjective; as,—

doctrina, *theoretical knowledge*;

prudentia, *practical knowledge*;

oppidum, *walled town*;

libellus, *little book*.

3. Adjectives are not used in immediate agreement with proper names; but an Adjective may limit vir, homo, ille, or some other word used as an Appositive of a proper name; as,—

Socrates, homo sapiens = *the wise Socrates*;

Scipio, vir fortissimus = *the doughty Scipio*;

Syracusa, urbs praecipua = *famous Syracuse*.

4. An Adjective may be equivalent to a Possessive or Subjective Genitive; as,—

pastor regis, *the shepherd of the king*;

tumultus servilis, *the uprising of the slaves*.

PRONOUNS.

355. 1. In Compound Sentences the Relative Pronoun has a fondness for connecting itself with the subordinate clause rather than the main one; as,—

Quaeritur cum quaeretur, quid maximum expediret, respondit, *when it was asked of him what was best, he replied*. (Less commonly, quaeritur, cum ab eo quaeretur, respondit.)

2. Uterque, ambo. Uterque means *each of two*; ambo means *both*; as,—

uterque fratrum abiit, *each of the two brothers departed* (i.e. separately);

ambo fratrum abiierunt, i.e. *the two brothers departed together*.

a. The Plural of uterque occurs—

1) With Nouns used only in the Plural (see § 56); as,—

in utrâ«sque castrâ«s, *in each camp*.

2) Where there is a distinct reference to two groups of persons or things; as,—

utrâ«que ducâ«s clâ« râ« fuâ«runt, *the generals on each side (several in number) were famous*.

VERBS.

356. 1. In case of Defective and Deponent Verbs, a Passive is supplied:—

a) By the corresponding verbal Nouns in combination with esse, etc.; as,—

in odiâ« sumus, *_we are hated_*;

in invidiâ« sum, *_I am envied_*;

admâ«râ« tiâ« nâ« est, *_he is admired_*;

oblâ«viâ« ne obruitur, *he is forgotten* (lit. *_is overwhelmed by oblivion_*);

in â«sâ« esse, *to be used*.

b) By the Passive of Verbs of related meaning. Thus:—

agitâ« râ« as Passive of persequâ«;

temptâ« râ« as Passive of adorâ«râ«.

2. The lack of the Perfect Active Participle in Latin is supplied—

a) Sometimes by the Perfect Passive Participle of the Deponent; as,—

adhortâ« tus, *_having exhorted_*;

veritus, *having feared*.

b) By the Ablative Absolute; as,—

hostium agrâ«s vâ« stâ« tâ«s Caesar exercitum redâ«xit, *_having ravaged the country of the enemy, Caesar led back his army_*.

c) By subordinate clauses; as,—

eâ« cum advâ«nisset, castra posuit, *_having arrived there, he pitched a camp_*;

hostes quâ« in urbem irrâ«perant, *the enemy having burst into the city*.

3. The Latin agrees with English in the stylistic employment of the Second Person Singular in an indefinite sense (= '_one_'). _Cf._ the English '_You can drive a horse to water, but you can't make him drink._' But in Latin this use is mainly confined to certain varieties of the Subjunctive, especially the Potential (Â§ 280), Jussive (Â§ 275), Deliberative (Â§ 277), and the Subjunctive in conditional sentences of the sort included under Â§ 302, 2, and 303. Examples:—

vidē rās, _you could see_;

At re vāribus, *use your strength,*

quid hāc homine faciās, _what are you to do with this man_?

māns quoque et animus, nisi tamquam lāminā oleum ānstāllās, exstinguuntur senectēte, _the intellect and mind too are extinguished by old age, unless, so to speak, you keep pouring oil into the lamp_;

tantā amā re possessiā nās suās amplexābant, ut ab eās membra dāvellā citius posse dācerās, _they clung to their possessions with such an affectionate embrace, that you would have said their limbs could sooner be torn from their bodies_.

PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

357. 1. To denote '_so many years, etc., afterwards or before_' the Latin employs not merely the Ablative of Degree of Difference with post and ante (see § 223), but has other forms of expression. Thus:—

post quāque annās, _five years afterward_;

paucās ante diās, _a few days before_;

ante quadriennium, _four years before_;

post diem quartum quam ab urbe discesserāmus, _four days after we had left the city_;

ante tertium annum quam dācesserat, *three years before he had died.*

2. The Latin seldom combines both Subject and Object with the same Infinitive; as,—

Rā mā nās Hannibalem vācisse cāstat.

Such a sentence would be ambiguous, and might mean either that the Romans had conquered Hannibal, or that Hannibal had conquered the Romans. Perspicuity was gained by the use of the Passive Infinitive; as,—

Rā mā nās ab Hannibale victās esse cāstat, *it is well established that the Romans were defeated by Hannibal.*

PECULIARITIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OF THE DATIVE.

358. 1. The English *for* does not always correspond to a Dative notion in Latin, but is often the equivalent of prā with the Ablative, viz. in the senses—

a) _In defense of_ ; as,—

prā patriā morā, _to die for one's country_.

b) *Instead of*, _in behalf of_ ; as,—

ānus prā omnibus dāxit, _one spoke for all_;

haec prā lāge dicta sunt, *these things were said for the law.*

c) *In proportion to*; as,—

pr^o multit^udine hominum e^orum f^un^os erant angust^u, *for the population, their territory was small*.

2. Similarly, English *to* when it indicates motion is rendered in Latin by *ad*.

a. Note, however, that the Latin may say either *scribere ad aliquem*, or *scribere alicui*, according as the idea of motion is or is not predominant. So in several similar expressions.

3. In the poets, verbs of *mingling with, contending with, joining, clinging to*, etc., sometimes take the Dative. This construction is a Grecism. Thus:—

s^u miscet vir^us, *he mingles with the men*;

contendis Hom^{er}u^m, *you contend with Homer*;

dextrae dextram jungere, *to clasp hand with hand*.

PECULIARITIES IN THE USE OF THE GENITIVE.

359. 1. The Possessive Genitive gives emphasis to the *possessor*, the Dative of Possessor emphasizes *the fact of possession*; as,—

hortus patris est, *the garden is my father's*;

mihi hortus est, *I possess a garden*.

2. The Latin can say either *stult^u* or *stultum est d^ucere*, *it is foolish to say*; but Adjectives of one ending permit only the Genitive; as,—

sapientis est haec s^u cum reput^u re, *it is the part of a wise man to consider this*.

* * * * *

PART VI.

PROSODY.

360. Prosody treats of metres and versification.

361. Latin Verse. Latin Poetry was essentially different in character from English. In our own language, poetry is based upon *accent*, and poetical form consists essentially in a certain succession of *accented* and *unaccented* syllables. Latin poetry, on the other hand, was based not upon accent, but upon *quantity*, so that with the Romans poetical form consisted in a certain succession of *long and short syllables*, i.e. of long and short intervals of time.

This fundamental difference in the character of English and Latin poetry is a natural result of the difference in character of the two languages. English is a strongly accented language, in which quantity is relatively subordinate. Latin, on the other hand, was a quantitative language, in which accent was relatively subordinate.

QUANTITY OF VOWELS AND SYLLABLES

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

362. The general principles for the quantity of vowels and syllables have been given above in Â§ 5. The following peculiarities are to be noted here:—

1. A vowel is usually short when followed by another vowel (Â§ 5, A, 2), but the following exceptions occur:—

a) In the Genitive termination –Ä«us (except alterÄ-us); as, illÄ«us, tÄ tÄ«us. Yet the i may be short in poetry; as, illÄ-us, tÄ tÄ-us.

b) In the Genitive and Dative Singular of the Fifth Declension; as, diÄ“Ä«, aciÄ“Ä«. But fidÄ•Ä«, rÄ•Ä«, spÄ•Ä« (Â§ 52, 1).

c) In fÄ«Ä , excepting fit and forms where i is followed by er. Thus: fÄ«Ä“bam, fÄ«at, fÄ«unt; but fÄ-erÄ«, fÄ-erem.

d) In a few other words, especially words derived from the Greek; as, dÄ«us, AenÄ“Ä s, DÄ rÄ«us, hÄ“rÄ es, etc.

2. A diphthong is usually long (Â§ 5, B, 2), but the preposition prae in composition is often shortened before a vowel; as, prÄfÄ•acÄ«us.

3. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants (Â§ 5, B, 2) is long, even when one of the consonants is in the following word; as, terret populum. Occasionally the syllable is long when both consonants are in the following word; as, prÄ segete spÄ«cÄ s.

4. Compounds of jaciÄ , though written inicit, adicit, etc., have the first syllable long, as though written inj-, adj-.

5. Before j, Äf and Ä• made a long syllable, e.g. in major, pejor, ejus, ejusdem, Pompejus, rejÄ“cit, etc. These were pronounced, mai-jor, pei-jor, ei-jus, Pompei-jus, rei-jÄ“cit, etc. So also sometimes before i, e.g. Pompe-Ä«, pronounced Pompei-Ä«; re-iciÄ , pronounced rei-iciÄ .

Quantity of Final Syllables.

A. Final Syllables ending in a Vowel.

363. 1. Final a is mostly short, but is long:—

a) In the Ablative Singular of the First Declension; as, portÄ .

b) In the Imperative; as, laudÄ .

c) In indeclinable words (except itÄf, quiÄf); as, trÄ«gintÄ , contrÄ , posteÄ , intereÄ , etc.

2. Final e is usually short, but is long:—

a) In the Ablative Singular of the Fifth Declension; as, diÄ“, rÄ“; hence hodiÄ“, quÄ rÄ“. Here belongs also famÄ“ (Â§ 59, 2, b).

b) In the Imperative of the Second Conjugation; as, *monĀ*“, *habĀ*“, etc.; yet occasionally *cavĀ•*, *valĀ•*.

c) In Adverbs derived from Adjectives of the Second Declension, along with *ferĀ*“ and *fermĀ*“. *BenĀ•*, *malĀ•*, *temerĀ•*, *saepĀ•* have Ā•.

d) In Ā“, *dĀ*“, *mĀ*“, *tĀ*“, *sĀ*“, *nĀ*“ (*not, _lest_*), *nĀ*“ (*_verily_*).

3. Final *i* is usually long, but is short in *nisĀ-* and *quasĀ-*. *Mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi*, have regularly Ā-, but sometimes Ā<; yet always *ibĀ<dem, ibĀ<que, ubĀ<que*.

4. Final *o* is regularly long, but is short:—

a) In *egĀ* , *duĀ* , *modĀ* (*_only_*), *citĀ* .

b) Rarely in the First Person Singular of the Verb, and in Nominatives of the Third Declension; as, *amĀ* , *leĀ* .

c) In a few compounds beginning with the Preposition *pro*, especially before *f*; as *prĀ fundere*, *prĀ ficĀ<scĀ<*, *prĀ fugere*.

5. Final *u* is always long.

B. Final Syllables ending in a Consonant.

364. 1. Final syllables ending in any other consonant than *s* are short. The following words, however, have a long vowel: *sĀ l*, *sĀ l*, *LĀ r*, *pĀ r*, *vĀ*“*r*, *fĀ*“*r*, *dĀ*“*c*, *dĀ*“*c*, Ā“*n*, *nĀ n*, *quĀ*“*n*, *sĀ*“*n*, *sĀ*“*c*, *cĀ*“*r*. Also the adverbs *hĀ*“*c*, *illĀ*“*c*, *istĀ*“*c*. [60]

2. Final syllables in *-as* are long; as, *terrĀ s*, *amĀ s*.

3. Final syllables in *-es* are regularly long, but are short:—

a) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of dental stems (Ā§ 33) of the Third Declension which have a short penult in the Genitive; as, *segĀ•s* (*segetis*), *obsĀ•s* (*obsidis*), *mĀ*“*lĀ•s*, *dĀ*“*vĀ•s*. But a few have *-Ā*“*s*; viz. *pĀ*“*s*, *ariĀ*“*s*, *abiĀ*“*s*, *pariĀ*“*s*.

b) In Ā“*s* (*_thou art_*), *penĀ*“*s*.

4. Final *-os* is usually long, but short in Ā *s* (*ossis*), *compĀ s*, *impĀ s*.

5. Final *-is* is usually short, but is long:—

a) In Plurals; as, *portĀ*“*s*, *hortĀ*“*s*, *nĀ bĀ*“*s*, *vĀ bĀ*“*s*, *nĀ*“*bĀ*“*s* (*Acc.*).

b) In the Second Person Singular Perfect Subjunctive Active; as, *amĀ verĀ*“*s*, *monuerĀ*“*s*, *audĀ*“*verĀ*“*s*, etc. Yet occasional exceptions occur.

c) In the Second Person Singular Present Indicative Active of the Fourth Conjugation; as, *audĀ*“*s*.

d) In *vĀ*“*s*, *_force_*; Ā“*s*, *_thou goest_*; *fĀ*“*s*; *sĀ*“*s*; *velĀ*“*s*; *nĀ lĀ*“*s*; *vĀ*“*s*, *thou wilt* (*mĀ vĀ*“*s*, *quamvĀ*“*s*, *quĀ*“*vĀ*“*s*, etc.).

6. Final -us is usually short, but is long:—

a) In the Genitive Singular and in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural of the Fourth Declension; as, fr̄ct̄s.

b) In the Nominative and Vocative Singular of those nouns of the Third Declension in which the u belongs to the stem; as, pal̄s (-̄dis), servit̄s (-̄tis), tell̄s (-̄ris).

365. Greek Nouns retain in Latin their original quantity; as, Aen̄, epitom̄, D̄los, Pallas, Simōs, Salam̄s, D̄d̄s, Parid̄, Ǟr, aeth̄r, cr̄t̄r, h̄rǞfs. Yet Greek nouns in -̄ (-̄ r) regularly shorten the vowel of the final syllable; as, rh̄t̄ r, Hect̄ r.

VERSE-STRUCTURE.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

366. 1. The metrical unit in versification is a short syllable, technically called a mora (v). A long syllable (_) is regarded as equivalent to two morae.

2. A Foot is a group of syllables. The following are the most important kinds of fundamental feet:—

FEET OF THREE MORAE. FEET OF FOUR MORAE. _ v Trochee. _ v v Dactyl. v _ Iambus. v v _ Anapaest.

3. A Verse is a succession of feet.

4. The different kinds of verses are named Trochaic, Iambic, Dactylic, Anapaestic, according to the foot which forms the basis of their structure.

5. Ictus. In every fundamental foot the long syllable naturally receives the greater prominence. This prominence is called ictus.[61] It is denoted thus: _/ v v ; _/ v .

6. Thesis and Arsis. The syllable which receives the ictus is called the thesis; the rest of the foot is called the arsis.

7. Elision. Final syllables ending in a vowel, a diphthong, or -m are regularly elided before a word beginning with a vowel or h. In reading, we omit the elided syllable entirely. This may be indicated as follows: corpor^e in ǞnǞ ; mult^um ill^e et; mǞ nstr^um horrendum; caus^ae ǞrǞ rum.

a. Omission of elision is called Hītus. It occurs especially before and after monosyllabic interjections; as, Ǟ et praesidium.

8. The ending of a word within a foot is called a Caes̄ra (_cutting_) Every verse usually has one prominent caesura. The ending of a word and foot together within the verse is called a diaeresis.

9. Verses are distinguished as Catalectic or Acatalectic. A Catalectic verse is one in which the last foot is not complete, but lacks one or more syllables; an Acatalectic verse has its last foot complete.

10. At the end of a verse a slight pause occurred. Hence the final syllable may be either long or short (syllaba anceps), and may terminate in a vowel or m, even though the next verse begins with a vowel.

11. Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapaestic verses are further designated as dimeter, trimeter, tetrameter, according

to the number of *dipodies* (pairs of feet) which they contain. Dactylic verses are measured by *single feet*, and are designated as tetrameter, pentameter, hexameter, accordingly.

SPECIAL PECULIARITIES.

367. 1. *Synizōsis* (*synaōresis*). Two successive vowels in the interior of a word are often united into a long syllable; as,—

aur{eÄ«}s, d{ei}nde, ant{eÄ«}re, d{ee}sse.

2. *Diāstole*. A syllable usually short is sometimes long; as,—

vidÄ“t, audÄ“t.

3. *S½stole*. A syllable usually long is sometimes short; as,—

stetÄ•runt.

a. *Diastole* and *Systole* are not mere arbitrary processes. They usually represent an earlier pronunciation which had passed out of vogue in the ordinary speech.

4. After a consonant, *i* and *u* sometimes become *j* and *v*. The preceding syllable then becomes long; as,—

abjete for abiete; genva for genua.

5. Sometimes *v* becomes *u*; as,—

silua for silva; dissoluÄ for dissolvÄ .

6. Sometimes a verse has an extra syllable. Such a verse is called an *Hypōmeter*. The extra syllable ends in a vowel or *-m*, and is united with the initial vowel or *h* of the next verse by *Synaphōia*. Thus:—

... ignÄ r^Ä« hominumque locÄ rum^que errÄ mus.

7. *Tmesis* (cutting). Compound words are occasionally separated into their elements; as,—

quÄ mä“ cumque rapit tempestÄ s, for quÄ cumque, etc.

8. *S½ncope*. A short vowel is sometimes dropped between two consonants; as,—

repostus for repositus

THE DACTYLIC HEXAMETER.

368. 1. The *Dactylic Hexameter*, or *Heroic Verse*, consists theoretically of six dactyls. But in all the feet except the fifth, a spondee (_ _) may take the place of the dactyl. The sixth foot may be either a spondee or a trochee, since the final syllable of a verse may be either long or short (*syllaba anceps*). The following represents the scheme of the verse:—

_ / vv (or _) ; _ / vv (or _) ; _ / vv (or _) ; _ / vv (or _) ; _ / vv ; _ / v (or _).

2. Sometimes we find a spondee in the fifth foot. Such verses are called *Spondaic*. A dactyl usually stands in

the fourth place, and the fifth and sixth feet are generally made up of a quadrisyllable; as,—

armÄ tum^que aurÄ circumspicit ÄErÄ«Ä na.

cÄ ra deum subolÄ“s, magnum Jovis incrÄ“mentum.

3. Caesura.

a) The favorite position of the caesura in the Dactylic Hexameter is after the thesis of the third foot; as,—

arma virumque canÄ || TrÄ jae quÄ« prÄ«mus ab Ä rÄ-s.

b) Less frequently the caesura occurs after the thesis of the fourth foot, usually accompanied by another in the second foot; as,—

inde torÄ || pater AenÄ“Ä s || sÄ«c Ä rsus ab alt^Ä est.

c) Sometimes the caesura occurs between the two short syllables of the third foot; as,—

ÄE passÄ« graviÄ ra || dabit deus hÄ«s quoque fÄ«nem.

This caesura is called Feminine, as opposed to the caesura after a long syllable, which is called Masculine (as under a and b)

d) A pause sometimes occurs at the end of the fourth foot. This is called the Bucolic Diaeresis, as it was borrowed by the Romans from the Bucolic poetry of the Greeks. Thus:—

sÄ Istitium pecorÄ« dÄ“fendite; || jam venit aestÄ s.

DACTYLIC PENTAMETER.

369. 1. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts, each of which contains two dactyls, followed by a long syllable. Spondees may take the place of the dactyls in the first part, but not in the second. The long syllable at the close of the first half of the verse always ends a word. The scheme is the following:—

_ / vv (or _) _ / vv (or _) _ || _ / vv _ / vv v (or _).

2. The Pentameter is never used alone, but only in connection with the Hexameter. The two arranged alternately form the so-called Elegiac Distich. Thus:—

Vergilium vÄ«dÄ« tantum, neo amÄ ra TibullÄ Tempus amÄ«citiae fÄ ta dedÄ“re meae.

IAMBIC MEASURES.

370. 1. The most important Iambic verse is the Iambic Trimeter (Ä§ 366, 11), called also Senarius. This is an acatalectic verse. It consists of six Iambi. Its pure form is:—

v _ v _ v _ v _ v _ v _ BeÄ tus ille quÄ« procul negÄ tiÄ«s.

The Caesura usually occurs in the third foot; less frequently in the fourth.

2. In place of the Iambus, a Tribach (v v v) may stand in any foot but the last. In the odd feet (first, third,

II. PROPER NAMES.

373. 1. The name of a Roman citizen regularly consisted of three parts: the praenomen (or given name), the nomen (name of the *gens* or clan), and the cognomen (family name). Such a typical name is exemplified by Marcus Tullius Cicero, in which Marcus is the praenomen, Tullius the nomen, and Cicero the cognomen. Sometimes a second cognomen (in later Latin called an agnomen) is added—especially in honor of military achievements; as,—

Gaius Cornelius Scipio Africanus.

2. ABBREVIATIONS OF PROPER NAMES.

A. = Aulus. Mam. = Marcus mercus. App. = Appius. N. = Numerius. C. = Gaius. P. = Publius. Cn. = Gnaeus. Q. = Quintus. D. = Decimus. Sex. = Sextus. K. = Kaeso. Ser. = Servius. L. = Lucius. Sp. = Spurius. M. = Marcus. T. = Titus. M'. = Marcus. Ti. = Tiberius.

III. FIGURES OF SYNTAX AND RHETORIC.

A. Figures of Syntax.

374. 1. Ellipsis is the omission of one or more words; as,—

quid multa, _why (should I say) much?_

2. Brachylogy is a brief or condensed form of expression; as,—

ut ager sine cultura fructuosus esse non potest, similiter sine doctrina animus, _as a field cannot be productive without cultivation, so the mind (cannot be productive) without learning._

Special varieties of Brachylogy are—

a) Zeugma, in which one verb is made to stand for two; as,—

metus aut blandimenta corrupta = _(terrified) by threats or corrupted by flattery._

b) Compendiary Comparison, by which a modifier of an object is mentioned instead of the object itself; as,—

dissimilis erat Chares' conductus et factus et moribus, lit. *Chares was different from their conduct and character* i.e. Chares's conduct and character were different, etc.

3. Pleonasm is an unnecessary fullness of expression; as,—

primum praedicam, lit. *I will first say in advance.*

4. Hendecady (ἑνὶ ἴπῳ ἴπῳ ἴπῳ... ἑνὶ ἴπῳ, _one through two_) is the use of two nouns joined by a conjunction, in the sense of a noun modified by a Genitive or an Adjective; as,—

febris et aestus, _the heat of fever_;

celeritē te cursūque, *by swift running.*

5. Prolepsis, or Anticipation, is the introduction of an epithet in advance of the action which makes it appropriate; as,—

submersas obrue puppās, *lit. overwhelm their submerged ships, i.e. overwhelm and sink their ships.*

a. The name Prolepsis is also applied to the introduction of a noun or pronoun as object of the main clause where we should expect it to stand as subject of a subordinate clause. Thus:—

nāstārcellum quam tardus sit, *you know how slow Marcellus is* (*lit. you know Marcellus, how slow he is*).

Both varieties of Prolepsis are chiefly confined to poetry.

6. Anacoluthon is a lack of grammatical consistency in the construction of the sentence; as,—

tum Ancūfiliū... impiūnsius eū indignitās crescere, *then the sons of Ancus... their indignation increased all the more*.

7. Hyperbaton consists in the inversion of the natural order of two words or phrases; as,—

moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus = *let us rush into the midst of arms and die.*

B. Figures of Rhetoric.

375. 1. Litotes (literally *softening*) is the expression of an idea by the denial of its opposite; as,—

haud parum labōris, *no little toil* (i.e. much toil);

nān ignāra, *I am not ignorant* (i.e. I am well aware).

2. Oxymoron is the combination of contradictory conceptions; as,—

sapiēns ānia, *wise folly.*

3. Alliteration is the employment of a succession of words presenting frequent repetition of the same letter (mostly initial); as,—

sānsim sine sānsāetās senāscit.

4. Onomatopoeia is the suiting of sound to sense; as,—

quadrupedante putrem sonitū quatit ungula campum, *'And shake with horny hoofs the solid ground.'*

* * * * *

INDEX OF THE SOURCES OF THE ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES CITED IN THE SYNTAX.[63]

§ 162. nonne videtis, *Sest.* 47. num exspectas, *Phil.* ii, 86. videsne, *Vatin.* 30. sensistine, *Cat.* 1, 8. a rebus, *de Sen.* 15. visne locum, *Leg.* ii, 1. estisne, *Liv.* i, 38, 2. jam ea, *Ter. Phor.* 525. estne frater, *Ter. Ad.* 569.

Â§ 166. decorum est, *_Hor. Od._* iii, 2, 13. opportune accidit *_Att._* i, 17, 2.

Â§ 168. Numa, *_Eut._* i, 3. philosophia, *_Tusc. Disp._* ii, 16.

Â§ 169. assentatio, *_Lael._* 89. Corinthi, *_Tac. H._* ii, 1.

Â§ 171. audi tu, *Livy*, i, 24. nate, mea, *_Aen._* i, 664.

Â§ 174. rumor est, *_Ter. And._* 185.

Â§ 175. galeam, *_Aen._* ii, 392. cinctus, *_Ov. Am._* iii, 9, 61 nodo sinus, *_Aen._* i, 320.

Â§ 176. idem gloriari, *_de Sen._* 32. eadem peccat, *_N.D._* i, 31. multa egeo, *_Gell._* xiii, 24. multum valet, *_Hor. Epp._* i, 6, 52. nihil peccat, *_Stat._* 161. minitantes vana, *_Sil._* i, 306 acerba tuens, *_Lucr._* v, 33. dulce loquentem, *_Hor. Od._* i, 22, 24. multum sunt, *_B.G._* iv, 1, 8. servitatem, *_Pl. Pers._* 34 a. vitam, *_Ter. Ad._* 859. stadium *_Off._* iii, 10, 42. Olympia, *_de Sen._* 14. piscis, *_Sen. N.Q._* iii, 18, 2. orationes, *_Brut._* 82.

Â§ 177. homines, *_Ros. Am._* 101.

Â§ 178. otium, *_Hor. Od._* ii, 16, 1. me duas, *_Att._* ii, 7, 1. te litteras, *_Pis._* 73. hoc te, *_Ter. Hec._* 766. me id, *_Pl. Tr._* 96. non te, *_Fam._* ii, 16, 3. omnes artes, *_Liv._* 25, 37. rogatus, *_de Dom._* 16. multa, *_N.D._* ii, 166.

Â§ 179. milites, *_B.C._* i, 54.

Â§ 180. tremit, *_Lucr._* iii, 489. nuda, *_Aen._* i, 320. manus, *_Aen._* ii, 57.

Â§ 181. hic locus, *_B.G._* i, 49.

Â§ 182. Thalam, *_Sall. Jug._* 75, 1. Thurios in, *_Nep. Alc._* 4. cum Acen, *_Nep. Dat._* 5. Italiam venit, *_Aen._* i, 2.

Â§ 187. amicis, *_Sall. C._* 16, 4. Orgetorix, *_B.G._* i, 2. munitioni, *_B.G._* i, 10.

Â§ 188. mihi ante, *_Verr._* v, 123. illi, *_Tac. Ag._* 9. intercludere, *_Pl. M.G._* 223. oppidum, *_B.C._* iii, 80 tu mihi, *_Verr._* 3, 213. quid mihi, *_Hor. Epp._* i, 3, 15. erit ille, *_Ecl._* i, 7. quae ista, *_Par._* 41. honorem, *_Verr._* iv, 25. Caesar, *_Div._* ii, 79. scintillam, *_Aen._* i, 174.

Â§ 189. disputatio, *_Tusc. Disp._* ii, 2. honesta, *_Off._* iii, 38.

Â§ 191. castris, *_B.G._* vii, 16. legiones, *_B.C._* ii, 22. receptui, *_B.G._* vii, 47. fortunae, *_Fam._* vi, 5, 1. quibus, *_Flac._* 19. hos tibi, *_Nep. Paus._* 2. me gerendo, *_Liv._* i, 23. noxiae, *_Leg._* iii, 11.

Â§ 192. it clamor, *_Aen._* v, 451.

Â§ 193. dum Latio, *_Aen._* i, 6.

Â§ 203. magni, *_Nep. Cat._* 1, 2. tantae molis, *_Aen._* i, 33.

Â§ 204. viri, *_Tusc. Disp._* ii, 43. memoria, *_Or._* 54.

Â§ 206. Epicuri, F. v, 3. praeteritorum, _Div._ i, 63. nomina, _Pl. Poen._ 1062. reminiscere, _B.G._ i, 13. reminiscens, _Nep. Alc._ 6. mihi patriae, _Sull._ 19.

Â§ 207. te veteris, _ad Her._ iv, 24, 33. me admones, _ad Att._ v, 1, 3.

Â§ 208. pecuniae, _Flacc._ 43.

Â§ 209. miseremini, _Verr._ 1, 72.

Â§ 212. desine, _Hor. Od._ ii, 9, 17. operum, _Hor. Od._ iii, 17, 16.

Â§ 214. p. 142, curis, _Marc._ 34. Caesar, _B.G._ 5, 51. caret, _Hor. Sat._ i, 3, 66. urbem, _Nep. Thras._ 1. abstinere, _Plin. Epp._ i, 12, 9. hostes, _B.G._ i, 1, 4. praedones, _Verr._ iv, 144. dissentio, _Planc._ 9. secernantur, _Cat._ i, 32.

Â§ 215. ab Ulixē, _Liv._ i, 49, 9.

Â§ 216. a fortuna, _B.G._ v, 34, 2. a multitudine, _B.G._ iii, 2, 1.

Â§ 217. melle dulcior, _de Sen._ 31. patria, _Cat._ i, 27. amplius, _B.G._ vii, 15, 1. opinione, _B.G._ ii, 3, 1.

Â§ 218. munere, _Aen._ vi, 885. carne, _Sall. Jug._ 89. castris, _B.G._ ii, 26, 4. opus est properato, _Mil._ 49. nititur, _Aen._ vi, 760. nervis, _N.D._ ii, 59. mortali, _Lucr._ v, 65. quid hoc, _Sest._ 29. quid mea, _Fam._ xiv, 4, 3. fossas, _B.G._ iii, 18. vinum, _Juv._ vii, 121. militibus, _B.G._ i, 8, 1.

Â§ 219. victoria, _B.G._ i, 14, 4. natura loci, _B.G._ iii, 9, 3.

Â§ 221. nulla est, _Brut._ 164. exstinguitur, _Tac. A._ ii, 72. longo, _Aen._ v, 320.

Â§ 222A. cum febri, _de Or._ iii, 6. improbitas, _de Or._ ii, 237. aer calore, _N.D._ ii, 27. assuetus, _de Or._ iii, 58.

Â§ 224. puella, _Pl. Merc._ 13. vir singulari, _Pl. Vid._ 41. sunt specie, _B.G._ vi, 28, 1. scopulis, _Aen._ i, 166.

Â§ 226. Helvetii, _B.G._ i, 2, 2. me dignor, _Aen._ i, 335.

Â§ 227. Cn. Pompeio, _B.G._ iv, 1. omnes virtutes, _Fin._ ii, 117. perditis, _Fam._ vi, 1, 4. nullo adversante, _Tac. A._ i, 2. passis palmis, _B.C._ iii, 98. audito eum, _Liv._ xxviii, 7.

Â§ 228. stant litore, _Aen._ vi, 901.

Â§ 229. a Gergovia, _B.G._ vii, 59, 1.

Â§ 231. stella, _N.D._ ii, 52. biennio, _Tac. Agr._ 14.

Â§ 234. prima et, _Tac. A._ i, 37. omnium rerum, _Fam._ vi, 21, 1.

Â§ 235. eadem alacritas, _B.G._ iv, 24, 4. res operae, _B.G._ v, 11, 5. stultitia, F. iii, 39. domus, uxor, _Ter. And._ 891. pars, _Sall. Jug._ 14, 15.

Â§ 240. senectus, _de Sen._ 55. exercitus, *Livy*, xxxix, 1.

Â§ 242. virtus, *Lael.* 100.

Â§ 244. me oravit, *Phil.* ii, 45. me oraverunt, *Div. Caec.* 2. suum genium, *Tac. Dial.* 9. Hannibalem, *Sest.* 142. suus quemque, *Rosc. Am.* 67.

Â§ 245. Belgae, *B.G.* ii, 1, 1. Galli, *B.G.* vi, 8, 1.

Â§ 246. Themistocles, *Nep. Them.* 9. illud intellego, *Sall. Jug.* 85, 5. hic est, *Pl. Tr.* 697.

Â§ 247. Maximum, *de Sen.* 10. non is sum, *B.G.* v, 30, 2. non suspicabatur, *Verr.* i, 36. vincula, *Cat.* iv, 7.

Â§ 248. quod idem, *Ac.* ii, 52. bonus vir, *Lael.* 65.

Â§ 249. ipso terrore, *B.G.* iv, 33, 1. valvae se, *Div.* i, 74. Persae, *Nep. Alc.* 5. ea molestissime, *Q. Fr.* i, 1, 2.

Â§ 250. carcer quae, *Verr.* v, 143. Belgae, *B.G.* ii, 1, 1. nostra qui, *Cat.* i, 7. servili, *B.G.* i, 40. erant, *B.G.* i, 6. quam quisque, *Tusc. Disp.* i, 41. non longe, *B.G.* i, 10, 1. Themistocles, *Nep. Them.* 4. 3. numquam digne, *de Sen.* 2.

Â§ 252. cognatio, *Arch.* 2. mors est, *Tusc. Disp.* i, 27. justitia, *F.* i, 50. si quisquam, *Lael.* 9. potestne, *Tusc. Disp.* iv, 54. si ullo, *Att.* xii, 23, 1. taetrior, *Verr.* iv, 123. quod cuique, *Off.* i, 21. quinto quoque, *Verr.* ii, 139. nemo Romanus, *Liv.* viii, 30, 3.

Â§ 253. alter exercitum, *Planc.* 86. alteri se, *B.G.* i, 26, 1. causicus, *de Or.* i, 202.

Â§ 254. Tarquinius, *Liv.* i, 34, 7. non omnis, *Div.* ii, 90. Corioli, *Liv.* ii, 33, 8. duo milia, *Curt.* iii, 2, 5.

Â§ 255. temeritas, *F.* iii, 72. si tu, *Fam.* xiv, 5, 1.

Â§ 256. velatus, *Ov. Met.* v, 110. tunica, *Aen.* viii, 457.

Â§ 259. virtus, *Lael.* 100. dum vitant, *Hor. Sat.* i, 2, 24. Caesar, *B.G.* vii, 90, 2. jam pridem, *Att.* ii, 5, 1.

Â§ 260. Duilium, *de Sen.* 44. hostes, *B.G.* v, 9, 6. domicilium, *Arch.* 7.

Â§ 262. Regulus, *Off.* iii, 100.

Â§ 263. Caesar, *B.G.* iv, 17, 1.

Â§ 265. nihil habebam, *Att.* ix, 10, 1.

Â§ 268. videor, *N.D.* ii, 72. Gallos, *B.G.* vii, 4, 4. honestum, *F.* ii, 49. si solos, *Tusc. Disp.* i, 9. rex tantum, *Nep. Con.* 4. Verres, *Verr. Act. Pr.* 12. ardebat, *Brut.* 302.

Â§ 269. Caesar, *B.G.* iii, 24, 1.

Â§ 270. hoc jam, *Cat.* i, 5. dico me, *Sull.* 27.

Â§ 275. quare, _Cat._ 1, 32. isto bono, _de Sen._ 33.

Â§ 276. ne repugnetis, _Cluent._ 6 tu vero, _Tusc. Disp._ i, 112. impii ne, _Leg._ ii, 41. cave ignoscas, _Lig._ 14.

Â§ 277. quid faciam, _Pl. Curc._ 589. ego redeam, _Ter. Eun._ 49. huic cedamus! _Phil._ xiii, 16. quid facerem, _Ter. Eun._ 831. hunc ego, _Arch._ 18.

Â§ 278. ne sint, _de Sen._ 34. fuerit, _Verr._ i, 37.

Â§ 279. di istaec, _Ter. H.T._ 1038. falsus utinam, _Liv._ xxi, 10, 10.

Â§ 280. dicat aliquis, _Ter. And._ 640. fortunam, _Pub. Syr._ 193. velim mihi, _Fam._ xiii, 75, 1. nolim putes, _Fam._ ix, 15, 4. dies deficat, _N.D._ iii, 81.

Â§ 281. egredere, _Cat._ i, 20. rem vobis, _Verr._ iv, 1. si bene, _de Sen._ 3. consules, _Leg._ iii, 8. hominem, _Twelve Tables._ amicitia, _Liv._ 38, 38, 1. quin equos, _Liv._ i, 57, 7.

Â§ 282. adjuta, _Ter. Eun._ 150. portas, _B.G._ ii, 33 haec, _And._ 472. ut ne, _Off._ i, 103. ut non, _Cat._ i, 23. ut earum, _B.G._ iv, 17, 10. Helvetii, _B.G._ i, 7, 3. haec habui, _de Sen._ 85. non habebant, _B.G._ iv, 38, 2. idoneus, _Verr._ iii, 41. dignus, _Leg._ iii, 5.

Â§ 283. multa, _Tusc. Disp._ i, 80. sunt qui, _Inv._ ii, 144. nemo, _Fam._ i, 4, 2. sapientia, _Fin._ i, 43. quae, _Lael._ 23. non is sum, _B.G._ v, 30, 2. non longius, _B.G._ ii, 21, 3. o fortunate, _Arch._ 24. ut qui, _Phil._ xi, 30. egomet, _de Or._ i, 82. nemo est, _Verr._ iv, 115. nemo fuit, _B.C._ iii, 53, 3. quem audierim, _Nep. Ar._ 1, 2.

Â§ 284. quis tam, _Tusc. Disp._ iii, 71. Siciliam, _Verr. Act. Pr._ 12. mons, _B.G._ i, 6, 1. non is, _Cat._ i, 22. nemo est, _de Sen._ 24. habetis, _Cat._ iv, 24. nihil, _Ter. H.T._ 675. nemo est, _B.G._ vi, 39, 3.

Â§ 286. Themistocles, _Nep. Them._ 8, 3. neque, _de Sen._ 84. quoniam, _Nep. Milt._ 7, 5. noctu, _Tusc. Disp._ iv, 44. Bellovaci, _B.G._ vii, 75. id feci, _Caec._ 101. Crasso, _Fam._ xiii, 16, 3. hoc ita, _Leg._ iii, 31. Haeduos, _B.G._ i, 16, 6. id omitto, _Sall. Jug._ 110, 7.

Â§ 287. Epaminondas, _Nep. Ep._ 9, 4. id ut, _Nep. Them._ 8, 3. Caesar, _B.G._ iii, 9, 2. ubi de, _B.G._ i, 7, 3. ut quisque, _Verr._ v, 143. hostes, _B.G._ iv, 26, 2. id ubi, _Liv._ i, 32, 13. postquam occupatae, _Liv._ xxiv, 35, 4. postquam Romam, _Sall. Jug._ 28, 2. postquam structi, _Liv._ i, 23, 6. posteaquam, _Leg._ ii, 64.

Â§ 288. an tum, _Pis._ 26. credo tum, _Verr._ iv, 46. eo tempore, _Lig._ 20. illo die, _Mil._ 38. Lysander, _Div._ i, 96. Pythagoras, _N.D._ iii, 88. jam Galli, _B.G._ vii, 26, 3. Treveri, _B.G._ vi, 7, 1. cum ad, _Verr._ v, 27. cum equitatus, _B.G._ v, 19, 2. saepe cum, _Nep. Cim._ 4, 2. cum procucurrissent, _B.C._ ii, 41, 6.

Â§ 289. tum tua, _Hor. Epp._ i, 18, 84. cum videbis, _Pl. Bacch._ 145. stabilitas, _Lael._ 82.

Â§ 290. cum tacent, _Cat._ i, 21. cum te, _Att._ xiv, 17 A, 4.

Â§ 291. prius, _Pl. Merc._ 456. nihil contra, _Flacc._ 51. non prius, _Sall. C._ 51.

Â§ 291. priusquam, _Liv._ i, 24, 3. tempestas, _Sen. Ep._ 103, 2. priusquam telum, _B.C._ ii, 34, 6. animum, _Pl. Amph._ 240. sol antequam, _Phil._ xiv, 27.

Â§ 293. Alexander, _Quint. Curt._ iv, 6, 17. dum haec, _B.G._ iii, 17, 1. dum anima, _Att._ ix, 10, 3.

Lacedaemoniorum, *Tusc. Disp.* i, 101. Cato, *Nep. Cat.* 2, 4. donec, *Liv.* xxiii, 31, 9. ferrum, *Nep. Ep.* 9, 3. trepidationis, *Liv.* xxi, 28, 11. exspectavit, *B.G.* iv, 23, 4. dum litterae, *Fam.* xi, 23, 2.

Â§ 295. postulo, *Ter. And.* 550. orat, *Ter. Ad.* 882. milites, *B.G.* ii, 21, 2. Helvetiis, *B.G.* i, 2, 1. huic, *Rosc. Am.* 54. consuli, *Liv.* xxxv, 20, 4. ne lustrum, *Liv.* xxiv, 43, 4. prohibuit, *Liv.* xxv, 35, 6. nec quin, *Liv.* xxvi, 40, 4. constitueram, *Att.* xvi, 10, 1. decrevit, *Cat.* i, 4. convenit, *Liv.* x, 27, 2. fac ut, *Pl. Rud.* 1218. cura ut, *Cat.* iii, 12. laborabat, *B.G.* vii, 31, 1. sequitur, *N.D.* ii, 81. eos moneo, *Cat.* ii, 20. huic imperat, *B.G.* iv, 21, 8.

Â§ 296. opto, *Verr. Act. Pr.* 50. vereor ne, *Att.* vii, 12, 2.

Â§ 297. ex quo, *F.* ii, 24. ita fit, *Tusc. Disp.* ii, 16. est mos, *Brut.* 84.

Â§ 298. quis, *Par.* 48.

Â§ 299. illud, *Off.* iii, 111. hoc uno, *de Or.* i, 32. bene mihi, *Tusc. Disp.* i, 97. quod, *B.G.* i, 44, 6. quod me, *Nep. Ep.* 5, 6.

Â§ 300. oculis, *B.G.* i, 12, 1. bis bina, *N.D.* ii, 49. effugere, *N.D.* iii, 14. saepe autem, *N.D.* iii, 14. Epaminondas, *F.* ii, 97. ex Socrate, *Tusc. Disp.* v, 34. nescio, *Pl. Amph.* 1056. conantur, *B.G.* i, 8, 4. pergit, *Liv.* i, 7, 6. quaeritur, *N.D.* i, 61. haud scio, *Tusc. Disp.* ii, 41.

Â§ 302. naturam, *Off.* i, 100. memoria, *de Sen.* 21. si quis, *B.G.* i, 48, 6. si dicendo, *Tac. Dial.* 19.

Â§ 303. mentiar, *Lael.* 10. haec si, *Cat.* i, 19.

Â§ 304. sapientia, *F.* i, 42. consilium, *de Sen.* 19. Laelius, *Arch.* 16. num igitur, *de Sen.* 19. nisi felicitas, *Tac. Agr.* 31. eum patris, *Phil.* ii, 99. si Sestius, *Sest.* 81. si unum, *Liv.* ii, 38, 5.

Â§ 305. non potestis, *F.* ii, 71. cras, *Pl. Merc.* 770. haec repudent, *Tusc. Disp.* i, 51. roges, *F.* iv, 69.

Â§ 306. ferreus, *Fam.* xv, 21, 3. dolorem, *Phil.* 12, 21. si feceris, *Fam.* v, 19, 2. hoc si, *Fam.* vii, 1, 6. hunc mihi, *Cat.* i, 18. nihil, *Cat.* ii, 10. nisi, *Mil.* 19.

Â§ 307. sed quid, *Div. Caec.* 14. serviam, *Pl. Men.* 1101.

Â§ 308. sit fur, *Verr.* v, 4. haec sint, *Ac.* ii, 105. ne sit, *Tusc. Disp.* ii, 14.

Â§ 309. homines, *Phil.* ii, 39. non est, *Rep.* i, 10. quamquam, *Off.* i, 56. Caesar, *B.G.* iv, 31, 1. Atticus, *Nep. Att.* 6, 2. licet, *Rosc. Am.* 31. quamquam quid, *Cat.* i, 22. quamquam, *Liv.* xxxvi, 34, 6. quamvis, multi, *Tac. Dial.* 2. quamvis infesto, *Liv.* ii, 40, 7.

Â§ 310. multi, *Off.* iii, 82. omnia postposui, *Fam.* xvi, 21, 6. nil obstat, *Hor. Sat.* i, 1, 40. oderint, *Acc.* 204. manent, *de Sen.* 22. nubant, *Pl. Aul.* 491.

Â§ 312. quidquid, *Aen.* ii, 49. quidquid oritur, *Div.* ii, 60.

Â§ 314. Regulus, *Off.* iii, 100. tum Romulus, *Liv.* i, 9, 2. nuntiatum, *B.G.* i, 38, 1. dixit, *Nep. Them.* 7, 5.

Â§ 315. Ariovistus, *B.G.* i, 44, 7.

Â§ 316. milites, _B.G._ iii, 5, 3.

Â§ 318. Caesar, _B.G._ i, 14, 6.

Â§ 322. concursu, _Tac. Dial._ 39.

Â§ 323. demonstrabantur, _de Sen._ 78. Paetus, _Att._ ii, 1, 12.

Â§ 324. nemo, _Par._ 52. cum diversas, _Tac. Dial._ 1, 4. mos est, _Orat._ 151. quod ego, _Pl. Capt._ 961.

Â§ 327. dulce, _Hor. Od._ iii, 2, 13. virorum, _Tusc. Disp._ ii, 43. aliud est, _Tusc. Disp._ iv, 27. impune, _Sall. Jug._ 31, 26. licuit, _Tusc. Disp._ i, 33.

Â§ 328. Demosthenes, F. v, 5. beatus, _N.D._ i, 48. Cato, _Sall. Cat._ 54, 5.

Â§ 330. apertum est, F. v, 34.

Â§ 331. Epicurei, _Lael._ 13. Thales, _N.D._ i, 25. Democritus, _N.D._ i, 20. nullo se, _Lig._ 3. nec mihi, _de Sen._ 85. eas res, _B.G._ i, 18. te tua, _Brut._ 331. cupio, _Cat._ i, 4. Timoleon, _Nep. Tim._ 3, 4. gaudeo, _Pl. Bacch._ 456. non moleste, _de Sen._ 7.

Â§ 332. Sestius, _Sest._ 95. traditum, _Tusc. Disp._ v, 114.

Â§ 333. audax, _Hor. Od._ i, 3, 25.

Â§ 334. huncine, _Hor. Sat._ i, 9, 72.

Â§ 335. interim, _B.G._ i, 16, 1.

Â§ 336. assurgentem, _Liv._ iv, 19.

Â§ 337. gloria, _Tusc. Disp._ iii, 3. Conon, _Nep. Con._ 4, 5. omne, _Phil._ v, 31. mente, _Tusc. Disp._ v, 100. Solon, _de Sen._ 26. sol, _N.D._ ii, 102. mendaci, _Div._ ii, 146. perfidiam, _B.G._ vii, 5, 5. eis Catonem, _de Sen._ 3. Homerus, _de Sen._ 54. urbem, _Liv._ xxii, 20. equitatum, _B.G._ i, 15, 1. obliviscendum, _Tac. Hist._ ii, 1. numquam, _Verr._ i, 38. suo cuique, _N.D._ iii, 1. Caesar, _B.G._ i, 13, 1.

Â§ 338. scribendo, _Fam._ xv, 6, 2. mens, _Off._ i, 105. Themistocles, _Nep. Them._ 2, 3. multa, F. i, 5.

Â§ 339. ad pacem, _Liv._ xxi, 13. hostes, _B.G._ iii, 6, 2. legati, _B.G._ iv, 13, 5. quae ille, _Sall. Fr._ i, 77, 11.

Â§ 340. legati, _B.G._ i, 30, 1. do (colloco), _Pl. Tr._ 735. hoc est, _Att._ vii, 22, 2.

Â§ 341. cum homines, _Cat._ i, 31. discidia, F. i, 44. horae, _de Sen._ 69. Caesar, _B.G._ ii, 35, 3.

Â§ 342. cita, _Hor. Sat._ i, 1, 8. qui aether, _N.D._ ii, 41.

Â§ 343. adsentatio, _Lael._ 89.

Â§ 346. Cn. Pompeio, _B.G._ iv, 1, 1.

Â§ 348. Darius, _Nep. Milt._ 4, 1.

Â§ 349. magnus, _Nep. Them._ 6, 1.

Â§ 350. erant duo, _B.G._ i, 6, 1. nisi forte, _de Sen._ 18. id ut, _Nep. Them._ 8, 3. eo cum, _B.G._ vii, 7, 4. ut ad, _Lael._ 5. septimus, _de Sen._ 38. recepto, _B.C._ iii, 12, 1. sed pleni, _Arch._ 14. horribilem, _Tusc. Disp._ i, 118. simulatam, _Tac. A._ i, 10.

Â§ 351. Caesar, _B.G._ i, 25, 1. Haedui, _B.G._ i, 11, 2. Caesar cum, _B.G._ i, 7, 1. accidit, _Nep. Alc._ 3, 2. si quid, _Arch._ 1. Caesar, _B.G._ v, 4, 1.

Â§ 356. hostium, _B.G._ iii, 29, 3. mens quoque, _de Sen._ 36. tanto, _Sull._ 59.

Â§ 358. pro multitudine, _B.G._ i, 2, 5.

Â§ 374. ut ager, _Tusc. Disp._ ii, 13. minis, _Tusc. Disp._ v, 87. dissimilis, _Nep. Chab._ 3, 4. febris, _Cat._ i, 31. submersas, _Aen._ i, 69. nosti, _Fam._ viii, 10, 3. tum Anci, _Liv._ i, 40, 2. moriamur, _Aen._ ii, 353.

Â§ 375. quadrupedante, _Aen._ viii, 506.

ABBREVIATIONS USED IN INDEX TO THE ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLES

Ac., Cicero, *Academica*. Acc., Accius. ad Her., ad Herennium. Aen., Virgil, *Aeneid*. Arch., Cicero, *pro Archia*. Att., Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticus*. B.C., Caesar, *de Bello Civili*. B.G., Caesar, *de Bello Gallico*. Brut., Cicero, *Brutus*. Caec., Cicero, *pro Caecina*. Cat., Cicero, *in Catilinam*. Cluent., Cicero, *pro Cluentio*. Curt., Quintus Curtius de Dom., Cicero, *de Domo Sua*. de Or., Cicero, *de Oratore*. de Sen., Cicero, *de Senectute*. D., Cicero, *de Divinatione*. Div. Caec., Cicero, *Divinatio in Caecilius*. Ecl., Virgil, *Eclogues*. Eut., Eutropius. F., Cicero, *de Finibus*. Fam., Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiares*. Flac., Cicero, *pro Flacco*. Gell, Aulus Gellius. Hor., Horace. ---- Epp., *Epistles*. ---- Od., *Odes*. ---- Sat., *Satires*. Inv., Cicero, *de Inventione*. Juv., Juvenal. Lael., Cicero, *Laelius, de Amicitia*. Leg., Cicero, *de Legibus*. Lig., Cicero, *pro Ligario*. Liv., Livy. Lucr., Lucretius. Marc., Cicero, *pro Marcello*. Mil., Cicero, *pro Milone*. N.D., Cicero, *de Natura Deorum*. Nep., Nepos. ---- Alc., *Alcibiades*. ---- Ar., *Aristides*. ---- Att., *Atticus*. ---- Cat., *Cato*. ---- Chab. *Chabrias*. ---- Cim., *Cimon*. ---- Con., *Conon*. ---- Dat., *Datames*. ---- Ep., *Epaminondas*. ---- Milt., *Miltiades*. ---- Paus., *Pausanias*. ---- Them., *Themistocles*. ---- Thras., *Thrasylbulus*. ---- Tim., *Timoleon*. Off., Cicero, *de Officiis*. Or., Cicero, *Orator*. Ov., Ovid. ---- Am., *Amores*, ---- Met., *Metamorphoses*. Par., Cicero, *Paradoxa*. Phil., Cicero, *Philippics*. Pis., Cicero, *in Pisonem*. Planc., Cicero, *pro Plancio*. Pl., Plautus. ---- Amph., *Amphitruo*. ---- Aul., *Aulularia*. ---- Bacch., *Bacchides*. ---- Capt., *Captivi*. ---- Curc., *Curculio*. ---- Men., *Menaechmi*. ---- Merc., *Mercator*. ---- M.G., *Miles Gloriosus*. ---- Pers., *Persa*. ---- Poen., *Poenulus*. ---- Rud., *Rudens*. ---- Tr., *Trinummus*. ---- Vid., *Vidularia*. Plin. Epp., Pliny the Younger, *Letters*. Pub. Syr., Publilius Syrus. Q.F., Cicero, *ad Quintum Fratrem*. Rosc. Am., Cicero, *pro Roscio Amerino*. Sall., Sallust. ---- C., *Catiline*. ---- Fr., *Fragments*. ---- Jug., *Jugurtha*. Sen., Seneca. ---- Ep., *Epistles*. ---- N.Q., *Naturales Quaestiones*. Sest., Cicero, *pro Sestio*. Sex. Rosc., Cicero, *pro Sexto Roscio*. Sil., Silius Italicus. Stat., Caecilius Statius. Sull., Cicero, *pro Sulla*. Tac., Tacitus. ---- A., *Annals*. ---- Agr., *Agricola*. ---- Dial., *Dialogus de Oratoribus*. ---- Ger., *Germania*. ---- H., *Histories*. Ter., Terence. ---- Ad., *Adelphoi*. ---- And., *Andria*. ---- Eun., *Eunuchus*. ---- Hec., *Hecyra*. ---- H.T., *Hautontimoroumenos*. ---- Phor., *Phormio*. Tusc. Disp., Cicero, *Tusculan Disputations*. Twelve Tables, Laws of the Twelve Tables. Vatin., Cicero, *in Vatinius*. Verr., Cicero, *in Verrem*. Verr. Act. Pr., Cicero, *Actio Prima in C. Verrem*.

* * * * *

INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE MOST IMPORTANT VERBS

NOTE.—Compounds are not given unless they present some special irregularity. The references are to

sections.

A.

abdĀ , 122, I, 4. abiciĀ , 122, III. abnuĀ , 122, II. aboleĀ , 121, I. abstergeĀ , 121, III. absum, 125. accendĀ , 122, I, 4. accidit, 138, III. acciĀ , 121, I, N. accipiĀ , 122, III. acquĀ«rĀ , 122, I, 6. acuĀ , 122, II. addĀ , 122, I, 2. adhaerĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 2. adipĀ«scor, 122, V. adolĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 1. adsum, 125. adveniĀ , 123, IV. afferĀ , 129. afficiĀ , 122, III. afflĀ«gĀ , 122, I, 1, a. agnĀ scĀ , 122, IV, 1. agĀ , 122, I, 3. algeĀ , 121, III. alĀ , 122, I, 5. amiciĀ , 123, III. amĀ , 120, I. amplector, 122, V. angĀ , 122, I, 7. aperiĀ , 123, II. appetĀ , 122, I, 6. arceĀ , 121, II, a. arcessĀ , 122, I, 6. Ā rdeĀ , 121, III. Ā rĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 2. arguĀ , 122, II. ascendĀ , 122, I, 4. aspiciĀ , 122, III. assentior, 123, VII. assuĀ«faciĀ , 122, III. assuĀ«fĀ«Ā , 122, III. audiĀ , 123, I. auferĀ , 129. augeĀ , 121, III. aveĀ , 121, II, a, N. 2.

C.

cadĀ , 122, I, 2. caedĀ , 122, I, 2. calefaciĀ , 122, III. calefiĀ , 122, III. caleĀ , 121, II, a. calĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 2. canĀ , 122, I, 2. capessĀ , 122, I, 6. capiĀ , 122, III. careĀ , 121, II, a. carpĀ , 121, I, 1, a. caveĀ , 121, V. cĀ«dĀ , 122, I, 1, b. cĀ«nseĀ , 121, II, b. cernĀ , 122, I, 6. cieĀ , 121, I. cingĀ , 122, I, 1, a. circumstisĀ , 122, I, 2. claudĀ , 122, I, 1, b. claudĀ , 122, I, 7. coĀ«mĀ , 122, I, 3. coepĀ« , 133. coĀ«rceĀ , 121, II, a. cognĀ scĀ , 122, IV, 1. cĀ gĀ , 122, I, 3. colligĀ , 122, I, 3. colĀ , 122, I, 5. comminĀ«scor, 122, V. comperiĀ , 123, V. compleĀ , 121, I. concutiĀ , 122, III. condĀ , 122, I, 2. cĀ nferĀ , 129. cĀ nfiteor, 121, VII. congruĀ , 122, II. cĀ nsenĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 2. cĀ nserĀ , 122, I, 5. cĀ nserĀ , 122, I, 6 (_plant_). cĀ nsidĀ , 122, I, 4. cĀ nsistĀ , 122, I, 2. cĀ nspiciĀ , 122, III. cĀ nstat, 138, III. cĀ nstituĀ , 122, II. cĀ nsuĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 1. cĀ nsulĀ , 122, I, 5. contineĀ , 121, II, b. contingit, 138, III. coquĀ , 122, I, 1, a. crepĀ , 120, II. crĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 1. cubĀ , 120, II. cupiĀ , 122, III. currĀ , 122, I, 2.

D.

dĀ«beĀ , 121, II, a. dĀ«cernĀ , 122, I, 6. decet, 138, II. dĀ«decet, 138, II. dĀ«dĀ , 122, I, 2. dĀ«fendĀ , 122, I, 4. dĀ«lĀ«o, 121, I. dĀ«ligĀ , 122, I, 3. dĀ«mĀ , 122, I, 3. dĀ«sĀ«rĀ , 122, I, 5. dĀ«sinĀ , 122, I, 6. dĀ«sum, 125. dĀ«cĀ , 122, I, 1, a. differĀ , 129. dĀ«ligĀ , 122, I, 3. dĀ«micĀ , 120, II. dirimĀ , 122, I, 3. dĀ«ripiĀ , 122, III. dĀ«ruĀ , 122, II. discernĀ , 122, I, 6. discĀ , 122, IV, 1. disserĀ , 122, I, 5. distinguĀ , 122, I, 1, a., footnote 44. dĀ«vidĀ , 122, I, 1, b. dĀ , 127. doceĀ , 121, II, b. doleĀ , 121, II, a. domĀ , 120, II. dĀ«cĀ , 122, I, 1, a.

E.

Ā«dĀ , 122, I, 2. edĀ , 122, I, 3. efferĀ , 129. effugiĀ , 122, III. egeĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. Ā«liciĀ , 122, III. Ā«mineĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. emĀ , 122, I, 3. eĀ , 132. Ā«suriĀ , 123, VI. Ā«vĀ dĀ , 122, I, 1, b., footnote 45. Ā«vĀ nĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 3. excolĀ , 122, I, 5. excĀ«dĀ , 122, I, 4. exerceĀ , 121, II, a. experior, 123, VII. expleĀ , 121, I, N. explicĀ , 120, II. exstinguĀ , 122, I, 1, a., footnote 44. extimĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 2.

F.

faciĀ , 122, III. fallĀ , 122, I, 2. fateor, 121, VII. faveĀ , 121, V. feriĀ , 123, VI. ferĀ , 129. ferveĀ , 121, VI. fĀ«gĀ , 122, I, 1, b. findĀ , 122, I, 2, N. fingĀ , 122, I, 1, a. fiĀ , 131. flectĀ , 122, I, 1, b. fleĀ , 121, I. flĀ reĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. flĀ rĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 2. fluĀ , 122, II. fodiĀ , 122, III. foveĀ , 121, V. frangĀ , 122, I, 3. fremĀ , 122, I, 5. fricĀ , 120, II. frĀ«geĀ , 121, II, a, N. 2. fruor, 122, V. fugiĀ , 122, III. fulciĀ , 123, III. fulgeĀ , 121, III. fulget, 138, I. fundĀ , 122, I, 3. fungor, 122, V. furĀ , 122, I, 7.

G.

gemÅ , 122, I, 5. gerÅ , 122, I, 1, a. gignÅ , 122, I, 5. gradior, 122, V.

H.

habēÅ , 121, II, a. haereÅ , 121, III. hauriÅ , 123, III. horreÅ , 121, II, a, N. 1.

I.

ignÅ scÅ , 121, IV, 2. illiciÅ , 122, III. imbuÅ , 122, II. immineÅ , 121, II, a, N. 2. impleÅ , 121, I, N. implicÅ , 120, II. incipiÅ , 122, III. incolÅ , 122, I, 5. incumbÅ , 122, I, 5. indulgeÅ , 121, III. induÅ , 122, II. Ä«nferÅ , 129. ingemÄ«scÅ , 122, IV, 2. Ä«nsum, 125. intellegÅ , 122, I, 3. interficiÅ , 122, III. intersum, 125. invÄ dÅ , 122, I, 1, b., footnote 45. inveniÅ , 123, IV. Ä«rÄ scor, 122, V.

J.

jaceÅ , 121, II, a. jaciÅ , 122, III. jubeÅ , 121, III. jungÅ , 122, I, 1, a. juvÅ , 120, III.

L.

lÄ bor, 122, V. laccessÅ , 122, I, 6. laedÅ , 122, I, 1, b. lambÅ , 122, I, 7. largior, 123, VII. lateÅ , 121, II, a, N. 1. lavÅ , 120, III. legÅ , 122, I, 3. libet, 138, II. liceor, 121, VII. licet, 138, II. loquor, 122, V. lÄ«ceo, 121, III. lÄ«dÅ , 122, I, 1, b. lÄ«geÅ , 121, III. luÅ , 122, II.

M.

maereÅ , 121, II, a, N. 2. mä lÄ , 130. maneÅ , 121, III. mä tÄ«rÄ«scÅ , 122, IV, 3. medeor, 121, VII. meminÄ«, 133. mereÅ , 121, II, a. mereor, 121, VII. mergÅ , 122, I, 1, b. mä«tior, 123, VII. metuÅ , 122, II. micÅ , 120, II. minuÅ , 122, II. misceÅ , 121, II, b. miseret, 138, II. misereor, 121, VII. mittÅ , 122, I, 1, b. molÅ , 122, I, 5. moneÅ , 121, II, a. mordeÅ , 121, IV. morior, 122, V. moveÅ , 121, V.

N.

nancÄ«scor, 122, V. nÄ scor, 122, V. nectÅ , 122, I, 1, b. neglegÅ , 122, I, 3. ningit, 138, . niteÅ , 121, II, a, N. 1. nÄ«tor, 122, V. noceÅ , 121, II, a. nÄ lÄ , 130. nÄ scÅ , 122, IV, 1. nÄ«bÅ , 122, I, 1, a.

O.

obdÄ«rÄ«scÅ , 122, IV, 3. oblinÅ , 122, I, 6. oblÄ«vÄ«scor, 122, V. obmÄ«tÄ«scÅ , 122, IV, 3. obruÅ , 122, II. obsolÄ«scÅ , 122, IV, 1. obsum, 125. obtineÅ , 121, II, b. Ä dÄ«, 133. offerÅ , 129. oleÅ , 121, II, a, N. 1. operiÅ , 123, II. oportet, 138, II. opperior, 123, VII. Ä rdior, 123, VII. orior, 123, VII.

P.

paenitet, 138, II. palleÅ , 121, II, a, N. 1. pandÅ , 122, I, 4. parcÅ , 122, I, 2. pä reÅ , 121, II, a. pariÅ , 122, III. pä scÅ , 122, IV, 1. pä scor, 122, IV, 1. patefaciÅ , 122, III. patefÄ«Å , 122, III. pateÅ , 121, II, a, N. 1. patior, 122, V. paveÅ , 121, V. pelliciÅ , 122, III. pellÅ , 122, I, 2. pendeÅ , 121, IV. pendÅ , 122, I, 2. peragÅ , 122, I, 3. percellÅ , 122, I, 2, N. percrÄ«brÄ«scÅ , 122, IV, 3. perdÅ , 122, I, 2. perficiÅ , 122, III. perfringÅ , 122, I, 3. perfruur, 122, V. perlegÅ , 122, I, 3. permulceÅ , 121, III. perpetior, 122, V. pervÄ dÅ , 122, I, 1, b., footnote 45. petÅ , 122, I, 6. piget, 138, II. pingÅ , 122, I, 1, a. placeÅ , 121, II, a. plaudÅ , 122, I, 1, b. pluit, 138, I. polleÅ , 121, II, a, N. 2. polliceor, 121, VII. polluÅ ,

122, II. pĀ nĀ , 122, I, 6. poscĀ , 122, IV, 1. possĀ«dĀ , 122, I, 4. possum, 126. pĀ tĀ , 120, I. praebĀ , 121, II, a. praestat, 138, III. praesum, 125. prandeĀ , 121, VI.prehendĀ , 122, I, 4. premĀ , 122, I, 1, b. prĀ dĀ , 122, I, 2. prĀ mĀ , 122, I, 3. prĀ sum, 125. prĀ sternĀ , 122, I, 6. pudet, 138, II. pungĀ , 122, I, 2.

Q.

quaerĀ , 122, I, 6. quatiĀ , 122, III. queror, 122, V. quiĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 1.

R.

rĀ dĀ , 122, I, 1, b. rapiĀ , 122, III. reddĀ , 122, I, 2. redimĀ , 122, I, 3. referciĀ , 123, III. referĀ , 129. rĀ«fert, 138, II. regĀ , 122, I, 1, a. relinquĀ , 122, I, 3. reminĀ«scor, 122, V. reor, 121, VII. reperiĀ , 123, V. rĀ«pĀ , 122, I, 1, a. resistĀ , 122, I, 2. respuĀ , 122, II. restinguĀ , 122, I, 1, a., footnote 44. retineĀ , 121, II, b. rĀ«deĀ , 121, III. rĀ dĀ , 122, I, 1, b. rubeĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. rumpĀ , 122, I, 3. ruĀ , 122, II.

S.

saepiĀ , 123, III. saliĀ , 123, II. sancĀ , 123, III. sapiĀ , 122, III. sarcĀ , 123, III. scindĀ , 122, I, 2, N. scĀ«scĀ , 122, IV, 2. scribĀ , 122, I, 1, a. sculpĀ , 122, I, 1, a. secĀ , 120, II. sedeĀ , 121, V. sentiĀ , 123, III. sepeliĀ , 123, I. sequor, 122, V. serĀ , 122, I, 6. serpĀ , 122, I, 1, a. sileĀ , 121, II, a, N. sinĀ , 122, I, 6. solvĀ , 122, I, 4. sonĀ , 120, II. spargĀ , 122, I, 1, b. spernĀ , 122, I, 6. splendeĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. spondeĀ , 121, IV. statuĀ , 122, II. sternĀ , 122, I, 6. –stinguĀ , 122, I, 1, a. stĀ , 120, IV. strepĀ , 122, I, 5. strĀ«deĀ , 121, VI. stringĀ , 122, I, 1, a. struĀ , 122, II. studeĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. suĀ deĀ , 121, III. subigĀ , 122, I, 3. subsum, 125. sum, 100. sĀ«mĀ , 122, I, 3. suĀ , 122, II. supersum, 125. sustineĀ , 121, II, b.

T.

taceĀ , 121, II, a. taedet, 138, II. tangĀ , 122, I, 2. tegĀ , 122, I, 1, a. temĀ , 122, I, 1, a. tendĀ , 122, I, 2. teneĀ , 121, II, b. terĀ , 122, I, 6. terreĀ , 121, II, a. texĀ , 122, I, 5. timeĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. tingĀ , 122, I, 1, a. tollĀ , 122, I, 2, N. tonat, 138, I. tondeĀ , 121, IV. tonĀ , 120, II. torpeĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. torqueĀ , 121, III. torreĀ , 121, II, b. trĀ dĀ , 122, I, 2. trahĀ , 122, I, 1, a. tremĀ , 122, I, 5. tribuĀ , 122, II. trĀ«dĀ , 122, I, 1, b. tueor, 121, VII. tundĀ , 122, I, 2.

U.

ulcĀ«scor, 122, V. unguĀ , 122, I, 1, a. urgeĀ , 121, III. Ā«rĀ , 122, I, 1, a. Ā«tor, 122, V.

V.

vĀ dĀ , 122, I, 1, b. valeĀ , 121, II, a. vehĀ , 122, I, 1, a. vellĀ , 122, I, 4. veniĀ , 123, IV. vereor, 121, VII. vergĀ , 122, I, 7. verrĀ , 122, I, 4. vertĀ , 122, I, 4. vescor, 122, V. vetĀ , 120, II. videĀ , 121, V. vigeĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. vinciĀ , 123, III. vincĀ , 122, I, 3. vireĀ , 121, II, a, N. 1. vĀ«sĀ , 122, I, 4. vĀ«vĀ , 122, I, 1, a. volĀ , 130. volvĀ , 122, I, 4. vomĀ , 122, I, 5. voveĀ , 121, V.

* * * * *

GENERAL INDEX.

* * * * *

The references are to sections and paragraphs.

* * * * *

ABBREVIATIONS.—Abl., ablative; acc., accusative; adj., adjective; adv., adverb, adverbial, or adverbially; cf., compare; comp., comparison or comparative; conj., conjunction or conjugation; const., constr., construction; dat., dative; decl., declension; gen., genitive; ind., indicative; indir. disc., indirect discourse; loc., locative; N., note; nom., nominative; plu., plural; prep., preposition; pron., pronoun or pronunciation; sing., singular; subj., subject; subjv., subjunctive; voc., vocative; w., with.

A.

Äf, vowel, 2, 1; ---- pronunciation, 3, 1; ---- development of Äf, before a single consonant, 7, 1, a; ---- before two consonants, 7, 1, b; ---- Äf as ending of nom. sing. of 1st decl., 20; ---- in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in -Ä“s of 1st decl., 22; ---- in nom. sing. of Greek nouns in -Ä“ of 1st decl., 22, 3; ---- termination of nom. and acc. plu. of neuters, 23; 35; 48; ---- termination of nom. sing. of nouns of 3d decl., 28; ---- gender of nouns in -Äf of 3d decl., 43, 3; ---- ending of acc. sing. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 47, 1; ---- regular quantity of final a, 363, 1; ---- exceptions to quantity of final a, 363, 1, a-c. Ä , pronunciation, 3, 1; ---- arising by contraction, 7, 2; ---- as ending of stem in 1st decl., 18; ---- Ä -stems inflected, 20; ---- in voc. sing. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 22; ---- in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in -Ä s of 3d decl., 47, 4; ---- distinguishing vowel of 1st conjugation, 98; ---- ending of imperative act. of 1st conj., 101; ---- final a long by exception, 363, 1, a-c. Ä , ab, abs, use, 142, 1; ---- with town names, 229, 2. Ä to denote agency, 216. ---- to denote separation, 214. ---- place from which, 229. ---- with town names, 229, 2. ---- with abl. of gerund, 338, 4, b. Ä -stems, 20; 98; 101. Abbreviations of proper names, 373. Ablative case, 17; 213 f. ---- in -Ä bus, 21, 2, e. ---- in -d in prons., 84, 3; 85, 3. ---- formation of sing. of adjs. of 3d decl., 67, a; 70, 1-5. ---- of Ä -stems, 37; 38. ---- genuine abl. uses, 214 f. ---- absolute, 227. ---- of agent, 216. ---- of accompaniment, 222. ---- of accordance, 220, 3. ---- of association, 222A. ---- of attendant circumstance, 221; 227, 2, e). ---- of cause, 219. ---- of comparison, 217. ---- of degree of difference, 223. ---- of fine or penalty, 208, 2, b. ---- of manner, 220. ---- of material, 224, 3. ---- of means, 218. ---- of penalty, 208, 2, b. ---- of place where, 228. ---- of place whence, 229. ---- of price, 225. ---- of quality, 224. ---- of separation, 214; ---- ---- with compounds of dis- and sÄ“-, 214, 3. ---- of source, 215. ---- of specification, 226. ---- of time at which, 230. ---- of time during which, 231, 1. ---- of time within which, 231. ---- of way by which, 213, 9. ---- with continÄ“ri, cÄ nsistere, cÄ nstÄ re, 218, 4. ---- with special phrases, 218, 7. ---- with jungere, mÄ«scÄ“re, mÄ«tÄ re, etc., 222A. ---- with faciÄ , fiÄ , 218, 6 ---- with prepositions, 142; 213 f. ---- with verbs of filling, 218, 8. ---- with verbs and adjs. of freeing, 214, I, a, and N. 1. ---- with adjs. of plenty, 218, 8. ---- with Ä«tor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, 218, 1. ---- with opus and Ä«sus, 218, 2 ---- with nÄ«tor, innÄ«xus, and frÄ«tus, 218, 3. abs, 142, 1. absÄ“ns, 125. Absolute, ablative, 227. ---- time, of participles, 336, 4. ---- use of verbs, 174, a. Abstract nouns, 12, 2, b); ---- plural of, 55, 4, c). -Ä bus, 21, 2, e). ac, 341, 2, b); ---- = as, than, 341, 1, c). Acatalectic verses, 366, 9. accÄ“dit ut, 297, 2. Accent, 6; ---- in gen. of nouns in -ius and -ium, 25, 1 and 2. accidit ut, 297, 2. accidit quod, 299, 1, b. Accompaniment, abl. of, 222. Accordance, abl. of, 220, 3. Accusative case, 17; ---- in -Ä n and -Ä“n of Greek nouns, 22; ---- in -om in 2d decl., 24; ---- in -on and -Ä n in Greek nouns, 27; ---- in -Äf in sing. of Greek nouns, 47, 1; ---- in -Äfs in plu., 47, 3; ---- in -im and -is in i-stems, 37; 38; ---- acc. sing. neut. as adv., 77, 3; 176, 3; 172 f. ---- of duration of time, 181. ---- of result produced, 173, B; 176. ---- of extent of space, 181. ---- of limit of motion, 182 f. ---- of neut. prons. or adjs., 176, 2. ---- of person or thing affected, 173, A; 175. ---- in exclamations, 183. ---- as subj. of inf., 184. ---- with admoneÄ , commoneÄ , etc., 207. ---- with adv. force, 176, 3. ---- with compounds, 175, 2. ---- with impersonal verbs, 175, 2, c. ---- with intransitive verbs, 175, 2, a. ---- with passive used as middle, 175, 2, d). ---- with verbs of remembering and forgetting (meminÄ«, oblÄ«vÄ«scor, reminÄ«scor), 206, 1; 2. ---- with verbs expressing emotion, 175, 2, b. ---- with verbs of tasting and smelling, 176, 5. ---- with verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, etc., 177. ---- with verbs of asking, requesting, demanding,

teaching, concealing, 178, 1–5. ——— with adjs. (propior, proximus), 141, 3. ——— with adverbs (propius, proximā), 141, 3; ——— clam, prā«diā», 144, 2. ——— Genavam ad oppidum, 182, 2, a. ——— cognate acc., 176, 4. ——— Greek acc., 180. ——— synecdochical acc., 180. ——— two accs., direct obj. and pred. acc., 177; ——— person affected and result produced, 178; ——— with compounds of trā ns, 179; ——— with other compounds, 179, 2. ——— with prepositions, 141; 179 f. ——— retained in pass., 178, 2. Accusing, verbs of, constr., 208 f. accā«sā , constr., 178, 1, d). ā cer, decl., 68; ——— compared, 71, 3. Acquitting, verbs of, constr., 208 f. ac sā« with subjv., 307, 1. ad, 'toward,' 'in vicinity of,' 182, 3; ——— with acc. alternating with dat., 358, 2. ——— compounds of ad governing dat., 187, III; 188, 2, d. ——— with gerund denoting purpose, 338, 3. –adā«s, patronymic ending, 148, 6, a. adg– = agg–, 9, 2. Adjectives, 62 f; 354; ——— derivation of, 150 f. ——— of 1st and 2d decl., 63 ff. ——— in –ius, gen. sing., 63, a. ——— of 3d decl., 67, ff; ——— in abl., 70, 5. ——— comparison of adjs., 71 f.; ——— in –er, 71, 3; ——— in –ilis, 71, 4; ——— comparative lacking, 73, 3; ——— defective comparison, 73; ——— not admitting comparison, 75; ——— comparison by magis and maximā«, 74. ——— numerals, 78 f. ——— syntax, 233 ff.; ——— attributive and predicate adjs., 233, 2. ——— agreement, 234, f. ——— used substantively, 236 f. ——— denoting part of an object, 241, 1. ——— with force of adverbs, 239. ——— force of comp. and superl., 240, 1. ——— not followed by infinitive, 333. ——— not used with proper names, 354, 3. ——— equivalent to a poss. gen., 354, 4. ——— special Latin equivalents of Eng. adjs., 354, 1. ——— equiv. to rel. clause, 241, 2. ——— as pred. acc., 177, 2. ——— position of adj., 350, 4. ——— pronominal adjs., 92. ——— governing gen., 204. ——— governing dat., 192. ——— governing acc., 141, 3. ——— construed with abl., 214, 1, d; 217, 1; 218, 8; 223; 226, 2; 227, 1. ——— with supine in –ā«, 340, 2. adl– = all–, 9, 2. admoneā , constr., 207. Admonishing, const. of verbs of, 207. adr– = arr–, 9, 2. ads– = ass–, 9, 2. ad sensum, constr., 235, B, 2, c; 254, 4. adulā«scā«ns, spelling, 9, 2. adulter, decl., 23, 2. adultus, force, 114, 2. Adverbs, defined, 140; ——— formation and comparison, 76 f.; 140; 157. ——— in –iter from adjs. in –us, 77, 4. ——— in –tus and –tim, 77, 5. ——— in ā and –o, 77, 2. ——— numeral, 79. ——— as preps., 144, 2. ——— derivation of, 157. ——— with gen., 201, 2; 3; and a. ——— special meanings, 347. ——— position, 350, 6. Adversative clauses, 309. ——— conjunctions, 343. adversus, prep. with acc., 141. ae, how pronounced, 3, 2; ——— phonetic changes, 7, 1, d. aedā«s, plu., 61. aequā lis, abl. sing. of, 70, 5, a; ——— as subst., 238. aequor, decl., 34. aequum est = aequum sit, 271, 1, b). aes, in plu., 55, 4, b; ——— lacks gen. plu., 57, 7. aetā s, decl., 40, 1, e); ——— id aetā tis, 185, 2. –aeus, suffix, 152, 3. aevom, decl., 24. Affected, acc. of person or thing, 175. Agency, dat. of, 189; ——— abl., 216. Agent, abl., 216; ——— with names of animals, 216, 2. ager, decl., 23. Agreement, nouns, 166; 168; 169, 2; 3; 4. ——— adjs., 234; ——— in gender, 235, B; ——— in number, 235, A; ——— prons., 250; ——— verbs, with one subj., 254, 1; ——— with two or more subj., 255, 1. –ā ā«, case-ending, gen. sing., 1st decl., poet., 21, 2, b). aā«n, 135, N. ajā , 135; ——— quantity of first syllable, 362, 5. –al, declension of nouns in, 39. alacer, decl., 68, 1; ——— comp., 73, 4. aliqua, 91, 2. aliquā«, 91; 91, 2. aliquis, 91; 252, 2; ——— aliquis dā«cat, dā«xerit, 280, 1. –ā lis, suffix, 151, 2. aliter ac, 341, 1, c. alius, 66; 92, 1; ——— used correlatively, 253, 1. alius ac, 'other than,' 341, 1, c). Allia, gender of, 15, 3, N. alliciā , conj., 109, 2, b). Alliteration, 375, 3. Alphabet, 1. alter, decl., 66; 92, 1; ——— used correlatively, 253, 1. Alternative questions, 162, 4; ——— indirect, 300, 4. alteruter, decl., 92, 2. alvus, gender of, 26, 1, b. amandus sum, conj., 115. amā tā«rus sum, conj., 115. amb– (ambi–), 159, 3, N. ambā , 80, 2, a; ——— usage, 355, 2. amā , conj., 101. amplius = amplius quam, 217, 3. amussis, –im, 38, 1. an, 162, 4, and a); 300, 4; ——— haud sciā an, nesciā an, 300, 5. Anacoluthon, 374, 6. Anapaest, 366, 2. Anaphora, 350, 11, b). Anastrophe of prep., 141, 2; 142, 3; 144, 3. anceps (syllaba anceps), defined, 366, 10. Androgeā s, decl., 27. animal, decl., 39. Animals, as agents, 216, 2. animā«, locative, 232, 3. annā n, in double questions, 162, 4. Answers, 162, 5. ante, prep. w. acc., 141; ——— as adv., 144, 1; ——— dat. w. verbs compounded w. ante, 187, III; ——— in expressions of time, 357, 1; 371, 5; ——— ante diem, 371, 5; 6. Antecedent of rel., 251. ——— attraction of, 251, 4. ——— incorporated with rel., 251, 4. Antecedent omitted, 251, 1. ——— repeated with rel., 251, 3. Antepenult, 6, 2. antepā nā , with dat., 187, III, 2. antequam, with ind., 291; ——— with subjv., 292. Anticipation, denoted by subjv., w. antequam and priusquam, 292; ——— by subjv. with dum, dā nec, quoad, 293, III, 2; 374, 5. –ā nus, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 1; 3. Aorist tense, see Historical perfect. Apodosis, 301 ff. ——— in conditional sent. of 1st type, 302, 4; ——— result clauses as apodoses, 322; ——— quā«n– clauses as apodoses, 322; ——— ind. questions as apodoses, 322, b; ——— potuerim in apodosis, 322, c; ——— apodosis in indir. disc., 319–321; ——— in expressions of obligation,

ability, etc., 304, 3, a; ——— with periphrastic conjugations, 304, 3, b. Apposition, 169; ——— agreement, 169, 2; ——— partitive, 169, 5; ——— with voc. in nom., 171, 2; ——— genitive w. force of appositive, 202; ——— id as appositive of clause, 247, 1, b; ——— inf. as appositive, 326; 329; ——— subst. clauses as appositives, 282, 1, f; 294; 297, 3. Appositive of locative, 169, 4; ——— with acc. of limit of motion, 182, 2, a; ——— with town names, in abl. of place whence, 229, 2. ——— position of, 350, 2. aptus, w. dat., 192, 2. apud, prep. w. acc., 141. ArchiÄ s, declension of, 22. -ar, declension of nouns in, 39. arguÄ , constr., 178, 1, d). -Ä ris, suffix, 151, 2. -Ä rium, suffix, 148, 3. -Ä rius, suffix, 151, 2. armiger, decl., 23, 2. Arrangement of words, 348–350; ——— of clauses, 351. Arsis, defined, 366, 6. artÄ«s, dat. and abl. plu. of, 49, 3. arx, decl., 40. -Ä fs, acc. plu. in Greek nouns, 47, 3. -Ä s, old gen. sing., 1st decl., case-ending, 21, 2, a). ——— ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22. ——— gender of nouns in -Ä s, 43, 2; 45, 1. ——— voc. of Greek nouns in -Ä s, antis, 47, 4. ——— -Ä tis, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, c). Asking, case const, with verbs of, 178, 1, c; ——— subst. clauses w., 295, 1; ——— ind. questions, 300, 1. Aspirates, 2, 3, c. Assimilation of consonants, 8, 4 f.; 9, 2. Association, abl. of, 222A. Asyndeton, 341, 4, a); 346. at, 343, 1, d). -Ä tim, suffix, 157, 2. AtlÄ s, decl., 47, 4. atomus, gender of, 26, 1, c). atque, 341, 2, b); ——— = as, 341, 1, c). atquÄ«, 343, 1, e). Attendant circumstance, abl. of, 221: 227, 2, e). Attraction of demonstratives, 246, 5; ——— of relatives, 250, 5; ——— subjunctive by attraction, 324; ——— of adjectives, 327, 2, a; 328, 2. Attributive adjs., 233, 2. -Ä tus, its force as suffix, 151, 4. audÄ cter, formation and comparison, 76, 2. audeÄ , conj., 114, 1. audiÄ , conj., 107; ——— with pres. partic., 337, 3. aulÄ Ä«, archaic gen., 21, 2, b. ausus, force as participle, 336, 5. aut, 342, 1, a). autem, 343, 1, c); 350, 8. Auxiliary omitted in infin., 116, 5: ——— ——— in finite forms, 166, 3. auxilium, auxilia, 61. -Ä x, suffix, 150, 2.

B.

balneum, balneae, 60, 2. barbitos, decl., 27. Believing, verbs of, with dat., 187, II. bellÄ«, locative, 232, 2. bellum, decl., 23. bene, comparison, 77, 1. Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II. benevolus, comparison, 71, 5, a). -ber, declension of month names in, 68, 1. -bilis, suffix, 150, 4. bonus, decl., 63; comparison, 72. bÄ s, decl., 41. Brachylogy, 374, 2. Bucolic diaeresis, 368, 3, d -bulum, suffix, 147, 4. -bundus, suffix, 150, 1. bÄ«ris, decl., 38, 1

C.

C., for G. as abbreviation of GÄ ius, 373. caedÄ“s, decl., 40. Caesura, 366, 8: ——— in dactylic hexameter 368, 3. calcar, decl., 39. Calendar, 371; 372. Calends, 371, 2, a). campester, decl., 68, 1. canis, decl., 38, 2. capiÄ , conj., 110. carbasus, gender of, 26, 1 b). carcer, carcerÄ“s, 61. Cardinals, defined. 78, 1; ——— list of, 79; ——— decl., 80; ——— with and without et, 81, 1; 3; ——— expressed by subtraction, 81, 2; ——— replaced by attributives in poetry, 81, 4, d. cÄ rÄ“, comparison, 76, 2. carÄ , decl., 42. carrus, carrum, 60, 1. Cases, 17; ——— alike in form, 19; 170 ff. Case-endings, 17, 3. castrum, castra, 61. Catalectic verses, 366, 9. causÄ , with gen., 198, 1; ——— nÄ«lla causa est cÄ«r, with subjv., 295, 7. Causal clauses, 285; 286; ——— clause of characteristic with accessory notion of cause, 283, 3. ——— conjunctions, 345. Cause, abl. of, 219; 227, 2, d) cavÄ“, cavÄ“ nÄ“ in prohibitions, 276, b. -ce, 6, 3 f.; 87, footnote 23. cedo, ceter, 137, 3. cÄ“dÄ , with dat. 187, II. celebr, decl., 68, 1. celer, decl., 68, 2. cÄ“lÄ , constr., 178, 1, e). cÄ“nÄ tus, force, 114, 2. cÄ“tera, adverbial acc., 185, 2. ceterÄ«, use, 253, 4. Characteristic, clauses of, 283; ——— denoting cause or opposition ('although'), 283, 3; ——— gen. of, 208, 1; ——— abl., 224. Charge, gen. of, 208, 1; 2. Chiasmus, 350, 11, c). Choosing, const. w. verbs of, 177, 1–3. circÄ , circiter, circum, preps. w. acc., 141. circum, compounds of, w. dat., 187, III. circumdÄ , const., 187, 1, a. Circumstance, abl. of attendant, 221. cis, prep. w. acc., 141. citerior, comparison, 73, 1. cito, 77, 2, a. citrÄ , prep. w. acc., 141. cÄ«vitÄ s decl., 40, 1, e. clam, with acc., 144, 2. Clauses, coÄ«rd. and subord., 164, 165. Clauses of characteristic, 283; ——— purpose, 282; ——— result, 284; ——— causal, 285; ——— temporal with postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, etc., 287; ——— with cum, 288; ——— substantive clauses, 294 f.; ——— condition, 301 f.; ——— conditional comparison, 307; ——— concessive, 308; ——— adversative, 309; ——— wish or proviso, 310; ——— relative, 311 f.; 283 f. clÄ vis, decl., 38, 1. Clinging, construction of verbs of, 258, 3. clipeus, clipeum, 60, 1. Close of sentences, cadences used, 350, 12. coepÄ«, conj., 133; ——— coeptus est, 133, 1. Cognate acc., 176, 4. cognÄ men, 373.

cÅ gÅ , w. acc., 178, 1, d); ----- w. infin., 331, VI. Collective nouns, 12, 2, a); ----- w. plu. verb, 254, 4. colus, gender of, 26, 1, b). com-, compounds of, w. dat., 187, III. comedÅ , conj., 128, 2. comÅ“tÅ“s, decl., 22. comitia, as time expression, 230, 1. Commanding, dat. w. verbs of, 187, II; ----- subst. clause w. verbs of, 295, 1; ----- commands expressed by jussive subjv., 275; ----- by imperative, 281. Common gender, 15, B, N. 1. ----- nouns, 12, 1. ----- syllables, 5, B, 3. commonefaciÅ , w. gen. and acc., 207. commoneÅ , w. gen. and acc., 207. commÅ«nis, w. gen., 204, 2; ----- with dat., 204, 2, a. commÅ«tÅ , w. abl., 222A. Comparatives, decl., 69; ----- w. abl., 217; ----- w. quam, 217, 2; ----- occasional meaning, 240. ----- two required in Latin, 240, 4. Comparison of adjs., 71 f.; ----- of adverbs, 76; 77. ----- participles as adjs., 71, 2. ----- adjs. in -dicus, -ficus, -volus, 71, 5. ----- defective, 73. ----- abl. of, 217. Comparison, conditional, 307. Compendiary comparison, 374, 2, b); ----- w. result clauses, 284, 4; ----- w. clauses of characteristic, 283, 2, a. Completed action, tenses expressing, 262-4; 267, 3. Compounds, 158 f.; ----- spelling of, 9, 2. Compound sentences, 164. ----- verbs governing acc., 175, 2, a; ----- governing dat., 187, III; 188, 2, d. Conative uses of pres., 259, 2; ----- of imperf., 260, 3; ----- of pres. partic., 336, 2, a. Concessive clauses, 308; ----- 'although' as accessory idea to clause of characteristic, 283, 3. ----- subjunctive, 278. Conclusion, see Apodosis. Concrete nouns, 12, 2, a). Condemning, verbs of, constr., 208, f. Conditional clauses of comparison, 307. ----- sentences, 1st type (nothing implied), 302; ----- in indir. disc., 319; ----- 2d type ('should'-'would'), 303; ----- in indir. disc., 320; ----- 3d type (contrary to fact), 304; ----- in indir. disc., 321; ----- abl. abs. equivalent to, 227, 2, b); ----- introduced by relative pronouns, 312; ----- general conditions, 302, 2; 3; ----- indicative in contrary-to-fact apodoses, 304, 3; ----- protasis omitted or implied, 305, 1; ----- protasis contained in imperative, or jussive subjv., 305, 2; ----- employment of nisi, sÅ« nÅ n, sÅ«n, sÅ« minus, 306; ----- conditional relative sentences, 312, 2. cÅ nfÅ«dÅ , w. abl., 219, 1, a. Conjugation, 11; 93 f.; ----- the four conjugations, 98; ----- periphrastic, 115; ----- peculiarities of conj., 116. Conjunctions, 145, 1; 341 f. cÅ nor, with inf., 295, 5, a. Consecutive clauses, see Result clauses. cÅ nsistere, with abl., 218, 4. Consonant stems, nouns, 29 f.; ----- adjs., 70, 1. ----- partially adapted to Å--stems, 40. Consonants, 2, 2 f.; ----- pronunciation, 3, 3. ----- double, 2, 9. ----- combinations of, in division into syllables, 4, 2 f. Consonant changes, 8; ----- omission of finals 8, 3; ----- assimilation of, 8, 4 f. ----- stems, 29; ----- following analogy of Å--stems, 40. cÅ nspiciÅ , conj., 109, 2, b). cÅ nstÅ re, w. abl., 218, 4. Construction acc. to sense, 254, 4; 235, B, 2, c). cÅ nsuÅ“tÅ«dÅ est, with subjv. substantive clause, 297, 3. cÅ nsuÅ“vÅ« = pres., 262, A. cÅ nsulÅ ris, abl. sing. of, 70, 5, a. Contending, verbs of, with dat., 358, 3. contentus, w. abl., 219, 1. continerÅ«, with abl., 218, 4. contingit ut, 297, 2. Continued action, tenses for, 257, 1, b. contrÅ , prep. w. acc., 141; ----- as adv., 144, 1. Contraction, 7, 2. ----- length of vowel as result of, 5, A, 1, b). Contrary-to-fact conditions, 304. Convicting, verbs of, constr., 208 f. CoÅ«rdinate clauses, 165. ----- conjunctions, 341 f. cÅ pia, cÅ piae, 61. Copulative conjunctions, 341. cor, lacks gen. plu., 57, 7. cornÅ«, decl., 48. Correlative conjunctions, 341, 3; 342, 2. ----- adverbs, 140. cottÅ«diÅ“, spelling, 9, 2. Countries, gender of, 26, 1, a. Crime, gen. of, 208, 1; 2. -crum, suffix, 147, 4. -culum, suffix, 147, 4. -culus (a, um), suffix, 148, 1. cum, appended, 142, 4. cum (conj.), 'when,' 288-290; ----- 'whenever,' 288, 3. ----- adversative, 309, 3. ----- causal, 286, 2. ----- explicative, 290. ----- to denote a recurring action, 288, 3; 289, a. ----- inversum, 288, 2. com ... tum, 290, 2. cum prÅ«mum, 287, 1. cum, spelling of, 9, 1. cum (prep.), with abl. of manner, 220; ----- with abl. of accompaniment, 222; ----- appended to prons., 142, 4. -cundus, suffix, 150, 1. cupiÅ , conj, 109, 2, a); ----- with subst. clause developed from optative, 296; ----- w. inf., 331, IV, and a. cÅ«r, nÅ«lla causa est cÅ«r, w. subjv., 295, 7. cÅ«rÅ , with gerundive const as obj., 337, 8, b, 2. Customary action, 259, 1; 260, 2.

D.

D, changed to s, 8, 2; ----- d final omitted, 8, 3; ----- assimilated, 8, 4. Dactyl, 366, 2. Dactylic hexameter, 368. ----- pentameter, 369. dapis, defective, 57, 6. Daring, verbs of, with obj. inf., 328, 1. Dates 371, 2-5; ----- as indeclinable nouns, 371, 6; ----- in leap year, 371, 7. Dative 17; ----- irregular, 1st decl., 21, 2, c); ----- 3d decl., 47, 5; ----- 4th decl., 49, 2; 3; ----- 5th decl., 52, 1 and 3; 186 ff. ----- in the gerundive const., 339, 7. ----- of agency, 189. ----- of direction and limit of motion, 193. ----- of indir. obj., 187. ----- of advantage or disadvantage, so called, 188, 1. ----- of local standpoint, 188, 2, a). ----- of person

judging, 188, 2, c). ----- of possession, 190; 359, 1. ----- of purpose or tendency, 191; 339, 7. ----- of reference, 188. ----- of separation, 188, 2, d). ----- of the gerund, 338, 2. ----- with adjs., 192; ----- with proprius, commānis, 204, 2; ----- with similis, 204, 3. ----- with compound verbs, 187, III. ----- with intrans. verbs, 187, II. ----- with nā men est, 190, 1. ----- with impersonal pass. verbs, 187, II, b. ----- with trans. verbs, 187, I. ----- with verbs of mingling, 358, 3. ----- ethical dat., 188, 2, b). dā, prep. w. abl., 142; ----- with abl. instead of gen. of whole, 201, 1, a; ----- with verbs of reminding, 207, a; ----- compounds of dā governing dat., 188, 2, d; ----- dā vā, with verbs of accusing and convicting, 208, 3; ----- with gerund and gerundive, 338, 4, b. dea, deā bus, 21, 2, e). dā bā bam, dā buā in apodosis, 304, 3, a). dā beā, governing obj. inf., 328, 1. dā buā, with pres inf., 270, 2. decemvir, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b). dā cernā, w. subst. clause developed from volitive, 295, 4. decet, w. acc., 175, 2, c). Declarative sentences, defined, 161, 1; ----- in indir. disc., 314. Declension, 11; ----- heteroclitics, 59. ----- stems and gen. terminations, 18. ----- 1st decl., 20–22; ----- 2d decl., 23–27; ----- 3d decl., 28–47; ----- 4th decl., 48–50; ----- 5th decl., 51–53; ----- of Greek nouns, 22; 27; 47; ----- of adjs., 62–69; ----- of prons., 84–90. Decreeing, verbs of, w. subjv., 295, 4. dā decet, 175, 2, c). Defective verbs, 133 f.; ----- nouns, 54 f.; 52, 4; 57; ----- comparison, 73. Definite perfect, see Present perfect. Degree of difference, abl. of, 223. Degrees of comparison, 71 ff. dā lectat, w. inf. as subj., 327, 1. dā lector, w. abl. of cause, 219. Deliberative subjv., 277; ----- in indir. questions, 300, 2; ----- in indir. disc., 315, 3. Demanding, verbs of, w. two accs., 178, 1; ----- w. subst. clause, 295, 1. Demonstrative pronouns, 87; 246; ----- of 1st, 2d, and 3d persons, 87; ----- position of demonstratives, 350, 5, a. Denominative verbs, 156. Dental mutes, 2, 4; ----- stems, 33. Dependent clauses, 282 ff. Deponent verbs, 112; ----- forms with passive meanings, 112, b); ----- semi-deponents, 114. Depriving, verbs of, w. abl, 214, 1, b. Derivatives, 147 f. -dā's, patronymics in, 148, 6. Description, imperf. as tense of, 260, 1, a. Desideratives, 155, 3. Desire, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1; ----- verbs of, w. subst. clauses, 296, 1. dā terior, 73, 1. deus, decl., 25, 4. dā vektor, 114, 3. dexter, decl, 65, 1. dā, 159, 3, N. Diaeresis, 366, 8; ----- bucolic d., 368, 3, d). Diastole, 367, 2. dā c, 116, 3. dā citur, dictum est, w. inf., 332, note. dā cā, accent of compounds of, in imperative, 116, 3. -dicus, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5. Dā dā, decl, 47, 8. diā's, decl., 51; ----- gender, 53. Difference, abl of degree of, 223. difficile est = Eng. potential, 271, 1, b). difficilis, comp., 71, 4. dignor, with abl., 226, 2. dignus, 226, 2; ----- in rel. clauses of purpose, 282, 3. Dimeter, verses, 366, 11. Diminutives, 148, 1. Diphthongs, 2, 1; 3, 2; ----- diphthong stems, 41; ----- diphthongs shortened, 362, 2. diphthongus, gender of, 26, 1. c). Dipodies, 366, 11. Direct reflexives, 244, 1. ----- object, 172. ----- quotation, 313. ----- discourse, 313. ----- questions, 162. dis-, in compounds, 159, 3, N. Disjunctive conjunctions, 342. dissimilis, comp., 71, 4. Distributives, 63, 2; 78, 1; 79; 81, 4. diā, compared, 77, 1. dā ves, decl., 70, 1; ----- compared, 71, 6. dā xtā, 116, 4, c. dā, conj., 127. doceā, with acc., 178, 1, b); ----- with inf., 331, VI. domā, locative, 232, 2. domā, 229, 1, b). domā s, 182, 1, b. domum, 182, 1, b); ----- 'house,' in acc., 182, N. domus, decl., 49, 4; ----- gender, 50. dā nec, with ind., 293; ----- with subjv., 293, III, 2. dā nā, constr., 187, 1, a. dā s, gender, 44, 3. Double consonants, 2, 9. ----- questions, 162, 4; ----- ----- indirect, 300, 4. Doubting, verbs of, w. quā n, 298. Dubitative subjunctive, see Deliberative. dubitā, dubium est, nā n dubitā, nā n dubium est, with quin, 298; ----- nā n dubitā w. inf., 298, a. dā c, 116, 3. dā cā, accent of compounds of, in imper., 116, 3. duim, duint, 127, 2. -dum, 6, 3. dum, temporal with ind., 293; ----- with subjv., 293, III, 2; ----- in wishes and provisos, 310. dummodo, 310. duo, decl, 80, 2. Duration of time, 181, 2. Duty, expressed by gerundive, 189, 337, 8; ----- verbs of duty in conclusion of cond. sentences contrary-to-fact, 304, 3, a; ----- subst. clauses dependent on verbs of, 295, 6; ----- inf. w. verbs of duty, 327, 1; 328, 1; 330; ----- 'it is the duty of,' 198, 3; ----- 'I perform a duty, 218, 1. duumvir, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b). dux, decl, 32.

E.

Ä•, as vowel, 2, 1; ----- as second member of diphthongs, 2, 1; ----- sound of, 3, 1; ----- change, to Ä-, 7, 1, a; ----- for Äf, 7, 1, c; ----- in voc. sing. of 2d decl., 23; ----- in abl. sing. of 3d decl., 31; ----- dropped in nom. of neuters of 3d decl., 39; ----- -Ä• for -Ä- in abl. of mare, 39; ----- alternating w. Ä in abl. sing. of Ä-stems, 37, 38; ----- for Ä in gen. sing. of 5th decl., 52, 1; ----- in abl. sing. of adjs. of 3d decl., 70, 1; ----- in benÄ• and malÄ•, 77, 1; ----- distinguishing vowel of 3d conj., 98; ----- before j, 362, 5; ----- for -Ä in imperatives, 363, 2, b; ----- in temerÄ• and saepÄ•, 363, 2, c. Ä, pronunciation, 3, 1; ----- by

contraction, 7, 2; ----- as ending of Greek nouns, 22; ----- Ä“stems, 51; ----- ending of dat. of 5th decl., 52, 3; ----- distinguishing vowel of 2d conj., 98; ----- -Ä“ in famÄ“ 363, 2, a; ----- in adverbs, 363, 2, c Ä“, ex, use, 142; see ex. ecquis, 91, 6. Ä“dÄ“c, 116, 3. Editorial 'we,' 242, 3. edÄ , 128. Ä“dÄ“c, 116, 3. efficiÄ ut, 297, 1. efficitur ut, 297, 2. Effort, subjv. w. verbs of, 295, 5. egeÄ , w. abl., 214, 1, c. ego, 84. egomet, 84, 2. ei, diphthong, 2, 1; 3, 2. -Ä“i, gen. of 5th decl., 52, 1. -Ä“is, 148, 6, b). ejus, as poss., 86, 1; ----- quantity, 362, 5. Elegiac distich, 369, 2. Elision, 266, 7. Ellipsis, 374, 1. -ellus (a, um), 148, 1. Emphasis, 349. Enclitics, accent of preceding syllable, 6, 3. ----- -met, 84, 2; ----- -pte, 86, 3; ----- cum as enclitic, 142, 4. End of motion, see Limit. Endings, case endings, 17, 3; ----- personal, of verb, 96; ----- in formation of words, 147 f. enim, 345. -Ä“nsimus (-Ä“nsumus), 79, N. -Ä“nsis, 151, 2; 152, 3. Envy, verbs of, with dat., 187, II eÄ , 132; ----- cpds., 132, 1. Epexegetical genitive, 202. Epistolary tenses, 265. epistula, spelling, 9, 2. epitomÄ“, decl., 22. epulum, epulae, 60, 2. equÄ bus, 21, 2, e). equester, decl., 68, 1. equos, decl., 24. -er, decl., of nouns in, 23; ----- adjs., 63; 64; 65; ----- adjs. in -er compared, 71, 3. ergÄ , prep. w. acc., 141. ergÄ , 344, 1, b). -ernus, suffix, 154. -Ä“s, gender of nouns in, 43, 1; ----- exception, 44, 5; ----- in nom. plu. of Greek nouns of 3d decl., 47, 2. -Ä“s, ending of Greek nouns, nom. sing. in, 22. ----- gen. -is, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, a). esse, conjugation of, 100; ----- compounds of, 125; 126; ----- esse omitted, 116, 5. est quÄ“, with subj., 283, 2. et, 341, 1, a; ----- in enumerations, 341, 4, c). et is, 247, 4. et ... neque, 341, 3. Ethical dative, 188, 2, b). etiam, in answers, 162, 5. et nÄ n, 341, 2, c). etsÄ“, 'although,' 309, 2; ----- etsÄ“, 'even if,' 309, 2, a. -Ä“tum, suffix, 148, 3. -eus, inflection of Greek nouns in, 47, 6; ----- adj. suffix, 151, 1. Ä“venit ut, 297, 2. ex, 142, 2; ----- with abl., instead of gen. of whole, 201, 1, a; ----- compounds of, with dat., 188, 2, d; ----- with abl. of source, 215, 1. Exchanging, verbs of, with abl. of association, 222A. Exclamation, acc. of, 183. Exclamatory sentences, 161, 3. Expectancy, clauses denoting, in subjv., 292, 1; 293, III, 2. exposcÄ , constr., 178, 1, a). existÄ , spelling, 9, 2. exspectÄ , spelling, 9, 2. exterÄ“, xterior, 73, 2. extrÄ“mus, use, 241, 1. exuÄ , w. abl., 214, 1, b.

F.

f, pronunciation, 3, 3; ----- nf, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a. fac, 116, 3; ----- with subjv., 295, 5. facile, 77, 3. facilis, comp., 71, 4. faciÄ , 109, 2, a); ----- pass. of, 131. ----- in imper., 116, 3. falsus, comparison, 73, 3. famÄ“, 59, 2, b). Familiarity, adjs. of, w. gen., 204. 1. familiÄ s, 21, 2, a. fÄ rÄ“, 136. fÄ s, indeclinable, 58. faucÄ“s, decl., 40, 1, d. Favor, verbs signifying, with dat., 187, II. Fearing, verbs of, constr. 296, 2. febris, decl. 38, 1. fÄ“lÄ“x, 70. Feminine, see Gender. Feminine caesura, 368, 3, c. femur, decl. 42, 4. -fer, decl. of nouns in; adjs., 23, 2; ----- adjs. 65, 1. ferÄ , and its compounds, 129. -ficus, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5. fideÄ“, 52, 1. fÄ“dÄ , 114, 1; ----- with abl., 219, 1, a. fÄ“dus, compared, 73, 3. fÄ-erem, fÄ-erÄ“ 362, 1, c; ----- fierÄ“ potest ut, 298, 2. Fifth decl., 51 f. Figures of rhetoric, 375. ----- of syntax, 374. fÄ“lÄ“, 25, 3. fÄ“lia, fÄ“liÄ bus, 21, 2, e. Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 218, 8. Final clauses, see Purpose clauses. Final consonant omitted, 8, 3. Final syllables, quantity, 363, 364. fÄ“nis, fÄ“nÄ“s, 61. Finite verb, 95. fÄ“Ä , conj., 131. fÄ“Ä , with abl., 218, 6. First conj., 101; ----- principal parts of verbs of, 120; ----- deponents of 1st conj., 113. First decl., 20 f.; ----- peculiarities, 21; ----- Greek nouns of 1st decl., 22. fit ut, 297, 2. flÄ gitÄ , constr., 178, 1, a. fodiÄ , conj., 109, 2, a. Foot, in verse, 366, 2. 'For,' its Latin equivalents, 358, 1. fore, 100, footnote 32. fore ut, 270, 3; ----- 297, 2. forem, forÄ“s, etc., 100, footnote 31. forÄ“s, 228, 1, c. Formation of words, 146 f. fors, forte, 57, 2, a. fortior, decl., 69. fortis, 69. fortÄ“na, fortÄ“nae, 61. Fourth conj., 107. Fourth decl., 48; ----- dat. in -Ä“, 49, 2; ----- gen. in -Ä“, 49, 1; ----- dat. abl. plu. in -ubus, 49, 3. fraude, abl. of manner, 220, 2. Free, abl. w. adjs. signifying, 214, 1, d. Freeing, abl. w. verbs of, 214, 1, a. frÄ“num, plu. of, 60, 2. Frequentatives, 155, 2. frÄ“tus w. abl., 218, 3. Fricatives, 2, 7. Friendly, dat. w. adjs. signifying, 192, 1. frÄ“ctus, decl., 48. frÄ“gi, compared, 72; 70, 6. frÄ“gis, 57, 6. fruor, with abl., 218, 1; ----- in gerundive constr., 339, 4. fugiÄ , conj., 109, 2, a). fuÄ“, fuistÄ“, etc., for sum, es, etc., in compound tenses, 102, footnotes 36, 37. Fullness, adjs. of, w. abl., 218, 8; ----- w. gen., 204, 1. fungor, w. abl., 218, 1; ----- in gerundive constr., 339, 4. fÄ“r, decl., 40, 1, d. fÄ“rtÄ , abl. of manner, 220, 2. Future tense, 161; ----- w. imperative force, 261, 3. ----- time in the subjv., 269. ----- perfect, 264; ----- ----- with future meaning, 133, 2; ----- ----- inf., 270, 4. ----- imperative, 281, 1. ----- infinitive, 270; ----- ----- periphrastic fut. inf., 270, 3, and a. ----- participle, 337, 4. futÄ“rum esse ut, with subjv., 270, 3.

G.

gaudeÅ , semi-deponent, 114, 1. gemÅ , w. acc., 175, 2, b. Gender 13–15; ---- in 1st decl., 20; 21; ---- in 2d decl., 23; ---- exceptions, 26; ---- in 3d decl., 43 f.; ---- in 4th decl., 50; ---- in 5th decl., 53; ---- determined by endings, 14; ---- by signification, 15, A; ---- heterogeneous nouns, 60. gener, decl, 23, 2. General relatives, 312, 1; ---- general truths, 259, 1; 262, B, 1; ---- 'general' conditions, 302, 2; 3. Genitive, 17; ---- in -Ä« for -iÄ«, 25, 1 and 2; ---- of 4th decl., in -Ä«, 49, 1; ---- of 5th decl. in -Ä«, 52, 2; ---- of 5th decl. in -Ä•Ä«, 52, 1; ---- in -Ä“, 52, 3; ---- of 1st decl. in -Ä Ä«, 21, 2, b; ---- of 1st decl. in -Ä s, 21, 2, a; ---- gen. plu. -um for -Ä rum, 21, 2 d); ---- -um for Å rum, 25, 6; 63, 2; ---- -um for -ium, 70, 7; ---- gen. plu. lacking, 57, 7; ---- syntax of, 194 f. ---- of characteristic, 203, 1. ---- of charge with judicial verbs, 208. ---- of indefinite price, 203, 4. ---- of indefinite value, 203, 3. ---- of material, 197. ---- of measure, 203, 2. ---- of origin, 196. ---- of possession, 198. ---- of quality, 203. ---- of the whole, 201. ---- appositional, 202. ---- objective, 200. ---- of separation, 212, 3. ---- subjective, 199. ---- with adjs., 204; ---- with participles, 204, 1, a. ---- with causÅ , grÄ tiÄ , 198, 1. ---- with verbs, 205 f.; ---- of plenty and want, 212; ---- with impers. verbs, 209. ---- position of gen., 350, 1. genus, decl. 36; ---- id genus, 185, 1. -ger, decl. of nouns in, 23, 2; ---- adjs., 65, 1. Gerund, 95, 1; ---- 1st conj., 101; ---- 2d conj., 103; ---- 3d conj., 105; ---- 4th conj., 107; ---- syntax, 338; ---- with object, 338, 5. Gerundive, 95, 1; ---- 1st conj., 102; ---- 2d conj., 104; ---- 3d conj., 106; ---- 4th conj., 108; ---- in periphrastic conj., 115; 337, 8. Gerundive, const., 339, 1–6; ---- in passive periphrastic conj., 337, 8 f.; ---- gen. denoting purpose, 339, 6; ---- with dat. of purpose, 191, 3; 339, 7. gnÅ rus, not compared, 75, 2. Gnostic present, 259, 1; ---- perfect, 262, 1. gradior, conj., 109, 2, c. Grammatical gender, 15. grÄ tiÄ , with gen., 198, 1; ---- grÄ tia, grÄ tiae, 61. Greek nouns, 1st decl., 22; ---- 2d decl., 27; ---- exceptions in gender, 26, 1, c); ---- 3d decl., 47; ---- Greek acc., 180; ---- Greek nouns in verse, 365. grÅ«s, decl., 41, 2. gu = gv, 3, 3. Guttural mutes, 2, 4. ---- stems, 32.

H.

h, pron., 3, 3; ---- ph, ch, th, 2, 4; 3, 3. habeÅ , with perf. pass. partic., 337, 6. Hadria, gender, 21, 1. Happening, verbs of, w. ind., 299, 1, 2; ---- w. subjv., 297, 2. Hard consonants, 2, 3, a), footnote 4. Hardening, 367, 4. haud, use, 347, 2, a; ---- haud sciÅ an, 300, 5. havÄ“, 137, 5. Help, verbs signifying, w. dat. 187, II. Hendiadys, 374, 4. herÄ«, locative, 232, 2. Heteroclites, 59. Heterogeneous nouns, 60. Hexameter, dactylic, 368. Hiatus, 366, 7, a. hÄ«c, 87; 246, 1; 246, 2; ---- hÄ-c, 364, footnote 60. hiems, 35, footnote 13. Hindering, verbs of, with subjv., 295, 3. Historical tenses, 258; ---- historical present, 259, 3; 268, 3; ---- historical perfect, 262, B; ---- historical infinitive, 335. honor, decl., 36. Hoping, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I. Hortatory subjv., 274. hortus, decl., 23. hÅ scine, 87, footnote 23 hostis, decl., 38. hÄ«jusce, 87, footnote 23 humÄ«, locative, 232, 2. humilis, comp., 71, 4. humus, gender of, 26, 1, b. huncine, 87, footnote 23 Hyperbaton, 350, 11, a. Hypermeter, 367, 6. Hysteron proteron, 374, 7.

I.

Ä-, 1, 1; ---- in diphthongs, 2, 1; ---- pron., 3, 1; ---- from Ä•, 7, 1, a; ---- from Äf, 7, 1, b; ---- dropped by syncope, 7, 4; ---- for Ä- in some words, 9, 1; ---- changes to Ä•, 39; ---- dropped, 39; ---- final i short, 363, 3; ---- becomes j, 367, 4. Ä--stems, 37; 39; ---- not always ending in -is, 38, 3. -Ä«, gen. and voc. of 2d decl. nouns in -ius and -ium in, 25, 1 and 2. ---- gen. of 4th decl. nouns in -us, 49, 1. ---- gen. of 5th decl. nouns, 52, 2. Ä«-stem, vÄ«s, 41. Ä«, in abl., 3d decl., 38, 1; 39; ---- in adjs., 67, 3, a; 70, 5; ---- participles, 70, 3; ---- patrials, 70, 5, c); ---- nom. plu., of is, 87; ---- as characteristic of 4th conj., 98. -ia, 149. Iambus, 366, 2. Iambic measures, 370. ---- trimeter, 370. -iÄ nus, suffix, 152, 1. -ias, suffix, 148, 6, b). -Ä«bam, in imperf., 116, 4, b). -Ä«bÅ , in future, 116, 4, b). Ictus, 366, 5. -icus, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 2. id aetÄ tis, 185, 2. id genus, 185, 1. id quod 247, 1, b. id temporis, 185, 2. Ideal 'you'; see Indefinite second person. Ä«dem, 87; 248. Ä«dem ac, 248, 2. Ides, 371, 2, c). -Ä«dÄ“s, suffix, 148, 6, a). -Ä«dÄ“s, suffix, 148, 6, a). -Ä«dÅ , suffix, 147, 3, c). idÅ neus, not compared, 74, 2;

----- w. dat., 192, 2.; ----- w. ad and acc., 192, 2 and N.; ----- with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3. -Ä-dus, suffix, 150, 3. Ä^adÄ«s, fem. by exception, 50. -ie, in voc. sing. of adjs. in -ius, 63, 1. iÄ“ns, pres. partic. from eÄ , 132. -iÄ“ns, as ending of numeral adverbs, 97 and N. -ier, inf. ending, 116, 4, a. -iÄ“s, nouns in, 51. igitur, 344, 1, c). Ä«gnis, decl., 38. -iÄ«, in gen. sing. of iÄ -stems, 25, 2. iÄ«s, in dat. and abl. plu. of is, 87. -Ä«le, suffix, 148, 3. Ä^alion, decl., 27. -Ä«lis, suffix, 151, 2. -ilis, suffix, 150, 4. Illative conjunctions, 344. ille, 87; ----- 'the following,' 246, 2; ----- 'the former,' 246, 1; ----- 'the well-known,' 246, 3; ----- position, 350, 5, b. illÄ«c, 87, footnote 25. -illus (a, um), diminutive suffix, 148, 1. -im, in acc., 3d decl., 38, 1. -im, -Ä«s in subjv., 116, 4, d. impedÄ«mentum, impedÄ«menta, 61. Imperative, 281; ----- tenses in, 94, 3; 281, 1; ----- future indic. with force of, 261, 3. ----- as protasis of a conditional sent., 305, 2; ----- as apodosis, 302, 4. ----- sent. in indir. disc., 316. Imperfect tense, 260; ----- conative, 260, 3; ----- inceptive, 260, 3; ----- with jam, etc., 260, 4; ----- epistolary imp., 265. Imperfect subjv. in conditional sent. referring to the past, 304, 2. Impersonal verbs, 138; ----- gen. with, 209; ----- dat. with, 187, II, b; ----- in passive, 256, 3; ----- with substantive clauses developed from volitive, 295, 6; ----- of result, 297, 2; ----- with infin., 327, 1; 330. impetus, defective, 57, 4. Implied indir. disc., 323. Ä«mus, 'bottom of,' 241, 1. in, prep., 143; ----- verbs compounded w. in governing acc., 175, 2, a, 2; ----- verbs compounded w. in governing dat., 187, III. in with abl. of place, 228; ----- with abl. of time, 230, 2; 231. -Ä«na, suffix, 148, 5. Inceptives, 155, 1. Inchoatives, 155, 1. Incomplete action, 257, 1, b; 267, 3. Indeclinable adjs., 70, 6; 80, 6. ----- nouns, 58; ----- gender of, 15, 3. Indefinite price, 225, 1; 203, 4. Indefinite pronouns, 91, 252; ----- in conditions, 302, 3. Indefinite second person, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2. Indefinite value, 203, 3. Indicative, equivalent to Eng. subjv., 271. ----- in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3, a) and b). indigeÄ , constr., 214, 1, N. 2. indignus, with abl., 226, 2; ----- with rel. clause of purpose, 282, 3. Indirect discourse, defined, 313 f.; ----- mood in, 313 ff.; ----- tenses in 317-18; ----- declarative sentences in, 314; ----- interrog. sentences in, 315; ----- imperative sentences in, 316; ----- conditional sentences in, 319-22; ----- verbs introducing, 331, 1; ----- verb of saying, etc., implied, 314, 2; ----- ind. in subord. clauses of indir. disc., 314, 3; ----- inf. for subjv. in indir. disc., 314, 4; ----- subj. acc. omitted, 314, 5; ----- implied indir. disc., 323. ----- questions, 300; ----- particles introducing, 300, 1, a; ----- deliberative subjv. in indir. quest., 300, 2; ----- indir. quest. w. sÄ«, 300, 3; ----- double indir. questions, 300, 4; ----- in indir. quest., 300, 6; ----- in conditional sents. of 3d type, 322, b. ----- reflexives, 244, 2. ----- object, 187. Ä«nferum, Ä«nferior, 73, 2. Ä«nfirmus, 241, 1. Infinitive, gender of, 15, A 3; ----- in -ier, 116, 4, a; ----- force of tenses in, 270; 326 ff. ----- fut. perf. inf., 270, 4; ----- periphrastic future, 270, 3. ----- without subj. acc., 326-328; 314, 5. ----- with subj. acc., 329-331. ----- as obj., 328; 331, ----- as subj., 327; 330. ----- with adjs., 333. ----- denoting purpose, 326, N. ----- in abl. abs., 227, 3. ----- in exclamations, 334. ----- historical inf., 335. Ä«nfitiÄ s, constr., 182, 5. Inflection, 11. Inflections, 11 ff. Ä«nfrÄ , prep. w. acc., 141. ingÄ“ns, comp., 73, 4. injÄ«riÄ , abl. of manner, 220, 2. injussÄ«, defective, 57, 1; ----- the abl., 219, 2. inl- = ill-, 9, 2. innÄ«xus, w. abl., 218, 3. inops, decl., 70, 2. inquam, conj., 134. Inseparable prepositions, 159, 3, N. Ä«nsidae, plu. only, 56, 3. Ä«nstar, 58. Instrumental uses of abl., 213; 218 ff. Intensive pron., 88. Intensives (verbs), 155, 2. inter, prep. w. acc., 141; ----- compounded w. verbs, governing dat. 187, III; ----- to express reciprocal relation, 245. interdÄ«cÄ , const., 188, 1, a. interest, constr., 210; 211. interior, comp., 73, 1. Interjections, 145. Interlocked order, 350, 11, d. Interrogative pronouns, 90. ----- sentences, 162; ----- particles, 162, 2; ----- omitted, 162, 2, d); ----- in indir. disc., 315. intrÄ , prep. w. acc., 141. Intransitive verbs, with cognate acc., 176, 4; ----- in passive, 256, 3; 187, II, b; ----- impersonal intransitives, 138, IV. -Ä«nus, suffix, 151, 2; 152, 1; 152, 3. -iÄ , verbs of 3d conj., 109. -ior, ius, comparative ending, 71. ipse, 88; 249; ----- as indir. reflexive, 249, 3. ipsÄ«us and ipsÄ«rum, with possessive pronouns, 243, 3. -ir, decl. of nouns in, 23. Irregular comparison, 72 ff.; ----- nouns, 42; ----- verbs, 124 f. is, 87; 247; ----- as personal pron., 247, 2. -is, as patronymic ending, 148, 6, b); ----- nouns in -is of 3d decl., 37 f.; ----- adjs. in -is, 69. -Ä«s, acc. plu., 3d decl., 37; 40. ----- -Ä«tis, abl. of patrials in, 70, 5, c). istaec, 87, footnote 24. iste, 87; 246, 4. istÄ«c, 6, 4. istÄ«c, 6, 4; 87, footnote 24. ita, in answers, 162, 5. itaque, 344, 1, a). iter, 42, 1. -itia, 149. -itÄ , frequentatives in, 155, 2, a. -ium, gen. of nouns in, 25, 2; ----- ending of gen. plu., 3d decl., 37 f.; 39; 40; 147, 3, b); 148, 2. -ius, gen. and voc. sing. of nouns in, 25, 1 and 2; ----- of adjs., 63, a; 151, 2; 152, 2; 152, 3; ----- -Ä«us for -Ä«us, 362, 1, a). -Ä«vus, suffix, 151, 2.

J.

j, 1, 2. jaciÅ , conj., 109, 2, a); ----- compounds of, 9, 3; 362, 5. jam, etc., with present tense, 259, 4; ----- with imperfect, 260, 4. jecur, decl., 42, 3. jocÅ , abl. of manner, 220, 2. jocus, plu. of, 60, 2. Joining, verbs of, construction, 358, 3. jubeÅ , constr., 295, 1, a: 331, II. jÅ«dicor, w. inf., 332, c. jÅ«gerum, 59, 1. Julian calendar, 371. jungÅ , w. abl., 222A. Juppiter, decl., 41. jÅ«rÅ tus, 114, 2. jÅ«re, abl. of manner, 220, 2. jÅ«s est, with substantive clause, 297, 3. jussÅ«, 57, 1; ----- the abl., 219, 2. Jussive subjv., 275; ----- equiv. to a protasis, 305, 2. juvat, w. acc., 172, 2, c); ----- with inf., 327, 1. JuvenÅ le, abl., 70, 5, b. juvenis, a cons. stem, 38, 2; ----- comparison, 73, 4. juvÅ , with acc., 187, II, N. jÅ«xtÅ , prep. w. acc., 141.

K.

k, 1, 1. Knowing, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I. Knowledge, adjs. of, w. gen., 204.

L.

l, pron., 3, 3. Labial mutes, 2, 4. ----- stems, 31; ----- gender of, 43, 3; 46, 1. lacer, decl., 65, 1. lacus, decl., 49, 3. laedÅ , w. acc., 187, II, N. laetus, w. adverbial force, 239. lapis, decl., 33. largior, 113. Latin period, 351, 5. Length of syllables, 5, B. Length of vowels, 5, A. -lentus, suffix, 151, 3. leÅ , decl., 35. LÅ«ber, decl, 23, 2. lÅ«ber, adj., decl., 65, 1. lÅ«berÅ , constr., 214, 1, N. 1. lÅ«berta, lÅ«bertÅ bus, 21, 2, e). liberum, gen. plu., 25, 6, c). licet, with subjv., 295, 6 and 8; 308, a; ----- with inf., 327, 1; 330. licet, adversative, 309, 4. Likeness, adjs. of, w. dat., 192, 1. Limit of motion, acc. of., 182. Lingual mutes, 2, 4. linter, decl., 40. Liquids, 2, 5. ----- stems, 34. lÅ«s, decl., 40, 1, d). Litotes, 375, 1. littera, litterae, 61. Locative, 17, 1; ----- in -ae, 21, 2, c); ----- in -i, 25, 5; ----- syntax, 232; ----- apposition with, 169, 4; ----- loc. uses of abl., 213; 228 f. locÅ , locÅ«s, the abl., 228, 1, b. locus, plurals of, 60, 2. Long syllables, 5, B, 1. ----- vowels, 5, A, 1. longius = longius quam, 271, 3. longum est = Eng. potential, 217, 1, b. lubet, lubÅ«dÅ , spelling, 9, 1. lÅ«dÅ«s, the abl., 230, 1. -lus, -la, -lum, diminutives in, 148, 1. lÅ«x, 57, 7.

M.

m, pron., 3, 3; ----- changed to n before d, c, 8, 5, c; ----- m-stem, 35, footnote 13; ----- m-final in poetry, 366, 10. maereÅ , w. acc., 175, 2, b. magis, comparison, 77, 1; ----- comparison with, 74. magnÅ«, gen. of value, 203, 3. magnopere, compared, 77, 1. magnus, compared, 72. Making, verbs of, w. two accusatives, 177. male, comparison, 77, 1. maledÅ«cÅ«ns, comparison, 71, 5, a). mÅ lim, potential subjv., 280, 2, a. mÅ llem, potential subjv., 280, 4. mÅ lÅ , 130; ----- with inf., 331, IV, and a; ----- with subjv., 296, 1, a. malus, comparison, 72. mÅ ne, indeclinable, 58. Manner, abl. of, 200. mare, decl., 39, 2; ----- marÅ«, 228, 1, c). mÅ s, decl., 40, 1, d). Masculine, see Gender. Masculine caesura, 368, 3, c. Material, abl. of, 224, 3. mÅ teriÅ«s, mÅ teria, 59, 2, a). mÅ tÅ«rÅ«, compared, 77, 1. mÅ tÅ«rus, compared, 71, 3. maximÅ«, adjs. compared with, 74. maximÅ«, as gen. of value, 203, 3. maxumus, 9, 1. Means, abl. of, 218; ----- abl. abs. denoting, 227, 2; ----- denoted by partic., 337, 2, d. mÅ«d, for mÅ«, 84, 3. Mediae (consonants), 2, 3, b), footnote 5. medius, 'middle of', 241, 1. meÅ«, as objective gen., 242, 2. melior, comparison, 72. melius est = Eng. potential, 271, 1, b). memini, 133; ----- constr., 206, 1, a; 2, a. memor, decl., 70, 2. -men, -mentum, suffixes, 147, 4. mÅ«nsis, 38, 2, footnote 14. mentem (in mentem venÅ«re), 206, 3. -met, enclitic, 6, 3; 84, 2. Metrical close of sent., 350, 12. metuÅ , w. subjv., 296, 2. mÅ«, dat., 84, 1. mÅ«, voc. of meus, 86, 2. Middle voice, verbs in, 175, 2, d). mÅ«les, decl., 33. mÅ«litiæ, locative, 232, 2. mÅ«lle, mÅ«lia, decl., 80, 5. minimÅ«, comparison, 77, 1; ----- in answers, 162, 5, b). minimus, comparison, 72. minor, comparison, 72. minÅ ris, gen. of value, 203, 3; ----- of price, 203, 4. minus, comparison 77, 1; ----- = minus quam, 217, 3; ----- quÅ minus, 295, 3; ----- sÅ« minus, 306, 2 and a. mÅ«ror, conj., 113. mÅ«rus, comparison, 75, 2. miscÅ«re, with abl., 222A; ----- with dat., 358, 3. misereor, with gen., 209, 2. miserÅ«scÅ , with gen., 209, 2. miseret, constr., 209. Mixed stems, 40. modium, gen. plu., 25, 6, a). modo, in wishes and provisos, 310. moneÅ , 103; ----- constr., 178, 1, d). months, gender of names of, 15, 1; ----- decl. 68, 1; ----- abl., of month names, 70, 5, a); ----- names, 371, 1. Moods, 94, 2. ----- in independent sentences, 271 f. ----- in

dependent clauses, 282 f. Mora, 366, 1. morior, conj. 109, 2, c); mÅ s, decl., 36; ——— mÅ rÄ“s, 61. mÅ s est, with subjv. clause, 297, 3. muliebre secus, constr., 185, 1. Multiplication, distributives used to indicate, 81, 4, c. multum, 77, 3; ——— compared, 77, 1. multus, compared, 72; ——— with another adj., 241, 3. mÅ«s decl., 40, 1, d). mÅ«tÄ re, with abl., 222A. Mutes, 2, 3. Mute stems, 30.

N.

n, pronunciation, 3, 3; ——— n–stems, 35. n adulterÄ«num, 2, 6. –nam, appended to quis, 90, 2, d. Names, Roman, 373. Naming, verbs of, w. two accusatives, 117, 1. Nasals, 2, 6. Nasal stems, 35. nÄ tÄ«, 57, 1; ——— maximus nÄ tÄ«, minimus nÄ tÄ«, 73, 4, footnotes 20, 21; 226, 1. Natural gender, 14. nÄ tus, constr., 215. nÄ vis, decl., 41, 4. nd, vowel short before, 5, 2, a. –ne, 6, 3 f; 162, 2, c); 300, 1, b); ——— –ne ... an, 162, 4; ——— ——— in indir. double questions, 300, 4. nÄ“, in prohibitions, 276; ——— with hortatory subjv., 274; ——— with concessive, 278; ——— with optative, 279; ——— in purpose clauses, 282; ——— in substantive clauses, 295 f., 296; ——— in provisos, 310. nÄ“, 'lest,' 282, 1; 296, 2. nÄ“ nÄ n for ut after verbs of fearing, 296, 2, a. nÄ“ ... quidem, 347, 1; 2. Nearness, adjs. of, w. dat., 192, 1. nec, 341, 1, d); ——— nec Ä«squam, 341, 2, d). necesse est, w. subjv., 295, 8. necne, in double questions, 162, 4. nefÄ s, indeclinable, 58. Negatives, 347, 2; ——— two negatives strengthening the negation, 347, 2. nÄ“mÅ , defective, 57, 3; ——— use, 252, 6. nÄ“quam, indeclinable, 70, 6; ——— compared, 72. neque, 341, 1, d); ——— neque in purpose clauses, 282, 1, e. nequeÄ , conj., 137, 1. ne quis, use, 91, 5. nÄ“quiter, compared, 77, 1. nesciÄ an, 300, 5. nesciÄ quis, as indef. pron., 253, 6. Neuter, see Gender. neuter, decl., 66; ——— use, 92, 1. nÄ“ve (neu), in purpose clauses, 282, 1, d. nf, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a. nihil, indeclinable, 58. nihil est cÄ«r, quÄ«n, 295, 7. ningit, 'it snows,' 138, 1. nisi, 306, 1 and 4. nisi forte, 306, 5. nisi sÄ«, 306, 5. nisi vÄ“rÄ , 306, 5. nÄ«tor, constr., 218, 3. nix, decl., 40, 1, d). No, in answers, 162, 5, b. –nÄ , class of verbs, 117, 4. nÄ lÄ«, with inf., in prohibitions, 276, b. nÄ lim, potential subjv., 280, 2, a. nÄ llem, potential subjv., 280, 4. nÄ lÄ , 130; ——— with inf., 331, IV and a; 276, 2, a; ——— with subjv., 296, 1, a. nÄ men, decl., 35; ——— nÄ men est, constr., 190, 1; ——— nÄ men, as part of Roman name, 373. Nominative, 17; 170; ——— used for voc., 171, 1; ——— nom. sing. lacking, 57, 6; ——— pred. nom., 168. Nones, 371, 2, b). nÄ n, in answers, 162, 5, b); ——— with poten. subjv., 280; ——— with deliberative, 277. nÄ n dubitÄ quÄ«n, with subjv., 298; ——— nÄ n dubitÄ , w. inf., 298, a; b. nÄ n modo for nÄ n modo nÄ n, 343, 2, a. nÄ nne, 162, 2, a); 300, 1, b), N. nÄ n quia, with ind., 286, 1, c; ——— with subjv., 286, 1, b. nÄ n quÄ«n, with subjv., 286, 1, b. nÄ n quod, with ind., 286, 1, c; ——— with subjv., 286, 1, b. nÄ s = ego, 242, 3. nostri, as objective gen., 242, 2. nostrum, as gen. of whole, 242, 2; ——— as possessive gen., 242, 2, a. Nouns, 12 ff.; 353; ——— derivation of, 147 f. ——— in –is not always Ä–stems, 38, 1. ——— of agency, force, 353, 4. ——— used in plu. only, 56. ——— used in sing. only, 55. ——— used only in certain cases, 57. ——— indeclinable, 58. ——— with change of meaning in plural, 61. ——— syntax, 166 f. ——— predicate, agreement of, etc., 167 f. ——— appositives, agreement of, etc., 169 f. Noun and adj. forms of the verb, 95, 2. nÄ vÄ«, as pres., 262, A. novus, compared, 73, 3. ns, quantity of vowel before, 5, 1, a. –ns, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, c). nt, quantity of vowel before, 5, 2, a. nÄ«bÄ“s, decl., 40, 1, a. nÄ«lla causa est cÄ«r, quÄ«n, 295, 7. nÄ«llus, decl., 66; 57, 3; ——— use, 92, 1. num, 162, 2, b); 300, 1, b). Number, 16; 94, 4. Numerals, 78 f.; ——— peculiarities in use of, 81. numquis, decl., 91, 5. nÄ«per, compared, 77, 1. –nus, suffix, 151, 2.

O.

Ä , vowel, 2, 1; ——— as element in diphthong Ä“, 2, 1; ——— pron., 3, 1; ——— alternating w. Ä- in certain classes of words, 9, 1; 2; 4; ——— Ä –stems, 23; 24; ——— in citÄ , 77, 2, a; ——— in duÄ , 80, 2; ——— in egÄ , 84; 363, 4, a; ——— in modÄ , 363, 4, a; ——— in compounds of pro–, 363, 4, c; ——— in amÄ , leÄ , etc., 363, 4, b. Ä , pron. 3, 1; ——— for au, 7, 1, e; ——— by contraction, 7, 2; ——— in abl. sing. of 2d decl., 23; ——— in nom. sing. of 3d decl., 35; ——— in Greek nouns, 47, 8; ——— in adverbs, 77, 2; ——— in ambÄ , 80, 2, a; ——— in personal endings, 96. ob, prep. w. acc., 141; ——— verbs compounded w. governing dat., 187, III. Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II. Object, direct, 172 f.; ——— two objects w. same verb, 177; 178; ——— indirect, 187 f.; ——— inf. as obj., 326; 328; 329; 331. Objective gen., 200. Obligation, verb in expression of, 304, 3, a; ——— see also Duty. Oblique cases, 71, 2. oblÄ«vÄ«scor, constr., 206, 1, b; 2.

octo decim (for duodeviginti), 81, 2. o d, 133. oe, 2, 1; ——— pron., 3, 2. Old forms, familia s, 21, 2, a; ——— aul, 21, 2, b; ——— servos, aevom, equos, etc., 24; ——— m d, t d, 84, 3; ——— s d, 85, 3. olle, archaic for ille, 87. -olus (a, um), 148, 1. -om, later -um in 2d decl., 23. -on, Greek nouns, 2d decl. in, 27. Onomatopoeia, 375, 4. opera, operae, 61. Operations of nature, impersonal verbs expressing, 138, 1. opni ne with comparatives, 217, 4. opis, 57, 6; ——— op s, 61. oportet, 138; ——— w. subjv., 295, 6; 8; ——— w. inf., 327, 330. oportuit, with pres. inf. 'ought to have', 270, 2; ——— with perf. inf., 270, 2, a. oppidum (Genavam ad oppidum), 182, 2, a. Optative subjv., 272; 279; ——— substantive clauses developed from, 296. opti t s, decl., 40, 1, d. optimus, comp., 72. opt, w. subst. cl. developed from optative, 296, 1. optumus, spelling, 9, 1. opus est, w. abl., 218, 2; ——— w. partic., 218, 2, c. -or, nouns in, 34; ——— -or for -os, 36; ——— gender of nouns in, 43, 1; ——— exceptions in gender, 44, 2; ——— as suffix, 147, 2. Oratio Obliqua, 313 f. Order of words, 348 f. Ordinals, 78, 1; 79. orior, conjugation, 123, VII. oriundus, constr., 215, 2. r, with acc., 178, 1, a. Orpheus, decl., 47, 6. Orthography, peculiarities, 9. ortus, constr., 215. s, decl., 57, 7. os, decl., 42. -os, later -us in 2d decl., 23. -s, later -or in 3d decl., 36, 1. ——— -s, Greek nouns, 2d decl. in, 27. -sus, form of suffix, 151, 3. ovis, decl., 38, 1. Oxymoron, 375, 2.

P.

p, pron., 3, 3; ——— by assimilation, 8, 4; ——— by partial assimilation, 8, 5. paenitet, 138, II; ——— with gen., 209. palam, as prep. w. abl., 144, 2. Palatal mutes, 2, 4. palster, decl., 68, 1. Parasitic vowels, 7, 3. par tus, with infin., 333. Pardon, verbs signifying, w. dat., 187, II. pari, 109, 2, a). pars, part s, 61. parte, abl. of place, 228, 1, b. partem, adverbially used, 185, 1. Participation, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1. Participial stem, 97, III; ——— formation, 119. Participles, in -ns and -ns, 70, 3; ——— gen. plu. of in -um, 70, 7; ——— pres. act. partic., 97, I, 5; 101; 103; 105; 107; 110; 113; ——— fut. act. partic., 97, III; ——— as one of the principal parts of the verb, 99, footnote 28; 100; 101; 103; 105; 107; 110; 113; ——— perf. pass. partic., 97, III; 102; 104; 106; 108; 111; 113; ——— gerundive, see Gerundive; ——— fut. act., peculiar formation of, 119, 4; ——— perf. pass., w. act. or neuter meaning, 114, 2; ——— of deponents, 112, b; ——— syntax, 336 ff. Participles, fut. act., 119, 4; ——— denoting purpose, 337, 4. ——— perf. act., how supplied, 356, 2. ——— perf. pass. 336, 3; ——— as pres., 336, 5. ——— pres. partic., 336, 2; ——— with conative force, 336, 2, a. ——— perf. pass., with active meaning, 114, 2; ——— pred. use of partic., 337, 2; ——— participles equivalent to subordinate clauses, 337, 2; ——— to coordinate clauses, 337, 5; ——— w. opus est, 218, 2, c; ——— with noun, equivalent to abstract noun, 337, 6; ——— with habe, 337, 7. ——— with vide, audi, faci, etc., 337, 3. Particles, 139 f.; 341 f. Partitive apposition, 169, 5. Partitive gen., so called, 201. Parts of speech, 10. parum, comparison, 77, 1. parv, gen. of value, 203, 3. parvus, comparison, 72. Passive, verbs in, with middle meaning, 175, 2, d; 256; ——— verbs governing dat. used in pass. only impersonally, 187, II, b; ——— constr. of passive verbs of saying, etc., 332 and note; ——— how supplied when missing, 356, 1. patior, conj., 109, 2, c; 113; ——— with inf., 331, III. Patrial adjs., 70, 5, c. Patronymics, 148, 6. paulum, formation, 77, 3. paulus, spelling, 9, 2. pauper, decl., 70, 1. pedester, decl., 68, 1. pejor, quantity of first syllable, 362, 5. pelagus, gender of, 26, 2. Penalty, abl. of, 208, 2, b. pen t s, decl., 40, 1, d). penes, prep. w. acc., 141. Pentameter, dactylic, 369. Penult, 6, 2. per, prep. w. acc., 141; ——— with acc. of time and space, 181, 2. Perceiving, verbs of, w. inf., 331, I. Perfect active ptc., how supplied in Latin, 356, 2. Perfect pass. partic., force of w. deponent verbs, 112, b; ——— dat. of agency sometimes used w., 189, 2; ——— opus, 218, 2, c. Perfect stem, 97, II; ——— formation, 118. ——— in -v, -v, -v contracted, 116, 1. ——— historical perf., 262. ——— with force of pres. 262; 133, 2; ——— pres. perf. and hist. perf. distinguished, 237, 1 and 2; ——— gnomic perf., 262, 1; ——— perf. subjv. as historical tense, 268, 6 and 7, b; ——— perf. inf. w. oportuit, 270, 2; ——— perf. prohibitive, 279, a; ——— perf. potential, 280, 1 and 2; ——— perf. concessive, 278; ——— sequence of tenses after perf. inf., 268, 2. Periodic structure, 351, 5. Periphrastic conj., 115; 269, 3; ——— in conditional sentences of the 3d type, 304, 3, b); ——— in indir. disc., 322; ——— in passive, 337, 8, b, 1. ——— fut. inf., 270, 3. Persons, 95, 4; ——— 2d sing. of indefinite subject, 356, 3. Personal pronouns 84; 242; ——— as subject, omission of, 166, 2; ——— as objective genitives, 242, 2. ——— endings, 96. persu de, with dat., 187, II, a; ——— with subjv., 295, 1. Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II. ph, 2, 3, c; 2, 4; 3, 3. piget, with gen., 209. Pity, verbs of, w. gen., 209, 1 and 2. Place to which, 182; ——— whence, 229; ——— place where, 228. placitus, force, 114, 2.

Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II, a; ——— w. acc., 187, II, a, N. plÄ“bÄ“s, heteroclite, 59, 2, d). plÄ“bi, gen., 52, 2. Plenty and Want, verbs of, constr., 212; cf. 218, 8. plÄ“nus, w. gen., 218, 8, a. Pleonasm, 374, 3. plÄ“rÄ“ique, 6, 5. pluit, 138, I. Pluperfect tense, formation, 100; ——— syntax, 263; 265; 287, 2; 288, 3; ——— with imperfect meaning, 133, 2. Plural, 16; ——— in 5th decl., 52, 4; ——— of proper names, 55, 4, a); ——— of abstract nouns, 5, 4, c); ——— nouns used in, only, 56; ——— with change of meaning, 61; ——— stylistic use, 353, 1, 2. Pluralia tantum, 56; 81, 4, b). plÄ“ris, gen. of value, 203, 3; ——— of price, 203, 4. plÄ“s, decl., 70; 70, 4; ——— = plÄ“s quam, 217, 3. poÄ“ma, decl., 47, 5. Polysyndeton, 341, 4, b). por–, inseparable prep., 159, 3, e. porticus, gender, 50. portus, decl., 49, 3. poscÄ , constr., 178, 1, a). Position of clauses, 351, 3. ——— of words, 348; 350; 351. Possessive dat., 190; ——— gen., 198; ——— ——— contrasted with dat. of poss., 359, 1. Possessive pronouns, 86, 243; ——— = objective gen., 243, 2; ——— position of, 243, 1, a. Possibility, verbs of, put in indic. in cond. sentences, 304, 3, a. possum, 126; ——— with present infin., 'I might,' 271, 1, a; ——— in cond. sentences, 304, 3, a. post, prep. w. acc., 144, 1; ——— in expressions of time, 357, 1. Post–positive words, 343, 1, c). posteÄ quam, 287; ——— separated, 287, 3; ——— with imperf. ind., 287, 4; ——— w. pluperf. ind., 287, 3; ——— with subjv., 287, 5. posterus, posterior, comp., 73, 2. postrÄ“mus, use, 241, 2. postrÄ“diÄ“, with gen., 201, 3, a. postulÄ , constr., 178, 1, a. Potential subjv., 272; 280. potior, with gen., 212, 2; ——— with abl., 218, 1; ——— in gerundive constr., 339, 4. ——— adj., 73, 1. potius, compared, 77, 1. potuÄ«, poteram, in apodosis of conditional sent. of 3d type, 304, 3, a); ——— in indir. disc., 322, c. potuÄ«, with pres. inf. = 'could have,' 270, 2. potuerim, in dependent apodosis, 322, c. pÄ tus, force, 114, 2. prae, prep. w. abl., 142; ——— verbs compounded with governing dat., 187, III; ——— short in praeacÄ«tus, etc., 362, 2. PraenÄ men, 373. praesÄ“ns, 125. praesum, w. dat., 187, III. prÄ nsus, force, 114, 2. precÄ«, –em, –e, 57, 5, a. Predicate, 163. ——— gen., 198, 3; 203, 5. Predicate nouns, 167; 168; ——— in acc., 177; ——— predicate nouns or adjs. attracted to dat., 327, 2, a; ——— ——— to nom., 328, 2. ——— adjectives, 232, 2; 177, 2. Prepositions, assimilation of, in compounds, 8, 4; 9, 2; ——— with acc., 141; ——— with abl., 142; ——— as adverbs, 144; ——— inseparable prepositions, 159, 3, N.; ——— position, 350, 7; ——— prepositional phrases as attributive modifiers, 353, 5; ——— anastrophe of, 144, 3; 141, 2; 142, 3; ——— usage with abl. of sep., 214 f; ——— with abl. of source, 215. Present tense, 259; ——— gnomic, 259, 1; ——— conative, 259, 2; ——— historical, 259, 3; ——— with jam prÄ«dem, jam diÄ«, etc., 259, 4; ——— with dum, 'while,' 293, I; ——— in RepraesentÄ tiÄ , 318; ——— pres. subjv., in –im, 127, 2; ——— pres. partic., see Participle. ——— stem, 97, I; ——— ——— formation, 117. ——— perf., 257, 1 and 2. Preventing, verbs of, w. subjv. clause, 295, 3. Price, indefinite, special words in gen. 203, 4; also 225, 1. ——— abl. of, 225. prÄ«diÄ“, with gen., 201, 3, a; ——— with acc., 144, 2. Primary tenses, see Principal tenses. prÄ«mus, 'first who,' 241, 2. prÄ«nceps, decl., 31. Principal parts, 99; ——— list, p. 251. ——— tenses, 258 f. prior, compared, 73, 1. prius, compared, 77, 1. priusquam, with ind., 291; ——— with subjv., 292; ——— separated, 292. Privation, verbs of, w. abl., 214, 1, b and c. prÄ , prep. w. abl., 142. procul, as prep. w. abl., 144, 2. prohibeÄ , w. abl., 214, 2; ——— w. subjv. clause, 295, 3. Prohibitions, method of expressing, 276. Prohibitive subjv., 276. Prolepsis, 374, 5. Pronominal adjs., 253. Pronouns, defined, 82; ——— classes, 83; ——— personal, 84; ——— reflexive, 85; ——— possessive, 86; ——— demonstrative, 87; ——— intensive, 88; ——— relative, 89; ——— interrogative, 90; ——— indefinite, 91; ——— pronominal adjs., 92; ——— personal, omission of, as subject, 166, 2; ——— syntax, 242 f.; ——— ——— personal, 242 f.; ——— ——— possess., 243 f.; ——— ——— reflex., 244 f.; ——— ——— reciprocal, 245 f.; ——— ——— demonstrative, 246 f.; ——— ——— relative, 250 f.; ——— ——— indef., 252 f.; ——— position, 350, 5; 355. Pronunciation, Roman, 3. prope, compared, 77, 1. Proper names, abbreviated, 373. ——— nouns, 12, 1. propior, compared, 73, 1; ——— with acc., 141, 3. proprius, with dat., 204, 2, a; ——— with gen., 204, 2. propter, prep. w. acc., 141. Prosody, 360 f. prÄ sper, decl., 65, 1. prÄ sum, conj., 125, N. Protasis, 301; ——— denoting repeated action, 302, 3; ——— without sä«, 305; ——— of indef. 2d sing., 302, 2; ——— see Conditions. Provisos, 310. proximÄ“, –us, comp., 73, 1; 77, 1; ——— with acc., 141, 3. prÄ«dÄ“ns, decl., 70. –pte, 86, 3. pudet, with gen, 209; ——— w. inf., 327, 1. puer, decl., 23. pulcher, comp., 71, 3. puppis, decl., 38, 1. Purpose, dat. of purpose, 191; ——— with dat. and gerundive, 191, 3; ——— w. ad and acc., 192, 2; ——— subjv. of purp., 282, 1; ——— ——— w. quÄ , 282, 1, a; ——— ——— w. ut nÄ“, 282, 1, b; ——— ——— with nÄ n in purpose clause, 282, 1, c; ——— ——— nÄ“ve (neu) in purpose clauses, 292, 1, d; ——— ——— neque, 282, 1, e; ——— rel. clauses of purpose, 282, 2; ——— ——— w. dignus, indignus, idÄ neus, 282, 3; ——— independent of principal verb, 282, 4; ——— inf., denoting purpose, 326, N.; ——— fut. partic., denoting purpose, 337, 4; ——— gerund, w. ad, 338, 3; ——— gerundive, 339, 2; ———

supine, 340.

Q.

qu, pron., 3, 3; ----- both letters consonants, 74, a. quaerÅ , w. indir. questions, 300, 1, b), N. quaesÅ , 137, 2. Quality, gen., 203; ----- abl., 224. quam, in comparisons, 217, 2; ----- with superl., 240, 3; ----- ante ... quam, post ... quam, prius ... quam, see antequam, postquam, priusquam; quam quÅ« , 283, 2, a. quam sÅ« , 307, 1. quam ut, with subjv., 284, 4. quamquam, with ind., 309, 2; ----- with subjv., 309, 6; ----- = 'and yet,' 309, 5. quamvÅ«s, with subjv., 309, 1; 6; ----- denoting a fact, 309, 6. quandÅ , 286, 3, b. quantÅ« , as gen. of price, 203, 4; ----- of value, 203, 3. Quantity, 5. ----- of syllables, 5, B; 363 f. ----- of vowels, 5, A; 362; ----- in Greek words, 365. quasi, 307, 1. quatiÅ , conj., 109, 2, a). -que, accent of word preceding, 6, 3; 6, 5; 341, 1, b); 2, a); 4, c). queÅ , 137, 1. Questions, word, sentence, 162 f.; ----- rhetorical, 162, 3; ----- double (alternative), 162, 4; ----- indirect, 300; ----- questions in indir. disc., 315. quÅ« , rel., 89; ----- interr., 90; ----- indef., 91; ----- for quis in indir. questions, 90, 2, b; ----- with nÅ« , sÅ« , nisi, num, 91, 5; ----- in purpose clauses, 282, 2; ----- abl., 90, 2, a. quia, in causal clauses, 286, 1. quÅ«cum, 89. quÅ«cumque, decl., 91, 8. quÅ«dam, decl, 91; syntax, 252, 3. quidem, post-positive, 347, 1. quÅ«libet, decl., 91, quÅ«n, in result clauses, 284, 3; ----- in substantive clauses, 295, 3; 298; ----- = quÅ« nÅ n in clauses of characteristic, 283, 4; ----- with ind., 281, 3; ----- in indir. disc, 322 and a; ----- nÅ«lla causa est quÅ«n, 295, 7. quÅ«nam, 90, 2, d. QuÅ«ntÅ«lis (= JÅ«lius), 371. quÅ«ppe quÅ« , in clauses of characteristic, 283, 3. QuirÅ«tÅ«s, decl., 40, 1, d. quis, indef., 91; ----- interr., 90; 90, 2, c.; 252, 1; ----- nesciÅ quis, 253, 6; ----- with nÅ« , sÅ« , nisi, num, 91, 5. quis est quÅ« , 283, 2. quÅ«s = quibus, 89. quisnam, inflection, 90, 2, d. quispiam, inflection, 91. quisquam, inflection, 91; ----- usage, 252, 4. quisque, inflection, 91; ----- usage, 252, 5. quisquis, inflection, 91, 8. quÅ«vÅ«s, inflection, 91 quÅ , in purpose clauses, 282, 1, a.. quoad, with ind., 293; ----- with subjv. 293, III, 2. quod, in causal clauses, 286, 1; ----- in substantive clauses, 299; 331, V, a; ----- 'as regards the fact,' 299, 2. quod audierim, 283, 5; ----- quod sciam, 283, 5. quod (sÅ«), adverbial acc., 185, 2. quom, early form of cum, 9, 1. quÅ minus, after verbs of hindering, 295, 3. quoniam, in causal clauses, 286, 1. quoque, post-positive, 347. -quus, decl. of nouns in, 24.

R.

r, pron., 3, 3; ----- for s between vowels ('Rhotacism'), 8, 1. rapiÅ , conj., 100, 2 a). rÅ strum, plurals of, 60, 2. ratus, 'thinking,' 336, 5. Reciprocal pronouns, 85, 2; 245; cf. 253, 3. Reduplication in perf., 118, 4, a); ----- in pres., 117, 7. Reference, dat. of, 188. rÅ«fert, constr., 210; 211, 4. Reflexive pronouns, 85; 244; 249, 3. regÅ , conj., 105. Regular verbs, 101-113. rÅ«i, 362, 1, b). reiciÅ , quantity, 362, 5. Relative adverbs, in rel. clauses of purp., 282, 2. ----- clauses, of purp., 282, 2; ----- ----- w. dignus, indignus, idÅ neus, 282, 3; ----- ----- of characteristic, 283; ----- ----- denoting cause or opposition, 283, 3; ----- ----- restrictive, 283, 5; ----- ----- introduced by quÅ«n, 283, 4; 284, 3; ----- ----- conditional rel. clauses, 311; 312, 1 and 2; ----- ----- relative as subj. of inf., 314, 4; ----- ----- rel. clause standing first, 251, 4, a. ----- pronouns, inflection, 89; ----- ----- use, 250, ff.; ----- ----- = Eng. demonstrative, 251, 6; ----- ----- agreement, 250; ----- ----- not omitted as in Eng., 251, 5; ----- ----- fondness for subordinate clauses, 355. relinquitur ut, 297, 2. reliquÅ« , use, 253, 5. reliquum est, with subjv., 295, 6. rÅ«mex, decl., 32. Remembering, verbs of, cases used w., 206. Reminding, verbs of, const., 207. reminÅ«scor, constr., 206, 2. Removing, verbs of, w. abl., 214, 2. reposcÅ , constr., 178, 1, a). RepraesentÅ tiÅ , 318. requiÅ«s, requiem, requiÅ«tem, 59, 2, c). rÅ«s, decl., 51. Resisting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II. Restrictive clauses, 283, 5. Result, acc. of, 173, B; 176; ----- clauses of, 284; 297; ----- ----- in dependent apodosis, 322, and a; ----- ----- sequence of tense in, 268, 6. revertor, semi-deponent, 114, 3. Rhetorical questions, 162, 3; 277, a; ----- in indir. disc., 315, 2. Rhotacism, 8, 1; 36, 1. Rivers, gender of names of, 15, A, 1. rogÅ tÅ« , abl. of cause, 219, 2. rogÅ , constr., 178, 1, c); 178, 1, a). Roman pronunciation, 3. Root, 17, 3, footnote 12. -rs, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, c). rÅ«re, abl., place from which, 229, 1, b. rÅ«rÅ« , abl., place in which, 228, 1, c. rÅ«s, 57, 7; ----- acc., limit of motion, 182, 1, b.

S.

s, pron., 3, 3; ——— changed to r between vowels, 8, 1: ——— s, ss from dt, tt, ts, 8, 2. –s, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more consonants, 40, 1, b). s–stems, 36. sacer, decl., 65; ——— comparison, 73, 3. saepe, compared, 77, 1. sÄ 1, 57, 7; ——— sÄflÄ“s, 61. salÄ«bris, decl., 68, 3. salÄ«tÄ ris, comp., 73, 4. salvÄ“, salvÄ“te, 137, 4. SamnÄ-tÄ“s, 40, 1, d). sÄ nÄ“, in answers, 162, 5. sapiÄ , conj., 109, 2, a). satur, decl., 65, 2. Saying, verbs of, w. inf. of ind. disc., 331, I. sciÄ , quod sciam, 283, 5. –scÄ –class of verbs, 117, 6; 155. scrÄ«bere ad alÄ«quem, 358, 2. sÄ“, use, 244. sÄ“–, compounds of, 159, 3, e. Second conj., 103; ——— decl., 23; ——— peculiarities, 25; ——— second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2. Secondary tenses, see Historical tenses. secundum, prep. w. acc., 141. secÄ«ris, decl., 38, 1. secus, compared, 77, 1. secus (virÄ«le secus), 185, 1; 58. secÄ«tus, 'following', 336, 5. sed, sÄ“, 85, 3. sÄ“d–, compounds of, 159, 3, e. sÄ“d, 343, 1, a). sedÄ«le, decl., 39. sÄ“mentis, decl., 38, 1. Semi–deponent verbs, 114. Semivowels, 2, 8. senex, decl., 42; ——— compared, 73, 4. Sentences, classification, 160, f.; ——— simple and compound, 164; ——— sentence–structure, 351; ——— sentence questions, 162, 2. sentiÄ , abl. of accordance, 220, 3. Separation, dat. of, 188, 2, d); ——— gen., 212, 3; ——— abl., 214. Sequence of tenses, 267; 268. sequester, decl., 68, 1. sequitur ut, 297, 2. sequor, conj., 113. Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II. servos, decl., 24. sÄ“sÄ“, decl., 85. SextÄ«lis (= Augustus), 371. Sharing, adjs. of, w. gen., 204, 1. Short syllables, 5, B, 2; ——— vowels, 5, A, 2. Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 177. sÄ«, with indir. questions, 300, 3; ——— in protasis, 301; ——— omitted, 305. signifer, decl., 23, 2. silentiÄ , abl. of manner, 220, 2. silvester, decl., 68, 3. similis, with dat., 204, 3; ——— with gen., 204, 3; ——— comp., 71, 4. sÄ« minus, use, 306, 2. Simple sentences, 164. simul, as prep., w. abl., 144, 2. simul ac, w. ind., 287, 1; 2. sÄ« nÄ n, usage, 306, 1 and 2. sÄ«n, usage, 306, 3. sÄ«n minus, 306, 2, a. Singular, second person indefinite, 280, 3; 356, 3; 302, 2. sinÄ with inf., 331, III. sitis, decl., 38, 1. Smelling, verbs of, constr., 176, 5. Soft consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 5. –sÄ , verbs in, 155, 2. socer, decl., 23, 2. socium, gen, plu., 25, 6, c). sÄ 1, decl., 57, 7. soleÄ , semi–dep., 114, 1. solitus, used as present partic., 336, 5. sÄ lus, 66; ——— sÄ lus est qui with subjv., 283, 2. Sonant consonants, 2, 3, b), footnote 5. SÄ racte, decl., 39, 2. Sounds, classification, 2. ——— of the letters, 3. Source, abl., 215. Space, extent of, 181. Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II. Specification, abl. of, 226. spÄ«Ä«, quantity, 362, 1, b. Spelling, see Orthography. Spirants, 2, 7. Spondaic verses, 368, 2. Spondee, 368, 1. sponte suÄ , abl. accordance, 220, 3. spontis, –e, defective, 57, 2, b. Statutes, fut. imperative used in, 281, 1, b. Stem, 17, 3. ——— verb, 97; 117. Structure of sentences, see Sentences. Style, hints on, 352 f. su = sv, 3, 3. sub, prep. with acc. and abl., 143; ——— compounds of, w. dat., 187, III. Subject, 163; ——— nom., 166; ——— acc., 184; ——— subject acc. of inf., 184; ——— omitted, 314, 5; ——— clauses as subject, 294; 295, 6; ——— inf. as subj., 327; 330. Subjective gen., 199. Subjunctive, tenses in, 95, 3. ——— in independent sentences, 272; ——— by attraction, 324; ——— tenses of, 266 f.; ——— method of expressing future time in, 269; ——— volitive (hortatory, jussive, prohibitive, deliberative, concessive), 273 f.; ——— optative (wishes), 279; ——— potential, 280; ——— in clauses of purpose, 282; ——— of characteristic, 283; ——— of result, 284; ——— of cause, 286; ——— temporal clauses with postquam, posteÄ quam, 287, 5; ——— temporal clauses with cum, 288–290; ——— with antequam and priusquam, 292; ——— with dum, dÄ nec, quoad, 293, III, 2; ——— substantive clauses, 294 f.; ——— indir. questions, 300; ——— in apodosis of first type conditions, 302, 4; ——— jussive subjunctive as protasis of condition, 305, 2; ——— with velut, tamquam, etc., 307; ——— with necesse est, oportet, etc., 295, 6 and 8; ——— with licet, 309, 4; ——— with quamvÄ«s, quamquam, etsÄ«, cum 'although,' 309 f. sublÄ tus, 129, N. subm– = summ–, 9, 2. Subordinate clauses, 165. Substantive clauses, 294 f.; ——— ——— developed from the volitive, 295, 1–8; ——— ——— developed from the optative, 296; ——— ——— with nÄ n dubitÄ , 298; ——— ——— indir. questions, 300; ——— ——— without ut, 295, 8; ——— ——— of result, 297; ——— ——— introduced by quod, 299. ——— use of adjs., 236–238. subter, prep. w. acc., 143, 1. Suffixes, 17, 3, footnote 12; 147 f. suÄ«, 85; ——— as objective gen., 244, 2; ——— = possessive gen., 244, 2. sum, conj., 100; ——— omitted when auxiliary, 166, 3. summus, 'top of,' 241, 1. sunt quÄ«, with subjv., 283, 2. suÄ pte, suÄ pte, 86, 3. supellex, decl., 42, 2. super, prep. w. acc., 143, 1. Superlative degree; ——— of adjs., 71, 1; ——— ——— in –rimus, 91, 3; ——— ——— in –limus, 71, 4; ——— ——— irregular superl., 72; 73; ——— ——— lacking, 73, 4; ——— ——— formed w. maximÄ“, 74; ——— of adverbs, 76, 2; ——— ——— irregular, 77, 1; ——— force of, 240, 2. superus, compared, 73, 2. Supine, 340. suprÄ , prep. w. acc., 141. –sÄ«ra, suffix, 147, 3, a. Surd consonants, 2, 3, a), footnote 4. sÄ«s, decl., 41. sustulÄ«, 129, N. suus, decl., 86, 1; 244; ——— suus quisque, 244, 4, a. Syllaba anceps, 366, 10. Syllables, division, 4; ——— quantity of, 5, B. Synapheia, 367, 6. Synaeresis, 367, 1. Synchysis, 350, 11, d. Syncope, 7, 4; 367, 8. Synecdochical acc.,

180. Synizesis, 367, 1. Syntax, 160 f. Systole, 367, 3.

T.

t, pron., 3, 3; ---- th, 2, 3, c; 3, 3; ---- changes, 8, 2; ---- dropped, 8, 3. taedet, 138, II; ---- w. gen., 209. Taking away, verbs of, w. dat., 188, 2, d. talentum, gen. plu., 25, 5, a. tamen, 343, 1, f. tametsi, 309, 2. tamquam, tamquam sicut, w. subjv., 307. tantum, 6, 4. -tas, 149; ---- gen. -tis, decl. of nouns in, 40, 1, e). Tasting, verbs of, constr., 176, 5. Teaching, verbs of, constr., 178, 1, b. tamen, 84, 3. Temporal clauses, w. postquam, ut, ubi, simul ac, 287; ---- w. cum, 288; 289; ---- w. antequam and priusquam, 291; 292; ---- with dum, dicitur, quoad, 293. temporis (id temporis), 185, 2. Tendency, dat. of, 191. tener, decl., 64. Tenses, 94, 3; 257 ff.; ---- of inf., 270; ---- of inf. in indir. disc., 317; ---- of participles, 336; ---- of subjv., 266; ---- sequence of, 266-268; ---- in indir. disc., 317; 318. Tenues (consonants), 2, 3, a), footnote 4. tenus, position, 142, 3. Terminations, 17, 3. ternarius, how used, 81, 4, b. -ternus, 154. terrae mare, 228, 1, c. terrester, 68, 3. Tetrameter verses, 366, 11. Thematic verbs, 101-113. ---- vowels, 117, footnote 39. Thesis, 366, 6. Third conj., 105; 109 f.; ---- decl., 28 f.; ---- gender in, 43 f. Threatening, verbs of, 187, II. -tim, adverbs in, 157, 2. Time, at which, 230; ---- during which, 181; 231, 1; ---- within which, 231. timeo, and ut, 296, 2. -tinus, suffix, 154. -tio, suffix, 147, 3. Tmesis, 367, 7. -to as suffix of verbs, 155, 2. -tor, use of nouns in, 353, 4. totus, 66; ---- preposition absent w., in expression of place relations, 228, 1, b). Towns, gender of names of, 15, 2; ---- names of, denoting limit of motion, 182, 1, a; ---- denoting place where, 228, 1, a; ---- place from which, 229, 1, a; ---- appositives of town names, 169, 4; 229, 2. trahitur, trahitur est, w. inf., 332, N. trahitur, prep. w. acc., 141; ---- constr. of verbs compounded with, 179. Transitive verbs, 174. Trees, gender of names of, 15, 2. tris, decl., 80, 3. Tribach, 370, 2. tribus, decl., 49, 3; ---- gender, 50. Trimeter verses, 366, 11. triarius, use, 81, 4, b). triumvir, gen. plu. of, 25, 6, b). -trix, suffix, 147, 1. Trochee, 366, 2. -trum, suffix, 147, 4. Trusting, verbs of, w. dat., 187, II. tui, decl., 84. -tudine, suffix, 84. tuus, as objective gen., 242, 2. -tura, suffix, 147, 3, a). tui, decl., 57, 7. -tus, suffix, 147, 3; 151, 4. tussis, decl., 38. tui, tui, tui, 84, 2. Two accusatives, 177; 178. Two datives, 191, 2.

U.

u, instead of i in some words, 9, 1; ---- instead of a, 9, 1; 9, 4. u, becomes v 367, 4. u-stems, 48. u-stems, 41. -u, dat. sing., 4th decl., 49, 2. uber, decl., 70, 1. ubi, with ind., 287, 1; 2; ---- with gen., 201, 3. -ubus, dat., plu., 4th decl., 49, 3. ullus, decl., 66. ulterior, compared, 73, 1. ultimus, use, 241, 2. ultra, prep. w. acc., 141. -ulus, diminutive ending, 150, 2; ---- (a, um), 148, 1. -um, 1st decl., gen. plu. in, 21, 2, d); ---- 2d decl., 25, 6; ---- for -ium, 70, 7. -undus, -unda, in gerund and gerundive, 116, 2. -nus, decl., 66; 92, 1; ---- -nus est qui, with subjv., 283, 2. -uri, ending of desiderative verbs, 155, 3. -urus, ending of fut. act. partic., 101; 103 ff.; ---- -urus fuisse in apodosis of conditional sentences contrary-to-fact, in indir. disc., 321, 2; ---- -urus fuerim in indir. questions serving as apodoses, 322, b. -us, neuter nouns of 2d decl. in, 26, 2; ---- nom. in 3d decl., in -us, 36; ---- gender of nouns in -us of 3d decl., 43, 3; ---- exceptions in gender, 46, 4. -us, nouns of 3d decl. in, 43, 2. -usque ad, w. acc., 141, 1. -sus est, with abl., 218, 2. ut, temporal, 287, 1; 2; ---- ut, ut, in purpose clauses, 282; ---- in result clauses, 284; ---- in substantive clauses, 295 f.; ---- substantive clauses without, 295, 8; ---- with verbs of fearing, 296, 2. ut nunc = nunc, 282, 1, b; 295, 1, 4, 5. ut non instead of nunc, 282, 1, c; ---- in clauses of result, 284, 297. ut quod, introducing clauses of characteristic, 283, 3. ut sicut, w. subjv., 307, 1. uter, decl., 66; 92, 1. uter, decl., 40, 1, d). uterque, decl., 92, 2. uterlibet, decl., 92, 2. uterque, decl., 92, 2; ---- use, 355, 2. uterque, decl., 92, 2. uterque est = Eng. potential, 271, 1, b). utinam, with optative subjv., 279, 1 and 2. uter, with abl., 218, 1; ---- in gerundive constr., 339, 4 utpote qui, introducing clauses of characteristic, 283, 3. utrumque, 6, 5. utrum ... an, 162, 4; 300, 4.

V.

v, 1, 1; ---- pron., 3, 3: ---- developing from u, 367, 4. v, becomes u, 367, 5. valde, by syncope, for

validÄ“, 7, 4. valÄ•, 363, 2, b). Value, indefinite, in gen., 203, 3. vannus, gender of, 26, 1, b). Variations in spelling, 9. vÄ s, decl., 59, 1. –ve, 6, 3; 342, 1, b). vel, 342, 1, b); ——— with superl., 240, 3. velim, potential subjv., 280, 2, a. vellem, potential subjv., 280, 4. velut, velut sÄ«, w. subjv., 307, 1. venter, decl., 40, 1, d). Verba sentiendÄ« et dÄ«clÄ« randÄ«, w. inf. of indir. disc., 331, I; ——— passive use of these, 332. Verbal adjs., 150, 1–4. Verbs, 94 f.; ——— personal endings, 96; ——— deponent, 112; ——— archaic and poetic forms, 116, 4; ——— irregular, 124; ——— defective, 133; ——— impersonal, 138; ——— with substantive clauses of result, 297, 2; ——— omission of, 166, 3; ——— transitive, 174; ——— used absolutely, 174, a; ——— passives used as middles, 175, 2, d); ——— of smelling and tasting, constr., 176, 5; ——— not used in passive, 177, 3, a; ——— intransitives impersonal in passive, 187, II, b; 256, 3; ——— compounded with preps., constr., 187, III; ——— of judicial action, constr., 208; ——— derivation of, 155 f.; ——— inceptive or inchoative, 155, 1; ——— frequentative or intensive, 155, 2; ——— desiderative, 155, 3; ——— denominative, 156; ——— agreement of, 254 f. Verb stems, 97; ——— formation of, 117 f. vereor, conj., 113; ——— with subst. clause in subjv., 296, 2. Vergilius, gen. of, 25, 1. veritus, with present force; 336, 5. vÄ“rÄ , 343, 1, g); ——— in answers, 162, 5. Verse, 366, 3. Verse–structure, 366 f. Versification, 361. versus, prep. w. acc., 141; ——— follows its case, 141, 2. vÄ“rum, 343, 1, b). vescor, with abl., 218, 1. vesper, decl., 23, 2. vesperÄ«, locative, 232, 2. vestrÄ«, as obj. gen., 242, 2. vestrum, as gen. of whole, 242, 2; ——— as possessive gen., 242, 2, a. vetÄ , with inf. 331, II. vetus, decl., 70; ——— compared, 73, 3. vÄ«, 220, 2. vicem, used adverbially, 185, 1; ——— vicis, vice, 57, 5, b. victor, decl., 34. videÄ , with pres. partic., 337, 3. vigil, decl., 34. violenter, formation, 77, 4, a. vir, decl., 23. ——— gen. plu. of nouns compounded with, 25, 6, b). virÄ«le secus, constr., 185, 1. vÄ«rus, gender of, 26, 2. vÄ«s, decl., 41. vÄ«scera, used in plu. only, 56, 3. Vocative case, 17; 19, 1; ——— of Greek proper names in –Ä s, 47, 4; ——— of adjs. in –ius, 63, 1; 171; ——— in –Ä« for –ie, 25, 1; ——— position of, 350, 3. Voiced sounds, 2, 3, a). Voiced consonants, 2, 3, b). Voiceless consonants, 2, 3, a). Voices, 94; 256; ——— middle voice, 256, 1. Volitive subjunctive, 272 f. volnus, spelling, 9, 1. volÄ , 130; ——— with inf., 331, IV and a; 270, 2, a; ——— with subjv., 296, 1, a. volt, spelling, 9, 1. voltus, spelling, 8, 1. volucer, decl., 68, 1. voluntÄ te, 220, 2. –volus, comparison of adjs. in, 71, 5. Vowels, 2, 1; ——— sounds of the, 3, 1; ——— quantity of, 5, A; ——— contraction of, 7, 2; ——— parasitic, 7, 3. Vowel changes, 7. vulgus, gender of, 26, 2. –vum, –vus, decl. of nouns in, 24.

W.

Want, verbs and adjs. of, w. abl., 214, 1, c; d. Way by which, abl. of, 218, 9. We, editorial, 242, 3. Whole, gen. of, 201. Wills, use of fut. imperative in, 281, 1, b. Winds, gender of names of, 15, 1. Wish, clauses with dum, etc., expressing a, 310. Wishes, subjunctive in, 279; ——— see Optative subjunctive. Wishing, verbs of, with subst. clause 296, 1; ——— with obj. inf., 331, IV. Word–formation, 146 f. Word–order, 348 f. Word questions, 162, 1.

X.

x, 2, 9; ——— = cs and gs, 32. –x, decl. of monosyllables in, preceded by one or more cons., 40, 1, b); ——— gender of nouns in –x of 3d decl., 43, 2; ——— exceptions, 45, 4.

Y.

y, 1, 1. Yes, how expressed, 162, 5. ‘You,’ indefinite, 356, 3; 280, 3; 302, 2.

Z.

z, 1, 1; 2, 9. Zeugma, 374, 2, a).

* * * * *

FOOTNOTES

[1] Sometimes also called *Aryan* or *_Indo-Germanic_*.

[2] Cuneiform means "wedge-shaped." The name applies to the form of the strokes of which the characters consist.

[3] The name *Zend* is often given to this.

[4] For 'voiceless,' 'surd,' 'hard,' or 'tenuis' are sometimes used.

[5] For 'voiced,' 'sonant,' 'soft,' or 'media' are sometimes used.

[6] In this book, long vowels are indicated by a horizontal line above them; as, \bar{a} , \bar{a}^{\ll} , \bar{a}° , etc. Vowels not thus marked are short. Occasionally a curve is set above short vowels; as, \bar{a}^{\bullet} , \bar{a}° .

[7] To avoid confusion, the quantity of *syllables* is not indicated by any sign.

[8] But if the *l* or *r* introduces the second part of a compound, the preceding syllable is always long; as, *abrumpā*.

[9] Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

[10] Only the simplest and most obvious of these are here treated.

[11] The great majority of all Latin nouns come under this category. The principles for determining their gender are given under the separate declensions.

[12] The Stem is often derived from a more primitive form called the Root. Thus, the stem *porta-* goes back to the root *per-*, *por-*. Roots are usually monosyllabic. The addition made to a root to form a stem is called a Suffix. Thus in *porta-* the suffix is *-ta*.

[13] There is only one stem ending in *-m*: *---hiems*, *hiemās*, *winter*.

[14] *mānsis*, *month*, originally a consonant stem (*māns-*), has in the Genitive Plural both *mānsium* and *mānsūm*. The Accusative Plural is *mānsās*.

[15] This is practically always used instead of *alāus* in the Genitive.

[16] A Dative Singular Feminine *alterae* also occurs.

[17] Supplied by *vetustior*, from *vetustus*.

[18] Supplied by *recentior*.

[19] For *newest*, *recentissimus* is used.

[20] Supplied by *minimus* $nā tā^{\ll}$.

[21] Supplied by *maximus* $nā tā^{\ll}$.

[22] The final *i* is sometimes long in poetry.

[23] Forms of $hā^{\ll}c$ ending in *-s* sometimes append *-ce* for emphasis; as, $hā^{\ll}jusce$, *_this ... here_*; $hā^{\circ} sce$,

hÄ«sce. When –ne is added, –c and –ce become –ci; as huncine, hÄ«scine.

[24] For istud, istÄ« sometimes occurs; for ista, istaec.

[25] For illud, illÄ« sometimes occurs.

[26] Sometimes quÄ«s.

[27] An ablative quÄ« occurs in quÄ«cum, *with whom*.

[28] Where the Perfect Participle is not in use, the Future Active Participle, if it occurs, is given as one of the Principal Parts.

[29] The Perfect Participle is wanting in sum.

[30] The meanings of the different tenses of the Subjunctive are so many and so varied, particularly in subordinate clauses, that no attempt can be made to give them here. For fuller information the pupil is referred to the Syntax.

[31] For essem, essÄ«s, esset, essent, the forms forem, forÄ«s, foret, forent are sometimes used.

[32] For futÄ«rus esse, the form fore is often used.

[33] Declined like bonus, –a, –um.

[34] The Imperfect also means *I loved*.

[35] For declension of amÄ«ns, see Ä§ 70, 3.

[36] FuÄ«, fuistÄ«, etc., are sometimes used for sum, es, etc. So fueram, fuerÄ«s, etc., for eram, etc.; fuerÄ«, etc., for erÄ«, etc.

[37] Fuerim, etc., are sometimes used for sim; so fuissem, etc., for essem.

[38] In actual usage passive imperatives occur only in deponents (Ä§ 112).

[39] Strictly speaking, the Present Stem always ends in a Thematic Vowel (Ä• or Ä); as, dÄ«c–Ä•–, dÄ«c–Ä –; amÄ«–Ä•–, amÄ«–Ä –. But the multitude of phonetic changes involved prevents a scientific treatment of the subject here. See the author's *Latin Language*.

[40] But the compounds of juvÄ« sometimes have –jÄ«tÄ«rus; as, –adjÄ«tÄ«rus.

[41] Used only impersonally.

[42] So –impleÄ«, –expleÄ«.

[43] Compounds follow the Fourth Conjugation: –acciÄ«, –accÄ«re, etc.

[44] Fully conjugated only in the compounds: –exstinguÄ«, –restinguÄ«, –distinguÄ«.

[45] Only in the compounds: –Ä«vÄ«dÄ«, –invÄ«dÄ«, –pervÄ«dÄ«.

[46] It will be observed that not all the forms of *ferĀ* lack the connecting vowel. Some of them, as *ferimus*, *ferunt*, follow the regular inflection of verbs of the Third Conjugation.

[47] For the Predicate Genitive, see *Ā*§*Ā*§ 198, 3; 203, 5.

[48] Many such verbs were originally intransitive in English also, and once governed the Dative.

[49] This was the original form of the preposition *cum*.

[50] Place from which, though strictly a Genuine Ablative use, is treated here for sake of convenience.

[51] Especially: *moneĀ*, *admoneĀ*; *rogĀ*, *Ā rĀ*, *petĀ*, *postulĀ*, *precor*, *flĀ gitĀ*; *mandĀ*, *imperĀ*, *praecipĀ*; *suĀ deĀ*, *hortor*, *cohortor*; *persuĀ deĀ*, *impellĀ*.

[52] Especially: *permittĀ*, *concĀ*“*dĀ*, *nĀ n patior*.

[53] Especially: *prohibeĀ*, *impediĀ*, *dĀ*“*terreĀ*.

[54] Especially: *cĀ nstituĀ*, *dĀ*“*cernĀ*, *cĀ*“*nseĀ*, *placuit*, *convenit*, *pacĀ*«*scor*.

[55] Especially: *labĀ rĀ*, *dĀ operam*, *id agĀ*, *contendĀ*, *impetrĀ*.

[56] Exclamations, also, upon becoming indirect, take the Subjunctive, as *cĀ nsiderĀ quam variae sint hominum cupĀ*«*dinĀ*“*s*, _consider how varied are the desires of men._ (Direct: *quam variae sunt hominum cupĀ*«*dinĀ*“*s*!)

[57] *TrĀ ditĀ*«*ri fuerint* and *errĀ tĀ*«*rus fuerĀ*«*s* are to be regarded as representing *trĀ ditĀ*«*ri fuĀ*“*runt* and *errĀ tĀ*«*rus fuistĀ*« of Direct Discourse. (See *Ā*§ 304, 3, b.)

[58] Except in Sallust and Silver Latin.

[59] So named from a fancied analogy to the strokes of the Greek letter *Ī*§ (*_chi_*). Thus:—

multĀ s laesĀ« *Ī*§ *dĀ*“*fendĀ*« *nĀ*“*minem*

[60] The pronouns *hic*, *hoc*, and the adverb *huc*, probably had a short *vowel*. The syllable was made long by pronouncing *hicc*, *hocc*, etc.

[61] *Ictus* was not accent,—neither stress accent nor musical accent,—but was simply the quantitative prominence inherent in the long syllables of *fundamental feet*.

[62] For explanation of the abbreviations, see p. 257.

End of the Project Gutenberg EBook of New Latin Grammar, by Charles E. Bennett

*** END OF THIS PROJECT GUTENBERG EBOOK NEW LATIN GRAMMAR ***

***** This file should be named 15665-0.txt or 15665-0.zip ***** This and all associated files of various formats will be found in: <http://www.gutenberg.org/1/5/6/6/15665/>

Produced by Nathan Gibson, Keith Edkins and the Online Distributed Proofreading Team.

Updated editions will replace the previous one—the old editions will be renamed.

Creating the works from public domain print editions means that no one owns a United States copyright in these works, so the Foundation (and you!) can copy and distribute it in the United States without permission and without paying copyright royalties. Special rules, set forth in the General Terms of Use part of this license, apply to copying and distributing Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works to protect the PROJECT GUTENBERG–tm concept and trademark. Project Gutenberg is a registered trademark, and may not be used if you charge for the eBooks, unless you receive specific permission. If you do not charge anything for copies of this eBook, complying with the rules is very easy. You may use this eBook for nearly any purpose such as creation of derivative works, reports, performances and research. They may be modified and printed and given away—you may do practically ANYTHING with public domain eBooks. Redistribution is subject to the trademark license, especially commercial redistribution.

*** START: FULL LICENSE ***

THE FULL PROJECT GUTENBERG LICENSE PLEASE READ THIS BEFORE YOU DISTRIBUTE OR USE THIS WORK

To protect the Project Gutenberg–tm mission of promoting the free distribution of electronic works, by using or distributing this work (or any other work associated in any way with the phrase "Project Gutenberg"), you agree to comply with all the terms of the Full Project Gutenberg–tm License (available with this file or online at <http://gutenberg.net/license>).

Section 1. General Terms of Use and Redistributing Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works

1.A. By reading or using any part of this Project Gutenberg–tm electronic work, you indicate that you have read, understand, agree to and accept all the terms of this license and intellectual property (trademark/copyright) agreement. If you do not agree to abide by all the terms of this agreement, you must cease using and return or destroy all copies of Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works in your possession. If you paid a fee for obtaining a copy of or access to a Project Gutenberg–tm electronic work and you do not agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement, you may obtain a refund from the person or entity to whom you paid the fee as set forth in paragraph 1.E.8.

1.B. "Project Gutenberg" is a registered trademark. It may only be used on or associated in any way with an electronic work by people who agree to be bound by the terms of this agreement. There are a few things that you can do with most Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works even without complying with the full terms of this agreement. See paragraph 1.C below. There are a lot of things you can do with Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works if you follow the terms of this agreement and help preserve free future access to Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works. See paragraph 1.E below.

1.C. The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation ("the Foundation" or PGLAF), owns a compilation copyright in the collection of Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works. Nearly all the individual works in the collection are in the public domain in the United States. If an individual work is in the public domain in the United States and you are located in the United States, we do not claim a right to prevent you from copying, distributing, performing, displaying or creating derivative works based on the work as long as all references to Project Gutenberg are removed. Of course, we hope that you will support the Project Gutenberg–tm mission of promoting free access to electronic works by freely sharing Project Gutenberg–tm works in compliance with the terms of this agreement for keeping the Project Gutenberg–tm name associated with the work. You can easily comply with the terms of this agreement by keeping this work in the same format with its attached full Project Gutenberg–tm License when you share it without charge with others.

1.D. The copyright laws of the place where you are located also govern what you can do with this work.

Copyright laws in most countries are in a constant state of change. If you are outside the United States, check the laws of your country in addition to the terms of this agreement before downloading, copying, displaying, performing, distributing or creating derivative works based on this work or any other Project Gutenberg–tm work. The Foundation makes no representations concerning the copyright status of any work in any country outside the United States.

1.E. Unless you have removed all references to Project Gutenberg:

1.E.1. The following sentence, with active links to, or other immediate access to, the full Project Gutenberg–tm License must appear prominently whenever any copy of a Project Gutenberg–tm work (any work on which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" appears, or with which the phrase "Project Gutenberg" is associated) is accessed, displayed, performed, viewed, copied or distributed:

This eBook is for the use of anyone anywhere at no cost and with almost no restrictions whatsoever. You may copy it, give it away or re–use it under the terms of the Project Gutenberg License included with this eBook or online at www.gutenberg.net

1.E.2. If an individual Project Gutenberg–tm electronic work is derived from the public domain (does not contain a notice indicating that it is posted with permission of the copyright holder), the work can be copied and distributed to anyone in the United States without paying any fees or charges. If you are redistributing or providing access to a work with the phrase "Project Gutenberg" associated with or appearing on the work, you must comply either with the requirements of paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 or obtain permission for the use of the work and the Project Gutenberg–tm trademark as set forth in paragraphs 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.3. If an individual Project Gutenberg–tm electronic work is posted with the permission of the copyright holder, your use and distribution must comply with both paragraphs 1.E.1 through 1.E.7 and any additional terms imposed by the copyright holder. Additional terms will be linked to the Project Gutenberg–tm License for all works posted with the permission of the copyright holder found at the beginning of this work.

1.E.4. Do not unlink or detach or remove the full Project Gutenberg–tm License terms from this work, or any files containing a part of this work or any other work associated with Project Gutenberg–tm.

1.E.5. Do not copy, display, perform, distribute or redistribute this electronic work, or any part of this electronic work, without prominently displaying the sentence set forth in paragraph 1.E.1 with active links or immediate access to the full terms of the Project Gutenberg–tm License.

1.E.6. You may convert to and distribute this work in any binary, compressed, marked up, nonproprietary or proprietary form, including any word processing or hypertext form. However, if you provide access to or distribute copies of a Project Gutenberg–tm work in a format other than "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other format used in the official version posted on the official Project Gutenberg–tm web site (www.gutenberg.net), you must, at no additional cost, fee or expense to the user, provide a copy, a means of exporting a copy, or a means of obtaining a copy upon request, of the work in its original "Plain Vanilla ASCII" or other form. Any alternate format must include the full Project Gutenberg–tm License as specified in paragraph 1.E.1.

1.E.7. Do not charge a fee for access to, viewing, displaying, performing, copying or distributing any Project Gutenberg–tm works unless you comply with paragraph 1.E.8 or 1.E.9.

1.E.8. You may charge a reasonable fee for copies of or providing access to or distributing Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works provided that

– You pay a royalty fee of 20% of the gross profits you derive from the use of Project Gutenberg–tm works calculated using the method you already use to calculate your applicable taxes. The fee is owed to the owner

of the Project Gutenberg–tm trademark, but he has agreed to donate royalties under this paragraph to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation. Royalty payments must be paid within 60 days following each date on which you prepare (or are legally required to prepare) your periodic tax returns. Royalty payments should be clearly marked as such and sent to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation at the address specified in Section 4, "Information about donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation."

– You provide a full refund of any money paid by a user who notifies you in writing (or by e–mail) within 30 days of receipt that s/he does not agree to the terms of the full Project Gutenberg–tm License. You must require such a user to return or destroy all copies of the works possessed in a physical medium and discontinue all use of and all access to other copies of Project Gutenberg–tm works.

– You provide, in accordance with paragraph 1.F.3, a full refund of any money paid for a work or a replacement copy, if a defect in the electronic work is discovered and reported to you within 90 days of receipt of the work.

– You comply with all other terms of this agreement for free distribution of Project Gutenberg–tm works.

1.E.9. If you wish to charge a fee or distribute a Project Gutenberg–tm electronic work or group of works on different terms than are set forth in this agreement, you must obtain permission in writing from both the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and Michael Hart, the owner of the Project Gutenberg–tm trademark. Contact the Foundation as set forth in Section 3 below.

1.F.

1.F.1. Project Gutenberg volunteers and employees expend considerable effort to identify, do copyright research on, transcribe and proofread public domain works in creating the Project Gutenberg–tm collection. Despite these efforts, Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works, and the medium on which they may be stored, may contain "Defects," such as, but not limited to, incomplete, inaccurate or corrupt data, transcription errors, a copyright or other intellectual property infringement, a defective or damaged disk or other medium, a computer virus, or computer codes that damage or cannot be read by your equipment.

1.F.2. LIMITED WARRANTY, DISCLAIMER OF DAMAGES – Except for the "Right of Replacement or Refund" described in paragraph 1.F.3, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, the owner of the Project Gutenberg–tm trademark, and any other party distributing a Project Gutenberg–tm electronic work under this agreement, disclaim all liability to you for damages, costs and expenses, including legal fees. YOU AGREE THAT YOU HAVE NO REMEDIES FOR NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, BREACH OF WARRANTY OR BREACH OF CONTRACT EXCEPT THOSE PROVIDED IN PARAGRAPH F3. YOU AGREE THAT THE FOUNDATION, THE TRADEMARK OWNER, AND ANY DISTRIBUTOR UNDER THIS AGREEMENT WILL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ACTUAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES EVEN IF YOU GIVE NOTICE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

1.F.3. LIMITED RIGHT OF REPLACEMENT OR REFUND – If you discover a defect in this electronic work within 90 days of receiving it, you can receive a refund of the money (if any) you paid for it by sending a written explanation to the person you received the work from. If you received the work on a physical medium, you must return the medium with your written explanation. The person or entity that provided you with the defective work may elect to provide a replacement copy in lieu of a refund. If you received the work electronically, the person or entity providing it to you may choose to give you a second opportunity to receive the work electronically in lieu of a refund. If the second copy is also defective, you may demand a refund in writing without further opportunities to fix the problem.

1.F.4. Except for the limited right of replacement or refund set forth in paragraph 1.F.3, this work is provided to you 'AS-IS', WITH NO OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR ANY PURPOSE.

1.F.5. Some states do not allow disclaimers of certain implied warranties or the exclusion or limitation of certain types of damages. If any disclaimer or limitation set forth in this agreement violates the law of the state applicable to this agreement, the agreement shall be interpreted to make the maximum disclaimer or limitation permitted by the applicable state law. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this agreement shall not void the remaining provisions.

1.F.6. INDEMNITY

– You agree to indemnify and hold the Foundation, the trademark owner, any agent or employee of the Foundation, anyone providing copies of Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works in accordance with this agreement, and any volunteers associated with the production, promotion and distribution of Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works, harmless from all liability, costs and expenses, including legal fees, that arise directly or indirectly from any of the following which you do or cause to occur: (a) distribution of this or any Project Gutenberg–tm work, (b) alteration, modification, or additions or deletions to any Project Gutenberg–tm work, and (c) any Defect you cause.

Section 2. Information about the Mission of Project Gutenberg–tm

Project Gutenberg–tm is synonymous with the free distribution of electronic works in formats readable by the widest variety of computers including obsolete, old, middle–aged and new computers. It exists because of the efforts of hundreds of volunteers and donations from people in all walks of life.

Volunteers and financial support to provide volunteers with the assistance they need, is critical to reaching Project Gutenberg–tm's goals and ensuring that the Project Gutenberg–tm collection will remain freely available for generations to come. In 2001, the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation was created to provide a secure and permanent future for Project Gutenberg–tm and future generations. To learn more about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation and how your efforts and donations can help, see Sections 3 and 4 and the Foundation web page at <http://www.pgla.org>.

Section 3. Information about the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

The Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation is a non profit 501(c)(3) educational corporation organized under the laws of the state of Mississippi and granted tax exempt status by the Internal Revenue Service. The Foundation's EIN or federal tax identification number is 64–6221541. Its 501(c)(3) letter is posted at <http://pglaf.org/fundraising>. Contributions to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation are tax deductible to the full extent permitted by U.S. federal laws and your state's laws.

The Foundation's principal office is located at 4557 Melan Dr. S. Fairbanks, AK, 99712., but its volunteers and employees are scattered throughout numerous locations. Its business office is located at 809 North 1500 West, Salt Lake City, UT 84116, (801) 596–1887, email business@pglaf.org. Email contact links and up to date contact information can be found at the Foundation's web site and official page at <http://pglaf.org>

For additional contact information: Dr. Gregory B. Newby Chief Executive and Director gbnewby@pglaf.org

Section 4. Information about Donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation

Project Gutenberg–tm depends upon and cannot survive without wide spread public support and donations to

carry out its mission of increasing the number of public domain and licensed works that can be freely distributed in machine readable form accessible by the widest array of equipment including outdated equipment. Many small donations (\$1 to \$5,000) are particularly important to maintaining tax exempt status with the IRS.

The Foundation is committed to complying with the laws regulating charities and charitable donations in all 50 states of the United States. Compliance requirements are not uniform and it takes a considerable effort, much paperwork and many fees to meet and keep up with these requirements. We do not solicit donations in locations where we have not received written confirmation of compliance. To SEND DONATIONS or determine the status of compliance for any particular state visit <http://pglaf.org>

While we cannot and do not solicit contributions from states where we have not met the solicitation requirements, we know of no prohibition against accepting unsolicited donations from donors in such states who approach us with offers to donate.

International donations are gratefully accepted, but we cannot make any statements concerning tax treatment of donations received from outside the United States. U.S. laws alone swamp our small staff.

Please check the Project Gutenberg Web pages for current donation methods and addresses. Donations are accepted in a number of other ways including including checks, online payments and credit card donations. To donate, please visit: <http://pglaf.org/donate>

Section 5. General Information About Project Gutenberg–tm electronic works.

Professor Michael S. Hart is the originator of the Project Gutenberg–tm concept of a library of electronic works that could be freely shared with anyone. For thirty years, he produced and distributed Project Gutenberg–tm eBooks with only a loose network of volunteer support.

Project Gutenberg–tm eBooks are often created from several printed editions, all of which are confirmed as Public Domain in the U.S. unless a copyright notice is included. Thus, we do not necessarily keep eBooks in compliance with any particular paper edition.

Most people start at our Web site which has the main PG search facility:

<http://www.gutenberg.net>

This Web site includes information about Project Gutenberg–tm, including how to make donations to the Project Gutenberg Literary Archive Foundation, how to help produce our new eBooks, and how to subscribe to our email newsletter to hear about new eBooks.

*** END: FULL LICENSE ***

New Latin Grammar

from <http://manybooks.net/>